
2nd PREP
FIRST TERM
ALADWAA
Gem
2024
NEW
HELLO
H

Check Your English

1 Complete the questions with these words.

did	~~does~~	highest	if	looking
	made	shouldn't	Were	

1 What ..does.. an engineer do?
2 What is a teaspoon ..... of?
3 If you can see yourself, what are you ..... at?
4 Which is the ..... mountain in the world?
5 Why ..... you eat a lot of chocolate?
6 What happens ..... you touch a jellyfish?
7 Where ..... Robinson Crusoe live for many years?
8 ..... there any bedrooms in the houses of Deir el-Medina?

2 Now match the questions from Exercise 1 with the answers.

a ☐ It stings you.
b ☐ There is too much sugar in it.
c [1] He or she designs engines or parts of buildings.
d ☐ Mount Everest
e ☐ No, there weren't.
f ☐ on an island
g ☐ metal (but sometimes plastic)
h ☐ a mirror



3 Listen and check your answers to Exercises 1 and 2.

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

Listen

4 Read and underline the mistakes in these sentences.

1 I got short, curly hair. (.....)
2 That is not your bag, it is my. (.....)
3 Mariam didn't climb the mountain because she was frightening. (.....)
4 There are any peppers in the fridge. (.....)
5 Did you went to the park this morning? (.....)

5 **Read the book summaries and write the missing sentences a–d in the right places.**

a Some of the people are funny and some of them are scary!
b The story moves slowly, but I like the story's message.
c Should he talk to the man, or should he hide?
d If he gets home on time, he will win a prize.

1

I really enjoyed this book. It is about a sailor who lived for many years on an island. In the morning, he always went for a walk on the beach alone, then, one day, he saw another person on the island! (1) ☐ Read it to find out!

Robinson Crusoe



2

This book is very exciting. It is about a man who must travel quickly through many places by ship and train. It is easier to travel through some countries than others! (2) ☐ It is a very difficult challenge, but will he do it?

Around the World in 80 Days



3

In this story, an old fisherman spends many days trying to catch a big fish. He is very good at fishing and catches the fish, but when he returns home, the fish is just a skeleton. However, the other fishermen respect the old man because he tried very hard. (3) ☐

The Old Man and the Sea



4

This story is very interesting! It is about a girl who goes to a very strange place. There are a lot of very interesting people and animals in this place and she has lots of adventures.

(4) a Will she find her way home?

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland



6 Ask and answer the questions about the stories in pairs.

1 Which is the only story that is not about the sea?

.....

2 Which two stories are not only about people?

.....

3 Which stories have forms of transport in them?

.....

4 Which of the stories did you enjoy? Why?

.....

7 Write a summary of another book or film that you enjoyed.

- Say what the story/film is about.
- Write about the people in the story/film and about what happens to them.
- Finish with a question or your opinion.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit 1

Coming home

Objectives of the unit

Reading	A text about daily routines; a blog; interviews about routines; a website article about children in India; *The Railway Children*
Writing	A text message; an email to a penfriend
Listening	Description of a bedroom
Speaking	Discussing daily routines; describing bedrooms and furniture
Language	Present simple
Life Skills	Self-management
Values	Coexistence values
Issues	Citizenship

Tapescript

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 2 - 5 | WB pages 72 & 73

A Vocabulary

- فم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- فم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرس.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

a block of flats	عمارة سكنية	interview (n)	مقابلة/حوار
daily (adv)	يوميًا	routine (n)	روتين/نظام يومى

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

baker's (n)	مخبز	hobby (n)	هواية
blog (n)	مدونة إلكترونية	interest (n)	اهتمام
favourite (adj)	مفضل	prefer (red) (v)	يفضل
flat (n)	شقة	subject (n)	مادة دراسية
free time (n)	وقت فراغ	topic (n)	موضوع

Check Point

Choose and complete: interview - prefer - routine - free time

1. I usually have a daily ..... .
2. In my ....., I prefer reading a book.
3. My mum has an ..... for a new job.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do	> activities	يؤدى أنشطة	have	> a routine	لديه روتين/نظام يومى
	> exercises/sports	يؤدى تمارين/رياضة		> coffee/lunch	يتناول القهوة/الغداء
	> homework	يؤدى الواجب المنزلى		> fun	يمرح
make	> breakfast/dinner	يُعد الإفطار/ العشاء	text	> friends	يراسل أصدقاءه برسائل نصية
take	> a bus	يأخذ أتوبيس			

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

Prepositions

حروف الجر

at break	فى الفسحة	on the way to	فى الطريق إلى
different to/from	مختلف عن	share with	يشارك مع
for breakfast	على وجبة الإفطار	spend time on	يقضى وقتًا فى
help with	يساعد فى	study hard for	يذاكر بجدٍّ لـ
on the right	على اليمين	talk to	يتكلم مع/إلى

Check Point

Choose and complete: (with - buy - for - take)

1. I like to have fish and rice ..... lunch.
2. My sister always helps mum ..... the housework.
3. Let's ..... a bus. It's comfortable.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
begin يبدأ	began	begun	learn (ed) يتعلم	learnt	learnt
drink يشرب	drank	drunk	leave يترك/يغادر	left	left
get up ينهض/يستيقظ	got up	got up	spend يقضى	spent	spent

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
good for	مفيد لـ	bad for	ضار بـ
late	متأخرًا	early	مبكرًا
same	مماثل/مشابه	different	مختلف
start	يبدأ	finish	ينهى

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية

1 **It's + adj.** الصفة **+ to + inf.** المصدر — إنه من... أن...

- It is important to **do** something different at the weekend.

2 **help to + inf. = help + inf. /help with + n** — يساعد

- I help my brother (to do/ do) his homework.
- I help my mother with the housework.

3 **by +** وسائل المواصلات — تستخدم أمام جميع وسائل النقل بشرط عدم وجود أداة أو ضمير أمام الوسيلة

- I go to school by bus.

in + (a/an/the/my/his....) + car/taxi/canoe

تستخدم أمام وسائل النقل التى نجلس بداخلها أثناء الحركة

- My father goes to work in his car.

on + (a/an/the/my/his....) + bus/train/plane

تستخدم أمام وسائل النقل التى يمكن أن نقف بداخلها أو على ظهرها أثناء الحركة

- I go to school on the bus.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word — الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) — مرادفها
good for — مفيد لـ	useful for — مفيد لـ
start — يبدأ	begin — يبدأ

Suffix — اللاحقة

Word — الكلمة	Suffix — اللاحقة	Function — الوظيفة	The new word — الكلمة الجديدة
bake (v) — يخبز	-er	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم فاعل	baker (n) — خباز
differ (v) — يختلف	-ent	تحويل الفعل إلى صفة	different (adj) — مختلف

Prefix — البادئة

Prefix — البادئة	Function — الوظيفة	Word — الكلمة	The new word — الكلمة الجديدة
un-	تعطى عكس المعنى	important (adj) — هام	unimportant (adj) — غير هام

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word — الكلمة	Similar word — الكلمة المشابهة
blog — مدونة	block — مبنى
interview — مقابلة	review — مقال نقدى

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question: - Do you do the same things every day?

Lesson 1

SB page 2

Read about Mariam. How does she get to school?

I'm Mariam. My daily routine[1] is the same every school day! I always get up at 6:30 in the morning. My mum always makes my breakfast. I go to school by bus with my friend, Dina. Sometimes we listen to music. My parents work at the hospital. They get home late, so I often help to make dinner. In the evening, I do my homework, read on the sofa[2], watch TV and text my friends[3]. Then I go to bed!



(1) روتين/نظام يومي

(2) يقرأ على الأريكة

(3) أراسل أصدقائي برسائل نصية

Post-reading questions:

1. What's the main idea of the text?
2. Do you think that Mariam likes reading? Why?

Life Skills

How much time do you spend on the following activities every day?

(doing exercise - doing homework - reading on the sofa - sleeping - texting your friends)

Do you think you should spend more or less time on these activities? Why?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Pre-reading question: - What do you do in your free time?

Lesson 2

Look quickly at the blog. How does Sherifa help at home?

SB page 4

My best friend's family



Hi, everyone! Today's interview[1] is with my best friend, Sherifa and her family. Here's a photo of us. Sherifa's on the right.

How many people are in your family, Sherifa?

There are five people: me, Mum, Dad and my two brothers.

When do you get up?

I usually get up at 6:30 and help Mum make breakfast. My brothers help, too. My dad starts work very early, so he leaves home before we get up. That's why he doesn't have breakfast with us. He eats when he gets to work. I walk to school with my brothers.

(1) حوار/مقابلة

(2) يستمع للموسيقى

(3) يلعب الشطرنج

Do you like to study?

Yes, I do. My favourite subject is English.

What do you do in the evening?

I listen to music[2] every day. My dad and I sometimes play chess[3]. My brothers always watch TV and my mum usually reads.

Note:

interview /ɪntərvjuː/ تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

Post-reading questions:

1. Do you think that Sherifa goes to school early? Why?
2. What's Sherifa's favourite subject?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I live in a ..... of flats in Cairo. (الصومية ٢٠٢٣)
   a) black b) block c) house d) blog
2. My favourite ..... is English. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)
   a) sport b) music c) singer d) subject
3. Would you like to ..... your friends in your free time? (القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
   a) rest b) text c) guess d) damage
4. This boy doesn't have a room, but he can ..... the room with me. (الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣)
   a) do b) share c) cheer d) make
5. I ..... my homework and read my books on the sofa.
   a) do b) make c) have d) share
6. It takes me twenty minutes to ..... work.
   a) arrive b) get to c) go d) get up
7. A ..... is an online diary.
   a) poster b) blog c) routine d) block
8. ..... break, I have some sandwiches and talk to my friends.
   a) From b) For c) In d) At
9. Reading is the most important and famous ..... that people can enjoy a lot.
   a) flat b) blog c) hobby d) topic
10. How do you like to ..... your time in the holidays? (العربية ٢٠٢٣)
    a) stay b) take c) spend d) play
11. Mai has a great ..... in music. (الصومية ٢٠٢٣)
    a) interesting b) interest c) interested d) interests
12. I always get ..... at 6:30 in the morning.
    a) to b) up c) on d) in

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ali has an important ..... today for the new job. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) view b) review c) interview d) revision
2. What do you do in your .....? الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) free time b) friends c) busy time d) night
3. Do you ..... hot or cold drinks? الصنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) draw b) prefer c) text d) stay
4. I always get up at six o'clock. I have my breakfast and I go to school. This is my daily ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) library b) routine c) break d) uniform
5. Come and sit on this ....., four people can sit on it. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) routine b) sofa c) chair d) seat
6. I go to my room and play computer games. It's really ..... .
   a) fun b) free c) daily d) early
7. Every day, my father buys 14 loaves of ..... from the baker's. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) cheese b) rice c) coffee d) bread
8. I bought two T-shirts of ..... colours. One of them is white and the other is blue.
   a) the same b) different c) delicious d) healthy
9. I usually see many shops ..... my way to school.
   a) on b) from c) in d) for
10. Mum is really tired today. I will help her ..... dinner. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
    a) text b) listen c) make d) build
11. My father usually ..... home early to catch the first train.
    a) finishes b) leaves c) starts d) takes
12. I sometimes ..... chess in the evening.
    a) go b) make c) do d) play

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

Language

Remember

1 THE PRESENT SIMPLE TENSE — زمن المضارع البسيط

- It's used to express habits and facts. يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن العادات والحقائق.

Affirmative الإثبات

I You We They (اسم جمع) > inf.

I play football at the club.

He She It (اسم مفرد) > inf. + s/es/ies

She plays tennis every week.

Negative النفى

I You We They (اسم جمع) > don't + inf.

I don't play football at the club.

He She It (اسم مفرد) > doesn't + inf.

She doesn't play tennis every week.

Yes/No questions

Question السؤال

Do I / you / we / they (اسم جمع) > inf. ...?

Do you play football?
Yes, I do.

Does he / she / it (اسم مفرد) > inf. ...?

Does she play tennis?
No, she doesn't.

Wh- questions

Q. word + do/does + subj. + inf. ...?

- Where does Ali live?
- How do you go to school?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 He ..... (play) basketball once a week.

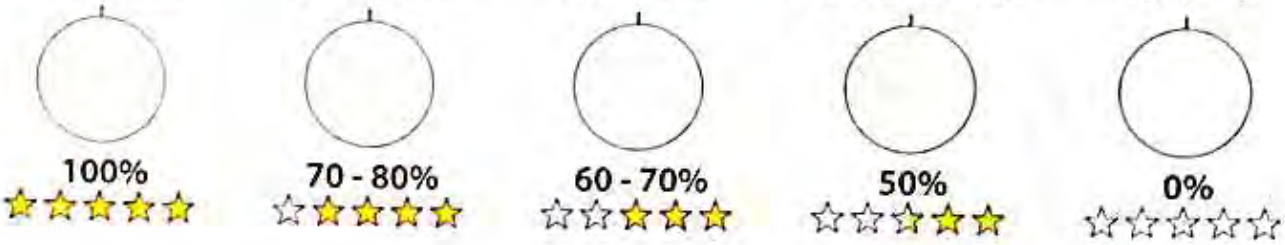
- الإجابة الصحيحة (plays) لوجود he ولوجود once a week الدالة على العادة فى المضارع البسيط.

2 ..... (she/drink) coffee every morning?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Does she drink) لأنها سؤال عن المضارع البسيط لوجود كلمة every والفاعل هنا she.

2 ADVERBS OF FREQUENCY ظروف التكرار

always دائمًا | usually عادة | often غالبًا | sometimes أحيانًا | never أبدًا



- نستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن مدى تكرار فعل ما.

- I always **get up** at 11 o'clock.
- Sally never **has** coffee for breakfast.

لاحظ

١- نستخدم ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي.

٢- يمكن استخدام (Sometimes) في بداية الجملة.

٣- يتم استخدام ظروف التكرار مع (am/is/are) كالتالي:

Subject + am/is/ are + adv. (ظرف التكرار) + adj. (صفة)

- They are usually late.
- Mona is always clever.

- عند السؤال عن ظروف التكرار نستخدم (How often):

How often **do** (I / you / we / they) (اسم جمع) > inf. ...?

How often **does** (he / she / it) (اسم مفرد) > inf. ...?

How often does Nader walk to school?

He always walks to school.

3 HOW TO FORM A QUESTION كيفية تكوين سؤال

أولًا: السؤال بمعنى هل (Yes/No question) هو عبارة عن سؤال يبدأ بفعل مساعد أو فعل ناقص:

نكوّن السؤال بمعنى (هل) عن طريق:

Helping verb (فعل مساعد) + subject (فاعل) + verb/complement..(فعل/تكملة)?

Auxiliary/Modal verbs:

تعرف أولا على الأفعال المساعدة/الناقصة:



1 Verb "to be"

Sentence الجملة	Question السؤال	Answer الإجابة
Basma is eating.	Is Basma eating?	Yes, she is. / No, she isn't.

لاحظ (Am/Is/Are) يتبعها الفاعل ثم اسم أو صفة أو فعل مضاف إليه (ing).

2 Verb "to do"

الجمل فى زمن المضارع أو الماضى البسيط لا تحتوى على فعل مساعد، لذلك نستخدم (Do/Does) مع المضارع البسيط ونستخدم (Did) مع الماضى البسيط.

Sentence الجملة	Question السؤال	Answer الإجابة
They like fish.	Do they like fish?	Yes, they do. / No, they don't.
Aya made lunch.	Did Aya make lunch?	Yes, she did. / No, she didn't.

لاحظ (Do/Does/Did) يتبعها الفاعل ثم مصدر الفعل.

ثانيًا: السؤال بأداة استفهام:

- يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام كالتالى:

Q. word	helping verb	subject	complement?
١- أداة استفهام	٢- فعل مساعد/ناقص	٣- فاعل	٤- تكملة السؤال

- قم بحفظ أدوات الاستفهام التالية جيدا.

What	ما/ماذا	How	كيف	How heavy	كم الوزن
When	متى	How many	كم عدد	How long	كم المدة
Where	أين	How much	كم الثمن/الكمية	How far	كم البعد/المسافة
Who	من	How often	كم مرة	How fast	كم السرعة
Which	أى/أيهما	How old	كم العمر	How wide	كم العرض/الاتساع
Why	لماذا	How tall	كم الطول	How deep	كم العمق
Whose	ملك من/لمن	How high	كم الارتفاع	What kind	ما نوع

Sentence الجملة	Question السؤال
They will travel to Aswan next week.	When will they travel to Aswan?
Karim is playing tennis.	What is Karim doing?
Ola has got a car.	What has Ola got?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 ..... (where/we) going?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Where are we) لأن السؤال فى المضارع المستمر لوجود going والفاعل we يأخذ are.

2 What colour ..... (are) your new bike?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (is) لأن bike مفرد.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practice more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He ..... to school every day. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) go b) goes c) going d) went
2. Samir ..... plays football in the street. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) doesn't b) never c) didn't d) isn't
3. Why are you .....? المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) laugh b) laughing c) laughed d) laughs
4. **A:** ..... do you play tennis? **B:** Twice a week. العربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) How b) How much c) How often d) How many
5. ..... you go to the museum last week? العربية ٢٠٢٣
   a) Did b) Were c) Are d) Do
6. On Saturday, I usually ..... time with my cousins. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
   a) spend b) spends c) spending d) am spending
7. Mariam doesn't ..... basketball well. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) plays b) play c) playing d) played
8. Ali ..... eats fish. He doesn't like it at all. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) don't b) doesn't c) never d) always
9. There ..... a holiday on Fridays. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) always is b) always does c) is always d) do always

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When ..... (do) he arrive? القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
2. On Fridays, we ..... (not get) up early. It's a holiday. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
3. Every day, she (walk) ..... to school with her brother. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
4. How often ..... (are) you do a sport? المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
5. The sun never ..... (rise) at night.
6. How ..... (be) your day yesterday? القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hossam doesn't ..... in Giza. (الصوفية ٢٠٢٣)
   a) live b) lives c) lived d) living
2. Children always ..... a lot of water. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
   a) drink b) drinks c) drinking d) are drinking
3. My sister ..... polite and clever. (المرتبة ٢٠٢٣)
   a) always is b) is always c) does always d) always does
4. Does he ..... to music? (الصوفية ٢٠٢٣)
   a) listen b) listens c) listening d) listened
5. ..... do you do in your free time? (الجيزة ٢٠٢٣)
   a) What b) Where c) Who d) How
6. I ..... to an art class once a week. (الصوفية ٢٠٢٣)
   a) going b) go c) goes d) is going
7. Sometimes we ..... to music.
   a) listening b) are listening c) listens d) listen
8. **Rana:** ..... do you play the piano?
   Sama: I play it well. (الصوفية ٢٠٢٣)
   a) When b) Why c) Who d) How
9. In the evening, I read on the sofa and ..... TV.
   a) watch b) watched c) watches d) watching
10. Students ..... go to school on Fridays. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
    a) always b) often c) usually d) never

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Omer ..... (never is) late for school. (الجيزة ٢٠٢٣)
2. Do you ..... (likes) football? (الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣)
3. She gets up early and ..... (have) breakfast. (الصوفية ٢٠٢٢)
4. I always ..... (drinking) milk for breakfast. (الصوفية ٢٠٢٣)
5. Did Noha ..... (went) home? (القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
6. **A:** ..... (When) do you go sailing? **B:** Once a week. (الصوفية ٢٠٢٣)

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Discussing daily routines

مناقشة الروتين اليومى

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد
online			
What time do you get up?			متى تستيقظ؟
	I always get up at six a.m.	أستيقظ دائمًا فى السادسة صباحًا.	
How do you get to school?			كيف تصل للمدرسة؟
	I usually get to school by bike.	عادة أصل بالدراجة.	
Where do you live?			أين تعيش؟
	I live in Alexandria.	أعيش فى الإسكندرية.	
Who do you live with?			مع من تعيش؟
	I live with my family.	أعيش مع عائلتى.	

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

▶ **Rami is sharing his daily routine with Ragab.**

اليوم ٢٠٢٣

Rami : Hi! Ragab, how are you?

Ragab : I'm having a problem with my daily routine. Can you share yours with me?

Rami : (1)..... . What do you want to know?

Ragab : When do you get up?

Rami : (2)..... .

Ragab : (3).....?

Rami : I have my breakfast at 7 a.m.

Ragab : (4).....?

Rami : I go to school at 8 a.m.

Ragab : (5)..... . It will help me a lot.

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about a daily routine

كيفية الكتابة عن نظام يومي

- My name's (الاسم).
- I live in (المكان).
- I always get up at (الوقت).
- I usually walk to school with (الأشخاص).
- I have lunch with my family.
- I do my homework in the evenings.
- I do sports every (اليوم).
- I go to bed at (الساعة).

Writing tips

Organise your thoughts before starting. Brainstorm all related ideas and vocabulary.

نظم أفكارك قبل البدء في الكتابة. فكر في مفردات وأفكار مرتبطة بالموضوع.

Example

My family's daily routine

My name's Basmala. I live on the second floor of the new block of flats with my dad, mother, grandma and two brothers. I always get up at 6 o'clock on a school day. My mother always makes my breakfast. I walk to school with my two brothers. My father goes to work at 7:30 a.m. He works in a school. Sometimes I walk to school with my father. I never go to school late. We usually have lunch at five together. In the evenings, I do my homework. I often play chess with my grandma before I go to bed. I study hard for my exams. I often listen to music. We often go to the park at the weekends. I like to play on the grass there.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Your school day"

My name's .....

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 1 Lessons (1&2)

19.5

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. When does Ali come back from school? - At ..... .
   a) one o'clock b) two o'clock c) three o'clock d) four o'clock
2. When does he get up?
   a) Very late b) Very early c) At 8 a.m. d) At 9 a.m.
3. What does he do at 7.30? - He ..... .
   a) sleeps b) washes c) watches TV d) has breakfast
4. When does he do his homework?
   a) In the morning b) In the afternoon
   c) In the evening d) At night

2 Complete the following dialogue:

الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

Ola and Nada are talking about Nada's daily routine.

Ola : Hi Nada, when do you usually get up?
Nada : (1)..... .
Ola : (2).....?
Nada : My mum makes the breakfast for us.
Ola : (3).....?
Nada : I go to school on foot. It's near my house.
Ola : What is your favourite subject?
Nada : (4)..... .
Ola : What do you do after school?
Nada : (5)..... .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There is no ..... at work, every day is different. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) sport b) exercise c) routine d) job
2. I prefer to ..... my friends. I don't phone them. الصومعة ٢٠٢٣
   a) text b) fix c) play d) run
3. Hassan forgot his food, but we can ..... our food with him. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) shake b) shade c) share d) save
4. My favourite ..... are maths and English.
   a) objects b) subjects c) topics d) blogs
5. Many people ..... eating home-made food.
   a) text b) make c) prefer d) share

6. I went to the ..... to buy fresh bread.
a) baker's b) butcher's c) grocer's d) chemist's

7. My favourite ..... is reading adventure stories.
a) sport b) food c) subject d) hobby

8. The weather ..... sunny in some places. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
a) never isn't b) isn't never c) is never d) never is

9. **A:** How ..... do you visit your grandparents? **B:** Once a week.
a) much b) long c) often d) far

10. Did Ali ..... to the shops yesterday? الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
a) go b) went c) used to go d) goes

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Farmers ..... (grown) a lot of oranges along the river. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
2. How much ..... (do) Sameh weigh? القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
3. It ..... (usually/is) very hot in summer. الصوم ٢٠٢٢
4. ..... (Is) Mai like feeding the chickens?

5 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"What you usually do on holidays" المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

Challenging Questions

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My dad ..... work very early.
a) gets b) starts c) goes d) arrives

2. Which subjects ..... you interested in?
a) do b) are c) have d) can

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Why ..... (do) you sad?
2. Everyone in the picture ..... (be) happy.

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 3 & 4



SB pages 6 - 8 | WB pages 74 & 75

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

adventure (n)	مغامرة	profile (n)	الملف الشخصى
attractive (adj)	جذاب	railway line (n)	خط سكة حديد
feed the chickens	يطعم الدجاج	tap (n)	صنبور/حنفية
knife (n)	سكينة	terrible (adj)	فظيع/سيئ جدًا
large (adj)	كبير/ضخم	text message (n)	رسالة نصية
poor (adj)	فقير	typical (adj)	معتاد/نموذجى/مثالى
prison (n)	سجن	watermelon (n)	بطيخة

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

carry (y ied) (v)	يحمل	suggest (ed) (v)	يقترح
change (d) (v)	يتغير	the country (n)	الريف
marry (y ied) (v)	يتزوج	village (n)	قرية
picnic (n)	نزهة خلوية	water (ed) (v)	يروى/يسقى

Check Point

Choose and complete: adventure - village - terrible - marry

1. The film I watched yesterday was ..... . I didn't like it.
2. My father lived in a ..... when he was young.
3. I read an ..... story yesterday.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do	a job	يؤدى وظيفة	have	a job to do	لديك عمل للقيام به
	wrong	يفعل خطأ	take	turns	يتبادل الأدوار

Prepositions

حروف الجر

around the world	حول العالم	find out about	يكتشف عن
ask for	يطلب	full of	ملىء بـ
at the end of	فى نهاية	move from ... to	ينتقل من ..... إلى
careful with	حريص على	on TV	فى التلفاز
different for	مختلف بالنسبة لـ	take away from	يبعد عن

Check Point

Choose and complete: (with - take - have - for)

1. When I have a problem, I ask my teacher ..... help.
2. You should be careful ..... new technology.
3. This game is very interesting. Let's ..... turns.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
become يصبح	became	become	feel يشعر	felt	felt
bring يحضر	brought	brought	forget ينسى	forgot	forgotten
feed يطعم	fed	fed	know يعرف	knew	known

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
attractive	جذاب	ugly	قبيح
borrow	يستعير/يستلف	lend	يسلف
careful	حريص	careless	مهمل
full	ممتلئ	empty	فارغ
large	ضخم	small/tiny	صغير
near	قريب	far	بعيد
poor	فقير	rich	غنى
remember	يتذكر	forget	ينسى

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية

1 suggest + v + ing — يقترح

- My father suggested **going** to the cinema.

2 with — ذو/لديه (تستخدم عند الوصف)

- They have a big home with a large garden.

3 My six-year-old cousin

لاحظ عدم جمع كلمة (year) لأنها هنا تستخدم كصفة لكلمة (cousin) والصفة لا تجمع.

- My six-year-old cousin is here and he wants to play a game with me.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Definitions — التعريفات

poor	فقير	people without enough[1] money
prison	سجن	a place where people go when they do something[2] wrong[3]
railway line	خط سكة حديد	the road that a train travels on

(1) كاف
(2) شىء ما
(3) خطأ

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
careful	حريص	cautious	حريص
near	قريب	close	قريب

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
attract (v)	يجذب	-ive		تحويل الفعل إلى صفة		attractive (adj)	جذاب
care (n)	رعاية/حرص	-ful		تحويل الاسم إلى صفة		careful (adj)	حريص

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
message	رسالة	massage	تدليك
poor	فقير	pour	يصب
tap	صنبور/حنفية	tape	شريط لاصق

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-reading question:

- How do you help your family around the house?

Read the profile quickly. Which of the three questions is Shahana answering?

SB page 6

Lives around the world

Tell us about your life!

- What are your hobbies[1] and interests[2]?
- What is a typical[3] day in your life?
- What job do you want to do one day?



My name's Shahana. I'm from India. I live in a village with my parents, my brother and my sister.

I share[4] a room with my sister. We all get up early. There is an outside tap[5] at the end of the street where we live. My mum gets water from the tap every morning. Then we all have breakfast. We have bread with a cup of tea. My dad works in a shop.

(1) هوايات	(2) اهتمامات
(3) نموذجي/مثالي	(4) يشارك
(5) حنفية/صنبور	(6) يطعم

I have two jobs to do when I get home from school. I feed[6] the chickens, then I help my mum make dinner. After dinner, I do my homework. Sometimes I help my brother and sister to do their homework, too. Then I go to bed.

Note:

village /vɪlɪdʒ/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

Post-reading questions:

1. What does Shahana have for breakfast?
2. Do you think Shahana is helpful? Why/Why not?

Pre-reading question: - What kind of fruit do you like?

Read the conversation and answer the questions. *SB page 7*

Yunis Grandma, have you got a watermelon[1]?

Grandma Yes, I have. It's on the table.

Yunis Can I have some, please? I like watermelon.

Grandma Yes, of course. We need a knife[2] to cut it!

Yunis Shall I help you to cut it?

Grandma Thank you, Yunis, but be careful[3] with the knife!



(1) بطيخة (2) سكين

(3) حريص/حذر

Complete the text message with can, shall or have you got. *SB page 7*

online

Hi, Amal. **Have you got** that game called *Odd one out*?

No! I don't play that game now. It's for young children.

Have you got any other children's games?
My six-year-old cousin is here and he wants to play a game with me.

Yes, I have *Role-play*! Do you remember that game?

Yes, I do! **Can** I borrow it this evening? My cousin would love it!

Of course. **Shall** I play it, too? It's better with three people, and I still enjoy that game.

Of course! You can come to my house later.

Post-reading question:
- What game has Amal got?

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 4

- What kind of stories do you like reading?

Read the story and put these pictures in the correct order. *SB page 8*

The Railway Children *by E Nesbit*

It is the 1900s. Roberta, her younger brother Peter and their little sister, Phyllis, live with their parents in London. They have a big, attractive[1] home with a large garden. One terrible[2] day, two men take their father away from home. The children do not know where he is going or why.



The children move from the city with their mother to a small house near a railway line[3]. The family are poor[4] and life is very different for them.



The children have lots of adventures[5] near the railway line. A kind old man, who travels on the train every day, becomes their friend.



The old man helps the family in many ways. He helps their father too, because their father is in prison[6] for something he did not do. Finally, their father comes home. The family is so happy to be together again at last.

(1) جذاب (2) فظيع

(3) خط سكة حديد (4) فقراء

(5) مغامرات (6) سجن

Note:

adventure /əd'ven·tʃər/
prison /prɪzən/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Post-reading questions:

1. The old man was very friendly. Explain.
2. Summarise the text in 30 words.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practice more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Living in the desert has a lot of ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) houses b) adventures c) rooms d) shops

2. I like to ..... the chickens. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣

a) feel b) drink c) feed d) eat

3. They bought a ..... house as their old one was very small. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢

a) tiny b) bad c) large d) funny

4. He has no money. He is very ..... . أسيوط ٢٠٢٣

a) awesome b) proud c) rich d) poor

5. I sent my friend a text ..... on his birthday.

a) email b) letter c) message d) massage

6. The weather was ....., so we couldn't travel to Alexandria. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

a) nice b) wonderful c) fantastic d) terrible

7. I have a/an ..... in reading short stories. بني سويف ٢٠٢٣

a) interest b) entry c) interested d) interesting

8. The family don't know why some men take their father ..... .

a) a way b) ways c) weighs d) away

9. They are poor farmers and live in a small ..... in Giza.

a) lake b) village c) prison d) line

10. You must be careful when you use the ..... . It's very sharp. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a) knife b) tap c) profile d) table

11. A/An ..... is a large, round fruit with dark green skin and a lot of black seeds.

a) apple b) orange c) watermelon d) pineapple

12. Be ..... when you cut the tomatoes.

a) careless b) careful c) empty d) poor

Time to Practise



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The opposite of "attractive" is "_____".

a) good b) far c) small d) ugly

2. A _____ is a place where people go when they do something wrong.

a) hospital b) prison c) theatre d) beach

3. The railway _____ goes from Tanta to Aswan.

a) street b) city c) line d) village

4. My uncle has a _____ in the garden and he uses it to water his plants.

a) tap b) tip c) tape d) tub

5. On a _____ day, Reem gets up, goes to school and then helps her mother in her shop.

a) careful b) typical c) helpful d) famous

6. Mazin wants to _____ a game with me.

a) play b) do c) go d) make

7. Can I _____ your book this evening?

a) forget b) know c) lend d) borrow

8. Most people like to read the _____ of famous people on Facebook.

a) profile b) prison c) railway d) picnic

9. Two men came and _____ their father away from home.

a) took b) made c) had d) brought

10. They _____ to a small house in a small village.

a) knew b) brought c) arrived d) moved

11. Your homework is full _____ mistakes. Do it again, please.

a) at b) off c) on d) of

12. There's a bakery _____ the end of this street.

a) at b) for c) of d) out



لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Asking for something: طلب شيء

- **Can I + inf. ....., please?** هل يمكننى.... من فضلك؟

A: Can I **have** a cup of tea, please? **B:** Yes, of course.

Suggesting doing something: اقتراح فعل شيء

- **Shall I + inf. ....?** هل ...؟

A: Shall I **help** you to cut it? **B:** Good idea.

- **Let's + inf. .... .** هيا بنا

A: Let's **go** to the park tomorrow. **B:** OK. Why not?

Asking about feelings: السؤال عن المشاعر

- **How (do/did) you feel .....?** كيف تشعر ....؟

A: How did the children **feel** when they moved to the small house?

B: They felt very sad.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue: WB

▶ **Ali suggests going to a restaurant.**

Ali : This is a nice restaurant. Shall we eat here, Hassan?

Hassan : (1)..... .

Waiter : Good evening. (2).....?

Ali : We'd like to sit next to the window.

Waiter : Are you ready to order?

Hassan : (3).....?

Waiter : Yes, we've got fish and we've got chicken with rice.

Ali : (4)..... .

Waiter : Would you like to have a drink?

Hassan : (5)..... .

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about your house

كيفية الكتابة عن منزلك

- I'm (الاسم).
- I live with (الأشخاص).
- My house is (الوصف).
- I like to (الأنشطة التى تقوم بها فى المنزل).
- My father works in (المكان).
- I help my mother with the housework.
- I go to bed at (الساعة).

Writing tips

After brainstorming ideas and related vocabulary, start thinking about a good introduction for your paragraph.

بعد تحديد الأفكار والمفردات المرتبطة بالفقرة، ابدأ بالتفكير فى مقدمة جيدة للموضوع.

Example

My house

My name's Shahenda. I live with my parents and my sister in a large house with a beautiful garden. It's in the village. I share a room with my sister. We all get up early. We have breakfast in the garden. My dad works on the farm. He grows vegetables and fruits. I like to water the flowers and plants in the garden. I get water from an outside tap. My sister likes to feed the chickens and collect the eggs. I help my mother with the housework. I do my homework after dinner. Sometimes I help my sister with her homework. I go to bed at ten o'clock.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"A room in your house"

Take a test

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 1 Lessons (3 & 4)

17.5

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

أسيوط ٢٠٢٣

My name's Radwa. I always get up at half past six. I usually have a shower before I get dressed. I have breakfast with my family. My house is not far from my school, so I go to school on foot. I always arrive there before the bell rings. At break, I have some sandwiches and talk to my friends. I play with them in the playground. I come back home at about two o'clock. I usually feel tired then. My parents always come from work at about three o'clock. I like to help my mum make lunch. After lunch, I do my homework. I usually go to bed at nine o'clock.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Put a suitable title to the text. .....
2. What does Radwa do at break? .....
3. What do you think of Radwa? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Radwa's house is ..... her school.
   a) near b) far from c) away d) opposite
5. Radwa's parents come home at ..... o'clock.
   a) 2 b) 3 c) 4 d) 5
6. The underlined word "them" refers to Radwa's ..... .
   a) parents b) family c) friends d) sandwiches

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I felt ..... when I saw the accident. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) attractive b) nice c) good d) terrible
2. The opposite of "poor" is ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) rich b) sad c) well d) sick
3. She was wearing a very ..... dress. All her friends like it. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) bad b) ugly c) poor d) attractive
4. Ramy's house is near a railway ..... . المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) line b) village c) city d) shop
5. We ..... turns to answer the questions in the class.
   a) ask b) give c) take d) make
6. They put him in a ..... because he did something wrong. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) museum b) club c) prison d) bed

7. "Mission Impossible" is a great ..... film.
a) adventure b) boring c) careless d) ugly

8. ..... you enjoying your chocolate milk?
a) Does b) Do c) Are d) Have

9. Ayman never ..... . He has a very bad voice. الصنوصية ٢٠٢٣
a) song b) sang c) songs d) sings

10. How ..... they learn English so fast?
a) were b) are c) did d) does

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Every day, she (walk) ..... to school with her brother. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
2. They ..... (not/want) to go to the party.
3. When ..... (I/can) take a break?
4. ..... (you/are) going to have a party?

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Your typical school day" الصنوصية ٢٠٢٣

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We play in the fifteen-..... break.
a) minute b) minutes c) minute's d) minutes'

2. There is a tap to water the plants. The word "water" here is a/an ..... .
a) adjective b) verb c) noun d) adverb

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My mum ..... (doesn't) gets up late. She is very active.
2. ..... (Whose) did you go with?

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 9 - 11 | WB pages 76 - 78

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

armchair (n)	كرسى ذو مساند	cushions (n)	وسائد
basin (n)	حوض	lamp (n)	مصباح
bookshelf (n)	رف الكتب	match (ed) (v)	يطابق/يتماشى مع
carpet (n)	سجادة	mirror (n)	مرآة
chest of drawers	خزانة ذات أدراج	nature reserve (n)	محمية طبيعية
cupboard (n)	دولاب	penfriend (n)	صديق بالمراسلة
curtains (n)	ستائر	wardrobe (n)	خزانة ملابس

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

bathroom (n)	حمّام	information (n)	معلومات
bedroom (n)	حجرة نوم	nearby (adv)	مجاور/بالقرب من
breakfast break (n)	استراحة الإفطار	sunlight (n)	ضوء الشمس
description (n)	وصف	website (n)	موقع إلكترونى

Check Point

Choose and complete: bedroom - mirror - website - nearby

1. For more information, visit our ..... .
2. You can see yourself in the ..... .
3. I like to relax in my ..... .

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

get > dressed	يرتدى ملابسه	practise > English	يمارس اللغة الإنجليزية
keep > clothes	يحفظ الملابس	take > photos	يلتقط صورًا فوتوغرافية

Prepositions — حروف الجر

a reply to	ردًا على	look for	يبحث عن
a short walk from	على مسافة قصيرة من	look out of	ينظر من
belong to	تخص/تنتمى لـ	Nice to meet you!	من الجيد أن ألقاك!
hear from	يتلقى أخبارا من	on the front	فى المقدمة

Check Point

Choose and complete: for - take - practise - on

1. You need to ..... more to improve your English.
2. He started to look ..... a new job.
3. Students can't ..... photos at this museum.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
keep	يحفظ/يحتفظ بـ	kept	kept	sell	يبيع	sold	sold

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
comfortable	مريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	hate/dislike	يكره

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية

1 would ('d) love/like to + inf. — يود أن

- I'd love to **visit** the nature reserves near El Faiyoum.

2 Thanks for/Thank you for + (n/v. ing) — شكرًا على

- Thank you for **sending** me your profile.
- I just wanted to say thanks for **the present** you sent.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Definitions — التعريفات

a chest of drawers	خزانة ذات أدراج	it has drawers[1] where you can put your clothes
basin	حوض	something you can wash your face in
carpets	سجاد	these are on the floor[2]
curtains	ستائر	they are next to your windows and you close them at night
lamp	مصباح	it gives you light[3]
mirror	مرآة	you can see yourself in this
wardrobe	خزانة ملابس	it is a big cupboard where you can put[4] your clothes

(1) أدراج
(2) الأرضية
(3) ضوء
(4) يضع

Prepositions of place — حروف جر المكان

above	فوق	next to	بجوار
behind	خلف	on	على
in front of	أمام	opposite	مواجه لـ
near	بالقرب من	under	تحت

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word — الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) — مرادفها	
comfortable	مريح	relaxing — مريح
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	like/love — يحب

Suffix اللاحقة

Word — الكلمة	Suffix — اللاحقة	Function — الوظيفة	The new word — الكلمة الجديدة	
inform (v)	-ation	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	information (n)	معلومات

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word — الكلمة	Similar word — الكلمة المشابهة	
lamp	lamb	خروف صغير
match	much	كثير

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

Pre-listening question:

- Do you have a room of your own? Can you describe it?

Listen to two descriptions. Which room is each person describing?

SB page 9

Narrator 1

Boy My room is small, but it's really attractive(1). I have a lamp(2) on a bookshelf(3) next to my bed so I can read at night. I have a wardrobe(4) with a mirror(5) on the front, and my desk is under the window. Do you like my curtains(6)? The colour matches the carpet(7).

The best thing about my room is the sofa. I can sit there and read or watch videos on my computer.



(1) جذاب (2) مصباح
(3) رف الكتب (4) دولاب ملابس
(5) مرآة (6) ستائر
(7) سجادة (8) وسائد
(9) كرسي ذو مسند (10) خزانة ذات أدراج
(11) حوض

Narrator 2

Girl My bed is under the window. There are cushions(8) on it! Sometimes I sleep with the curtains open because I like to look out of the window! I've got lots of books, and I like to sit and read in the big armchair(9). I keep some clothes in the chest of drawers(10). Our bathroom is downstairs, but I have a basin(11) in my room, where I can wash my face before I go to bed.



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

basin /'beɪsən/
wardrobe /wɔ:'droʊb/

Post-listening question:

- Mention 3 differences between the two rooms.

Pre-listening question: - Which room in the house is your favourite?

Listen and complete the description of the bedroom. *WB page 76*



Girl : I like my parents' bedroom. When they open the curtains, there is always lots of sunlight in the room. Their bed is **under** the window. In **front** of the bed, they have a big **wardrobe**. My mum puts her dresses in there. There is also an **armchair** next to the window. My dad sometimes reads his book here. He puts his clothes in a big chest of **drawers**. This is **behind** the door. They don't have a **basin** in their room because the bathroom is next to their room, but they have a big **mirror**. My sister always likes to look at herself in it!

Lesson 6

Read the email. Why does Judy want a penfriend? *SB page 10*

Dear Rebecca,

It is very nice to meet you. I'm from El Faiyoum, in Egypt. It's a large city, with beautiful nature reserves[1] nearby. I live with my parents and my brother in a flat. My grandparents live in a flat downstairs.



(1) محميات طبيعية (2) صديق بالمراسلة

On Saturdays, I usually get up early and help my grandmother with her shopping, then I read or do my homework. In the afternoons, I visit my friends or play computer games with my brother.

My favourite subjects are maths and English. Thank you for being my penfriend[2]. I'm happy to practise my English!

I hope to hear from you soon.

Judy

Post-reading question: - Summarise the text in 20 words.

Pre-reading question:

- If you have a penfriend, what would you like to write to him?

Put this email to a penfriend in the correct order. *WB page 77*

Hi Leila



b. [1] Thank you for your email. Here is some information about me. I live with my parents and my two sisters in Oxford. We live in a house but we don't have a garden. Does your home have a garden?

a. [2] Without a garden, I often go to the park at the weekends. I love taking photos of the birds there. Do you have many birds where you live?

d. [3] I enjoy my school and I have many friends there. The school is a short walk from my house. Is your school nearby, or is it far from your home?

c. [4] I hope you can write to me again soon and please answer my questions!

Best wishes.

Mariana

Note:

question /'kwestʃən/ تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

Post-reading question: - What is Mariana's favourite hobby?

Life Skills

1. How often do you see your grandparents?
2. How can grandparents help young people in the family, and how can you help them?

Lesson 7

Pre-reading question:

- How many lessons do you have every day?

Complete the emails with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. *SB page 11*

Hi Alex!

Thanks for being my penfriend. I'm from England. I **get up** at about half past seven, and then my mum **makes** breakfast for the family.

I **walk** to school with my brother. Our school **finishes** at three o'clock. After school, we sometimes **do** sport or play music.

I **don't watch** TV when I get home. I always **do** my homework first.

Can you tell me about your typical daily routine in Germany?

Hi Dan!

Thanks for your email. In Germany, school **starts** very early in the morning. So, I **don't have** breakfast before school. There's a "breakfast break" after the first lesson. How many lessons **does your school have** every day?

Post-reading question:

- Where is Dan from?

Complete the text with words from the picture: *SB page 11*

I love my bedroom! I have a big white **wardrobe** in the corner. Next to it, there is a **mirror.** I look at myself in it in the mornings. I also have a small **bookshelf** where I put my books.

Next to this, there is a big window. I have blue **curtains** on it. I close them at night. I also have a red **lamp** next to my **bed.** I use it to read before I go to sleep.

Also in my bedroom, there is a grey **armchair.** I sit and read my book there sometimes. There is also a **chest of drawers.** I put my T-shirts, socks and other clothes in it. Finally, there is a big **carpet** on the floor!

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I have a/an ..... in my room, where I can wash my face before I go to bed. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) window b) bed c) armchair d) basin
2. We usually keep our clothes in a ..... . السرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) basin b) wardrobe c) bottle d) classroom
3. When I open the ..... in my room, there is a lot of sunlight. الصنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) basin b) carpet c) curtains d) bookshelf
4. There's a brown ..... on the floor of the living room. السويس ٢٠٢٣
   a) cupboard b) curtain c) carpet d) drawer
5. If you look at a ....., you will see yourself. WB
   a) tap b) carpet c) curtain d) mirror
6. ..... give us light. WB
   a) Lips b) Lambs c) Lamps d) Limps
7. I put my books on the ..... . الصنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) bookshop b) bookstore c) bookshelf d) pocket
8. In my bedroom, I have a wardrobe with a mirror ..... the front.
   a) on b) in c) at d) of
9. Come and sit on this ....., four people can sit on it. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) routine b) sofa c) chair d) seat
10. There are ..... on my bed.
    a) lamps b) carpets c) sofas d) cushions
11. There's a grey ..... in my bedroom. I sit on it to read books. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
    a) wardrobe b) cupboard c) armchair d) mirror
12. I am writing a reply ..... my friend.
    a) of b) on c) from d) to

Time to Practise



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The floor is covered with a ..... . (المترجمة ٢٠٢٣)
   a) carpet b) mirror c) basin d) chairs
2. He puts his toys in a big chest of ..... .
   a) drawers b) sofa c) prison d) lamp
3. Students should ..... English every day to be good at it.
   a) play b) practise c) keep d) send
4. There is always ..... when she opens the windows. (التجربة ٢٠٢٢)
   a) a carpet b) sunlight c) a floor d) a sofa
5. The curtains ..... the painting and the bed. They are the same colour. (الترفيه ٢٠٢٢)
   a) deal b) treat c) play d) match
6. I would love to look ..... my bedroom window.
   a) at b) of c) out d) out of
7. I usually get up early and help my mother ..... her shopping.
   a) with b) to c) for d) at
8. I have a ..... in London. I send him emails in English.
   a) sofa b) flat c) penfriend d) reserve
9. My mother keeps her clothes in a big ..... . (التجميل ٢٠٢٣)
   a) bed b) wardrobe c) armchair d) bookshelf
10. I didn't hear ..... my best friend last month.
    a) of b) about c) to d) from
11. I love ..... photos of the birds.
    a) making b) doing c) taking d) giving
12. I ..... my school and I have many friends there.
    a) enjoy b) hate c) dislike d) practise



لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 1 Lessons (5&6)

15.5

1 Complete the following dialogue:

الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

Jana is telling Judy about her bedroom.

Judy : Do you live in a house?

Jana : (1)..... . I live in a house with a large garden.

Judy : Fantastic! (2).....?

Jana : We've got three rooms.

Judy : Have you got a bedroom of your own?

Jana : (3)..... . I share a room with my sister.

Judy : (4).....?

Jana : I like my bedroom because it has a big window and a wardrobe.

Judy : Are there any curtains in your room?

Jana : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ..... is a piece of furniture where you can put your clothes. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

a) basin b) curtain c) lamp d) wardrobe

2. Every bathroom should have a ..... to wash in it. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

a) basin b) basket c) pencil d) rubber

3. We put ..... on the windows to keep the light out. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢

a) carpets b) floors c) maps d) curtains

4. El Faiyoum is a large city, with beautiful nature reserves ..... . الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢

a) under b) nearby c) next d) up

5. I'm happy to have a penfriend because I'm able to ..... my English.

a) read b) wash c) practise d) keep

6. I ..... dressed before I have breakfast with my family.

a) get b) make c) have d) give

7. The colour of the curtains ..... the carpet.

a) keeps b) matches c) practises d) finishes

8. All children ..... football on holidays.
a) usually plays b) usually play c) plays usually d) play usually

9. I ..... visit my grandparents on Sunday afternoons.
a) every b) next c) ago d) always

10. ..... you live in a large house?
a) Do b) Where c) Are d) Why

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I ..... (always) go to school on foot. It's too far.
2. Salma sometimes ..... (watch) basketball matches.
3. **A:** ..... (Why) do you live? **B:** In Benha.
4. ..... (Does) Mai at school yesterday?

4 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Ahmed to tell him about your bedroom. Your name is Tamer and your email address is tamer@student.com. Your friend's email address is ahmed@student.com. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1. Sometimes I sleep with the curtains ..... because I like the cool air.
a) opens b) opening c) open d) opened

2. I like to look ..... the window and see cars on the road.
a) off b) of c) out d) out of

3. El Faiyoum is a large city ..... beautiful nature reserves nearby.
a) with b) to c) for d) on

Review on Unit 7

Vocabulary

a block of flats	عمارة سكنية
armchair	كرسى ذو مساند
attractive	جذاب
mirror	مراة
basin	حوض
nature reserve	محمية طبيعية
penfriend	صديق بالمراسلة
bookshelf	رف الكتب
carpet	سجادة
prison	سجن
chest of drawers	خزانة ذات أدراج
cupboard	دولاب
railway line	خط سكة حديد
curtains	ستائر
cushions	وسائد
routine	روتين/نظام يومى
tap	صنبور/حنفية
terrible	فظيع/سيئ جدًا
interview	مقابلة/حوار
lamp	مصباح
typical	نموذجى/مثالى
wardrobe	خزانة ملابس

Language

The present simple tense: زمن المضارع البسيط

1 Usage:

It's used to express habits and facts.

يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن العادات والحقائق.

2 Affirmative:

- I play football at the club.
- **She** cooks fish every week.

3 Negative:

- **I** don't **walk** to school.
- **Habiba** doesn't **like** cake.

4 Questions:

- Do they study French?
- Does he study French?
- Where does Ali live?

5 Adverbs of frequency: ظروف التكرار

always دائمًا/usually عادة/often غالبًا/sometimes أحيانًا/never أبدًا

6 How to form a question: كيفية تكوين سؤال:

- Is Basma eating?
- Do they like fish?
- Did Aya make lunch?
- When will they travel to Aswan?
- What is Karim doing?

Skills

Discussing daily routines:

مناقشة الروتين اليومى.

- What time do you get up?
  - I always get up at six a.m.
- How do you get to school?
  - I usually get to school by bike.
- Where do you live?
  - I live in Alexandria.
- Who do you live with?
  - I live with my family.

Asking for something:

- Can I **have** a cup of tea, please?

Suggesting doing something:

- Shall I **help** you to cut it?
- Let's go to the park tomorrow.

Asking about feelings:

- How did you feel at the party?

Question Bank

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 1

24

A Listening

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. Where is Li Shang from?
   a) China. b) India.
   c) Egypt. d) Morocco.
2. What does Li Shang do after dinner?
   a) Do homework. b) Watch TV.
   c) Help his brother. d) Go to bed.
3. Does Li Shang have a room for herself?
   a) Yes. b) No.
   c) We don't know. d) Maybe.
4. What time does Li Shang have her dinner?
   a) At eight p.m. b) At nine p.m.
   c) At ten p.m. d) At eleven p.m.

B Language Functions

2 **Complete the following dialogue:**

القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

Nada is asking Ola about her interests.

Nada : What are you interested in?
Ola : (1)..... .
Nada : (2).....?
Ola : I enjoy reading at the library.
Nada : (3).....?
Ola : This book is about the history of Egypt.
Nada : Do you like history?
Ola : (4)..... .
Nada : Can I borrow this book, please?
Ola : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

My name is Judy. I have a penfriend from England. Her name is Rebecca, I'm from El Fayoum. It's a large city with beautiful nature reserves nearby. I live with my parents and my brother in a flat. My grandparents live in a flat downstairs. On Saturdays, I usually get up early and help my grandmother with her shopping, then I read or do my homework. In the afternoon, I visit my friends or play computer games with my brother. My favourite subjects are maths and English. I'm happy to have a penfriend because I'm able to practise my English.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?

.....

2. Where do her grandparents live?

.....

3. Do you think it's a good idea to have penfriends? Why?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to ..... .
   a) Giza b) Alexandria c) Cairo d) El Faiyoum
5. The underlined word "grandparents" means ..... .
   a) father and mother b) grandmother and grandfather
   c) brother and sister d) uncle and aunt
6. She plays computer games with her ..... .
   a) brother b) friends c) parents d) penfriend

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My new house is really ..... . We all love it. الصومعة ٢٠٢٣
   a) ugly b) terrible c) bad d) attractive
2. My ..... routine is the same every day. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) daily b) dairy c) sadly d) badly
3. Children like to go to parks to ..... fun.
   a) take b) have c) play d) go

4. We have a nearby ..... . Its water is very clean. الدهقلية ٢٠٢٣
a) tip b) tap c) tape d) top

5. When a person does something wrong, he goes to the ..... .
a) school b) university c) prison d) desert

6. He watches football matches on an internet ..... . المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
a) phone b) printer c) website d) charger

7. I really ..... that film. It was exciting.
a) kept b) disliked c) enjoyed d) hated

8. Students ..... in classes during the break. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
a) stay always b) never stay c) always stay d) stay never

9. I ..... listen to music on my way to school. I don't like music. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
a) always b) usually c) often d) never

10. ..... didn't you come to school yesterday?
a) When b) Where c) What d) Why

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My sister ..... (isn't) help in the kitchen. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
2. Nada doesn't ..... (get/usually) up before seven. WB
3. **A:** ..... (Do) you study Arabic yesterday? **B:** No, I didn't.
4. Why ..... (he/shout) at you yesterday?

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Your family house"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!



Unit 2

How are you feeling?

Objectives of the unit

Reading	A text about night workers; descriptions of weekend activities; an article about happiness for teenagers; an informal email
Writing	A text to describe a place or a photo; an email to a friend
Listening	People talking about learning new skills; descriptions of photos
Speaking	Describing weekend activities; describing photos; responding to news
Language	Adverbs of manner
Life Skills	Empathy
Values	Patience
Issues	Social participation

Tapescript

SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 12 - 15 | WB pages 79 & 80

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

artist (n)	فنان	repair (ed) (v)	يصلح
calligraphy (n)	فن الخط	sewing (n)	الخياطة/الحياكة
deaf (adj)	أصم	sign language (n)	لغة الإشارة
food stall (n)	كشك الطعام	skill (n)	مهارة
neighbour (n)	جار	tourist (n)	سائح
park (ed) (v)	يركن السيارة	ward (n)	جناح/قسم/عنبر
patients (n)	المرضى	wave (d) (v)	يلوح بيده

Jobs الوظائف

call-centre worker (n)	عامل مركز الاتصال	police officer (n)	ضابط شرطة
computer engineer (n)	مهندس كمبيوتر	shop worker (n)	عامل فى محل
nurse (n)	ممرضة	street-food seller (n)	بائع طعام بالشارع

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

dance (d) (v)	يرقص	paint (ed) (v)	يدهن/يلون
fantastic (adj)	رائع	present (n)	هدية

Check Point

Choose and complete: skills - wave - computer - ward

1. My father works as a ..... engineer.
2. Mohamed Salah has great ..... .
3. My mother is a nurse in the children's ..... .

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

catch > fish	يصطاد سمكًا	have/take	>	a rest	يأخذ راحة
get > ready	يستعد	make	>	a calligraphy book	يعد كتاب فن الخط
give > a surprise	يفاجئ			sure	يتأكد

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun	(adj) = adjective	(prep) = preposition
(v) = verb	(adv) = adverb	(conj) = conjunction

Prepositions — حروف الجر

by the fountain	بجوار النافورة	look after	يعتنى بـ
communicate with	يتواصل مع	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
excited about	متحمس بخصوص	on a boat	فى قارب
go on a trip	يذهب فى رحلة	tin of beans	علبة فول

Check Point

Choose and complete: have - about - by - on

1. I usually cross the river ..... a boat.
2. You look tired, let's ..... a rest.
3. I'm excited ..... the trip.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
catch يمسك/يلحق بـ/يصطاد	caught	caught	speak يتحدث	spoke	spoken
drink يشرب	drank	drunk	swim يسبح/يعوم	swam	swum
drive يقود/يسوق	drove	driven	teach يُعلم/يُدرس	taught	taught
hear يسمع	heard	heard	understand يفهم	understood	understood
hurt يصيب/يؤذى/يؤلم	hurt	hurt	wear يرتدى	wore	worn

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
busy	مزدحم/مشغول	free	متفرغ
hungry	جوعان	full	ممتلئ/شبعان
lazy	كسول	active	نشيط
lovely	جميل/رائع	ugly	قبيح
stay	يبقى/يقيم/يظل	leave	يغادر
traditional	تقليدى	modern	حديث

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية

1 look forward to + (v-ing/n) يتطلع إلى

- I look forward to **going** home and **having** a rest.
- He looks forward to **a new job.**

2 adjectives ending with (ing/ed)

عند وصف الكائن الحى (إنسان/طائر/حيوان) نستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) أو بـ (ed)

- نستخدم (ing) إذا كان الكائن الحى يسبب الصفة. - نستخدم (ed) إذا كان الكائن الحى يشعر بالصفة.

- The lion is standing in front of the goats. The lion is frightening. The goats are frightened.

3 start/begin + (to + inf.)/(v + ing) يبدأ

- People start **(to buy/buying)** their breakfast at 6 a.m.

4 would prefer to + inf. يفضل أن

- I'd prefer **to study** English in England.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
cold	بارد	cool	بارد
lovely	جميل/رائع	beautiful	جميل

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
danger (n)	خطر	-ous		تحويل الاسم إلى صفة		dangerous (adj)	خطير
tradition (n)	تقليد/عادة	-al				traditional (adj)	تقليدى

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question: - What job do you want to do in the future?

Lesson 1

3 am in Cairo

Read about some people in the photos. What are their jobs? *SB page 13*

A: I'm looking after patients[1] at a hospital. It's very busy. I'm looking after children in the children's ward[2]. I like my job, but I'm feeling tired tonight. I'm looking forward to[3] going home and having a rest.

Amal



B: We're driving around the city and making sure[4] that people are safe in the streets. We aren't very busy tonight. It's cold, so everyone is staying at home. Adel's feeling a bit bored and I'm feeling hungry. I'm looking forward to having breakfast!

Emad and Adel



C: I'm parking[5] my food stall[6] here because it's the best place in the city. Lots of people and tourists come this way. People start to buy their breakfast at 6 am. I'm getting everything ready. I'm feeling cold and I'm looking forward to drinking some hot coffee!

Kamal



(1) المرضى (2) حنام الأطفال

(3) بتطلع إلى (4) بتأكد

(5) بركن (6) كشك الطعام

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

ward /wɔ:rd/ stall /stɔ:l/

Post-reading questions:

1. Do you think Amal is working hard? Why/Why not?
2. Why do you think Kamal is looking forward to some hot coffee?

Lesson 2

Pre-listening question:

- What skills would you like to learn during the summer holiday?

Listen to three people talking about learning new skills and put the photos in the correct order.

SB page 15

Tamer I'm Tamer. At the moment I'm learning a new skill[1]. I'm learning sign language[2] so I can communicate[3] better with my cousin, Sami. Sami is deaf[4] – he can't hear. He's learning sign language at school, too. I'm having sign language lessons on Saturday morning so I can give Sami a surprise[5]!



Eman I'm Eman. At the weekend, I'm learning to do lots of new things. Our neighbour, Mr Osman, is in hospital at the moment. With some other neighbours in our building, we're repairing his flat. He lives in a lovely flat, but he can't look after it at the moment. My sisters and I are painting the kitchen and I am also sewing some new curtains.



Manal I'm Manal. Mona and I are starting a calligraphy[6] and art club at school. We're very excited about it. My uncle is an artist[7] and he's coming to the school to teach us. We're studying traditional[8] Arabic calligraphy and we're enjoying it very much. I'm making a calligraphy book for my uncle as a present.



(1) مهارة (2) لغة الإشارة (3) يتواصل (4) أصم

(5) مفاجأة (6) من الخط (7) فنان (8) تقليدي

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

neighbour /neɪbər/ calligraphy /kəlɪgrəfi/

Post-listening question:

- Why do you think Tamer is interested in learning sign language?

Pre-reading question: - What do you do at the weekend?

Read about what Ziad, Injy and Aya do at the weekend. Choose two sentences from a-d to complete each text. *SB page 14*



1. Hi, I'm Ziad. I live with my mum and dad in a small flat in Minya. At the weekend, I'm usually quite lazy.

b d



2. Hello, I'm Injy and this is my sister Aya. We live near the sea.

a c

(a) My father and my uncle have an old boat which they are repairing. I am learning to sail but Aya doesn't like the water very much!

(b) On Friday evening, my parents and I usually have a big dinner with my grandparents and we sometimes stay at their house. It's bigger than our flat.

(c) At the weekend, we do our homework and on Saturday we sometimes spend time with our father and uncle on their boat.

(d) On Saturday morning, I often stay in bed and then I have a late breakfast with grandmother - she's a fantastic cook! In the afternoon, I do my homework.

Post-reading question: - What do you think of Injy?

Listen to four people doing the jobs in Exercise 1. Write their jobs. *WB page 79*

Man 1 I'm sorry, sir, but you can't leave your car here.

Woman 1 There seems to be a problem with the keyboard, but it won't take me long.

Woman 2 Good morning, this is Dina speaking, how can I help you?

Man 2 Are you looking for tins of beans? You can find them on the top shelf, over there.

Answers:

(1) **A police officer**

(2) **A computer engineer**

(3) **A call-centre worker**

(4) **A shop worker**

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practice more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If there is a problem with your computer system, you can call a/an ..... . الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) engineer b) computer engineer
   c) shop worker d) nurse
2. A ..... prepares food for people to eat in the streets. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) shop worker b) police officer c) nurse d) street-food seller
3. Police officers should ..... sure that people are safe at the museum. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) take b) make c) give d) put
4. My cousin draws very well. He wants to be a/an ..... . المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) engineer b) doctor c) artist d) pilot
5. ..... is beautiful writing using special pens or brushes. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) Calligraphy b) Photography c) Sewing d) Wedding
6. Deaf people ..... in sign language. بني سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) recommend b) make c) cook d) communicate
7. I'm ..... forward to meeting my uncle. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) taking b) looking c) making d) doing
8. You should ..... a rest after working for many hours.
   a) catch b) do c) have d) make
9. The film is ..... . You should watch it. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) terrible b) bad c) boring d) fantastic
10. Nurses look ..... patients in their rooms. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
    a) at b) for c) after d) forward to
11. Shady is deaf, but he understands us because we use ..... . نور سعيد ٢٠٢٢
    a) food stall b) sign language
    c) colours d) sports
12. The street-food seller is ..... his food stall here.
    a) making b) sailing c) parking d) selling
13. We went ..... a trip last week. It was lovely.
    a) on b) in c) at d) with

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ..... can look after people's health. العربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) Teachers b) Nurses c) Workers d) Engineers
2. I'm feeling ..... . I'm looking forward to having breakfast!
   a) fantastic b) full c) busy d) hungry
3. The boy is ..... but he understands us as we use sign language. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) blind b) deaf c) sick d) patient
4. She lives next door. She is my ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) patient b) classmate c) servant d) neighbour
5. She works in the children's ....., she is a doctor. العربية ٢٠٢٣
   a) store b) word c) ward d) words
6. This book is ....., you should read it. بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢
   a) useless b) fantastic c) boring d) bad
7. We need a computer engineer to ..... our computer. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) repair b) paint c) help d) pay
8. There is a beautiful ..... in our garden. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) temple b) fountain c) museum d) ward
9. A street-food seller puts his food ..... in the best place. الصوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) still b) stall c) star d) straight
10. I should ..... everything ready before people come to buy the food.
    a) catch b) do c) make d) get
11. I don't see my father a lot. He's always ..... working.
    a) busy b) ugly c) tiring d) excited
12. My little brother is very ..... . He always wants to stay at home and watch TV! القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
    a) excited b) careful c) lazy d) hungry
13. I'm feeling ..... and I want to drink some hot coffee.
    a) hot b) cold c) warm d) full

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE زمن المضارع المستمر

Usage الاستخدام

We use the present continuous to talk about things that are happening now.

- يعبر عن شيء يحدث الآن (وقت الكلام).

- I am sitting in my English class now.
- She is writing a letter at the moment.

Form التكوين

I	am (not)	
He / She / It	is (isn't)	Inf. + ing
You / We / They	are (aren't)	

- I am playing chess.
- I am not playing cards.
- He is having lunch.
- She is not (isn't) watching TV.
- They are sleeping.
- We are not (aren't) diving.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

at the moment في هذه اللحظة - Look! انظر - Listen! أنصت - Watch out! احترس
at present في الوقت الحاضر - now الآن)

- My grandfather is repairing his laptop now.
- My uncle is watching TV at the moment.

لاحظ

عند إضافة الـ (ing) للفعل:

- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) نحذف الـ (e) عند إضافة الـ (ing):

- (take - taking) - (come - coming)

- بعض الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن قبله متحرك واحد غالبًا ما نضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة الـ (ing):

- (put - putting) - (cut - cutting)
- (swim - swimming)

- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (ie) نحذف الـ (ie) ثم نضم (ying).

- (lie - lying) - (die - dying)

Question السؤال

Yes/No questions

Am / Is / Are } subj. الفاعل > inf. + ing ...?

A: Are you learning sign language?
B: Yes, I am./ B: No, I am not.

A: Is Sara cooking lunch?
B: Yes, she is./ B: No, she isn't.

Wh-questions

- فى حالة السؤال بكلمة استفهام: يتم وضع أداة الاستفهام قبل (is/are)

Q. word أداة الاستفهام — am / is / are } subj. الفاعل > inf. + ing ...?

- What is he doing?
  He's doing his homework.
- What are you doing?
  I'm helping my father.

- لاحظ الفرق فى الاستخدام بين المضارع البسيط والمضارع المستمر:

The present simple tense	The present continuous tense
It's used to express: **a) Habits:** عادات • I always drink milk for breakfast. **b) Routines and repeated actions:** الروتين والأفعال المتكررة • We go to school every day. **c) Things that are always true:** حقائق • My aunt lives in Cairo.	**It' used to express:** **a) Things that are happening now:** أشياء تحدث وقت الكلام • Listen! Amir is shouting. **b) Unfinished actions in progress around now:** أفعال تحدث ولكن لم تنته إلى الآن • Hany is studying medicine. **c) Temporary situations or actions:** أفعال أو مواقف مؤقتة • They are painting the school this week.

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال
تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Is your brother ..... (watch) TV now?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (watching) لوجود now الدالة على زمن المضارع المستمر ولوجود Is التى يتبعها فعل مضاف له (ing).

2 She ..... (not/drink) coffee very often.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (doesn't drink) لوجود often الدالة على العادة فى المضارع البسيط.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Listen! Sara ..... the piano. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) plays b) played c) play d) is playing
2. What is she ..... in the kitchen now? قنا ٢٠٢٢
   a) cooking b) cooked c) cooks d) cook
3. Basel usually repairs computers, but today he ..... his grandparents. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) visits b) are visiting c) visit d) is visiting
4. Hassan ....., so he can't answer the phone. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) sleeps b) is sleeping c) slept d) was sleeping
5. Mazen ..... his homework at the moment. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) is doing b) does c) did d) doing
6. I'm ..... tired tonight. I want to have a rest.
   a) feeling b) feel c) felt d) feels
7. Ahmed ..... his computer at the moment. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) repairs b) repair c) repaired d) is repairing
8. What ..... doing at the moment? أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) they are b) are they c) they were d) were they
9. Where ..... your father work?
   a) has b) do c) is d) does
10. Today is sunny, so everyone ..... a picnic.
    a) have b) having c) is having d) are having

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We are ..... (watch) a film now. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
2. Drive carefully here because they ..... (repair) the road. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
3. It isn't ..... (rain) outside. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
4. What is Salma ..... (do) now? المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
5. She ..... (write) an email now. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
6. On Saturday, we sometimes ..... (spending) time on a boat.

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Layal is ..... with her teacher.
   a) speaking b) speak c) spoke d) speaks
2. Are you ..... sign language at the moment? الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) learn b) learning c) learns d) learnt
3. The police officer ..... a school today. بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢
   a) visiting b) visits c) is visiting d) visit
4. Why ..... everyone staying at home? قنا ٢٠٢٣
   a) is b) does c) are d) do
5. We're driving around the city and ..... sure that people are safe in the streets.
   a) making b) make c) made d) to make
6. Listen, a nice singer ..... on the radio. الصومعة ٢٠٢٢
   a) is singing b) sings c) sang d) would sing
7. They ..... chess at the moment. الصومعة ٢٠٢٣
   a) play b) plays c) are playing d) playing
8. On Friday evening, my parents and I usually ..... TV together.
   a) watched b) watching c) watch d) are watching
9. I am learning to sail, but my brother ..... like it very much!
   a) aren't b) don't c) doesn't d) isn't
10. Tamer is a student, but he ..... this week to help his poor family.
    a) works b) work c) working d) is working

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Ali ..... (drink) a cold drink now. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
2. He ..... (mend) his car now. الصومعة ٢٠٢٢
3. What ..... (was) Emad eating? It looks very nice. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
4. ..... (You are) looking for a new job?
5. Jomana is ..... (wrote) a message now. بني سويف ٢٠٢٣
6. The children are ..... (sing) in the playground. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

D Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about the job you like

كيفية الكتابة عن الوظيفة التى تحبها

- There are many good jobs.
- I'm looking forward to being (الوظيفة) one day.
- This job of (الوظيفة) is very important.
- I like it because (السبب).
- The person who does this job (طبيعة العمل).
- I like helping people to (ما ستفعله لمساعدة الناس).
- It's very interesting.

Writing tips

The body of the paragraph is where you explain and mention more examples. Elaborate on ideas, each idea is explained in one sentence.
هيكل الفقرة عبارة عن شرح وذكر الكثير من الأمثلة. وضح أفكارك، كل فكرة فى جملة.

Example

A job I like

There are many interesting jobs. I think the doctor's job is the most important one. He/She helps us get better after being sick. I look forward to becoming a doctor one day to look after the sick and try to find out the reason for that. He/She always looks after ill people and tries to find out why they are ill or what hurts them. If a doctor understands their illness, he/she gives them the right medicines to feel better. A good doctor usually makes sure that all people feel healthy. The nurse's job is also important as he/she helps doctors and patients. They are truly angels. We have to work hard to have the jobs we dream of.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Your dream job"

My name's .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 2 Lessons (1 & 2)

19.5

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

1. Where did they go to on the last trip?
   a) To the sea. b) To the desert.
   c) To the beach. d) To the mountains.
2. Where are they all sitting?
   a) On the sand. b) Near the sea. c) On the rocks. d) Into the cave.
3. Why are they sitting carefully? - Because the rocks are ..... .
   a) careful b) sharp c) beautiful d) blunt
4. Where is the speaker sitting?
   a) Under a tree. b) On the sand.
   c) On the beach. d) On a mountain.

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Malak is telling Sahar that she is doing a project for her English homework.

Sahar : How are you, Malak?
Malak : (1)..... .
Sahar : (2).....?
Malak : I'm doing a project for my English homework.
Sahar : (3).....?
Malak : I want to be a teacher of English.
Sahar : Why would you like to be an English teacher?
Malak : (4)..... .
Sahar : Is your father a teacher, too?
Malak : (5)..... . My father is a doctor.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The ..... helps to keep people safe in the street. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) engineer b) police officer c) shop worker d) nurse
2. I had lots of ..... on my birthday from my friends.
   a) artists b) signs c) presents d) wards
3. The nurse works on the ..... for children. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) ward b) word c) world d) farm
4. A ..... worker is the person who answers phone calls. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) art club b) street food c) sign language d) call centre
5. We didn't tell our friend about her present to ..... her a surprise.
   a) give b) have c) make d) feel

6. My mother is good at ..... . She always makes her clothes by herself.
a) waving b) dancing c) sewing d) drawing

7. Calligraphy needs a great ..... . الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
a) skull b) score c) skill d) speed

8. Look at that dog. It ..... water from the lake.
a) drinks b) drink c) drank d) is drinking

9. How ..... your parents feeling now?
a) have b) is c) are d) do

10. Every Monday, Sally ..... her kids to the football practice.
a) drive b) drives c) driving d) is driving

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Fady is ..... (listen) to music at the moment. السويس ٢٠٢٣
2. She's ..... (run) because she's late for her lesson.
3. He ..... (work) today. He's on holiday.
4. I'm looking forward to ..... (go) home and having a rest. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

5 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Your favourite job" سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'm looking forward to going home. My job is ..... .
a) tire b) tires c) tiring d) tired

2. Police officers are driving around the city to ..... sure that people are safe.
a) do b) have c) make d) be

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. It's cold, so everyone ..... (are) staying at home.
2. I'm looking forward to going home and ..... (have) a rest.

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 3 & 4



SB pages 16 - 18 | WB pages 81 & 82

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

airport (n)	مطار	normal (adj)	عادى
alone (adj/adv)	بمفرده	relax (ed) (v)	يسترخى
crowds (n)	الحشد/الجمهور	sharp (adj)	حاد
desert (n)	صحراء	skin (n)	جلد
grateful (adj)	ممتن/شاكر	striped (adj)	مقلم/مخطط
guest (n)	ضيف	suitcase (n)	حقيبة سفر
happiness (n)	السعادة	teenager (n)	مراهق
human (n)	إنسان	treat (ed) (v)	يعامل/يعالج
nature (n)	الطبيعة	wedding (n)	حفل زفاف

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

aged (adj)	بالغ من العمر	laugh (ed) (v)	يضحك
continue (d) (v)	يستمر	magazine (n)	مجلة
exciting (adj)	مثير	port (n)	ميناء
hill (n)	تل/هضبة	suit (n)	بدلة
husband (n)	زوج	weeding (n)	إزالة الأعشاب الضارة

Check Point

Choose and complete: (teenager - relax - exciting - nature)

1. I read a/an ..... book yesterday.
2. I need to have a shower to ..... .
3. He's still a ..... . He's 17.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

catch	a plane	يلحق بالطائرة	get	a rest	يحصل على راحة
do	well	يؤدى جيدًا		married	يتزوج
	wrong	يخطئ		texts	يتلقى رسائل نصية
feel	better	يشعر بتحسن		worried	يقلق
make	friends	يكوّن صداقات	take	a selfie/photo	يلتقط صورة شخصية

Prepositions — حروف الجر

for the first time	لأول مرة	happy/pleased about	سعيد/مسرور بخصوص
get on a plane	يركب طائرة	on a trip to	فى رحلة إلى
go into	يدخل	smile (d) at	يبتسم لـ

Check Point

Choose and complete: (selfie - at - get - for)

1. My sister will ..... married next Friday.
2. Nada always smiles ..... her friends.
3. Judy enjoys taking a ..... .

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
choose	يختار	chose	chosen	sew	يخيط	sewed	sewn
fly	يطير	flew	flown	show	يعرض/يبين/يوضح	showed	shown
hang	يعلق	hung	hung	win	يفوز	won	won

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
dark	غامق	light	فاتح
friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود
normal	عادى	abnormal	غير عادى
win	يفوز	lose	يخسر

Language Notes


ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية

make + adj/inf. يجعل

- The trip made the children **happy**.
- This medicine will make you **feel** better.

Vocabulary Builder


جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Definitions التعريفات

alone	بمفرده	not with other people
desert	الصحراء	an area[1] of very dry land
grateful	ممتن/شاكر	feeling happy about the good things in your life
nature	الطبيعة	everything[2] in the world that is not made by humans[3]
normal	طبيعى	usual not different
teenager	مراهق	a boy or girl aged 13 - 19

(1) مساحة
(2) كل شىء
(3) البشر

Prepositions of place حروف جر المكان

behind	خلف	in the middle	فى الوسط
in front of	أمام	on the left	على اليسار
in the background	فى الخلفية	on the right	على اليمين
in the foreground	فى المقدمة/الطليعة	towards the right/left	نحو اليمين/اليسار

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
relax	يسترخى	calm	يهدأ
win	يفوز	beat	يهزم

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
friend (n)	صديق	-ly		تحويل الاسم إلى صفة		friendly (adj)	ودود
happy (adj)	سعيد	-ness		تحويل الصفة إلى اسم		happiness (n)	السعادة

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-listening question:

- What do you do to keep good memories alive?

Listen to the descriptions and put the photos in the correct order. *SB page 16*

Girl 1 This is a photo of my sister's wedding[1]. It's at the end of the day and the guests[2] are slowly leaving. Most of the family are still there, though, and still enjoying the party. That's my sister smiling happily at the camera and the man next to her is Youssef, her husband.



Boy 1 That's my class on our school trip to the mountains. We're sitting carefully on the rocks[3] because they are very sharp[4]! We got up at 5:00 o'clock in the morning and walked for hours and hours. You can't see me in this picture. I'm sitting under a tree and hungrily eating my lunch.



Boy 2 This is me at the airport[5]. I'm waiting excitedly to get on a plane for the first time! My family were with me but you can't see them because my sister is taking the photo while my parents are quickly buying some sandwiches for us to eat on the plane.



Girl 2 This is my aunt's new baby. Isn't she sweet? She is laughing loudly in this picture because she can see my aunt's cat. She always laughs when she sees this cat – she thinks it's very funny[6].



(1) حفل زفاف (2) ضيوف (3) صخور
(4) حاد (5) مطار (6) مضحك

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

picture /pɪktʃəʳ/ laugh /lɑ:f/

Post-listening question:

- Why are the students sitting carefully on the rocks?

Pre-reading question: - Where's Al-Azhar Park?

Lesson 4

Listen and read to complete the description of the photo with the expressions in the box. *SB page 17*



This is a photo of my family in Al-Azhar Park in Cairo. My mother and my sisters are sitting under a tree **in the foreground** of the photo. **In the background**, you can see the Umm Sultan Shaban Mosque. The tree is **towards the right** of the photo and my eldest sister Reem is sitting in front of it. Our mother is behind her – we can't see her face. My middle sister Talia is **in the middle of** the picture. She is taking a selfie as usual! Our aunt is behind them, down the hill and **on the left.** I think she is getting ready to take a photo, too.

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

description /dɪskrɪpʃən/
background /ˈbækgraʊnd/

Post-reading questions:

1. Why do you think they are sitting under a tree?
2. When was the last time you had a good time with your family? Where did you go?

Pre-reading question: - What makes you feel happy?

SB page 18

Happiness for teenagers

It's normal[1] to get worried or to feel sad sometimes – but what helps teenagers[2] to feel happy? We found five things that can help.

(1) طبيعى
(2) المراهقون
(3) الشباب
(4) وحيدا/منفرده
(5) الطبيعة
(6) مسرور

1. Get lots of rest

Teenagers often don't sleep enough, but this is a time in your life when you need a lot of sleep. Young people[3] who sleep eight to ten hours a night are much happier!



2. Be friendly

It's good to be alone[4] sometimes, but people need people. Spend time with your family and also try to make new friends because this makes teenagers happy.



3. Go outside

People need nature[5] to be happy. Go to the desert or the river or, if you live in the city, go to a park.



4. Help someone

When you do something kind for someone else, this makes you feel happy, too. Try it! You feel really good.



5. Be grateful

One of the best ways to be happy is to remember the good things in your life and feel pleased[6] about them.



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

teenager /ti:neɪdʒəʳ/ nature /neɪtʃəʳ/

Post-reading question:

- Teenagers feel happy in different ways. Explain.

Pre-reading question: - Who do you go to when you have troubles?

Read the email to a magazine and its reply, and write the missing sentences a-c in the right places. *WB page 82*

a) Your friends probably feel worried, just like you.

b) Please can you help me?

c) What am I doing wrong?



New Message

Dear Help! Magazine,

I am a **normal** teenager but I often feel worried about things. Every day, I stay at home and do my homework. Then, I get texts from my friends and they say they are all doing exciting things! [1] c

I **do well** at school and I enjoy my weekends with my family. We often go to the park or the beach, but I sometimes think that my friends are having a better time than me. [2] b

Yours, Osama

Send

New Message

Dear Osama,

Thank you for writing to us and yes, we will try to help you. It is normal to think that other people are doing more exciting things than you, but remember: you are wrong! [3] a

When you go to the park or the beach, do you send photos to your friends? They probably think YOU are having a better time than they are! Remember that we all work and relax at different times.

Be grateful for the good things in your life and continue to work hard!

Yours truly, Help! Magazine

Send

Post-reading question:

- What other advice do you have for Osama?



PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You can catch a plane from a/an ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a) port b) airport c) road d) way

2. "....." means not with other people. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) Together b) Old c) Ancient d) Alone

3. A ..... is an area of very dry land. السويس ٢٠٢٣

a) forest b) river c) waterfall d) desert

4. A grateful person is the one who ..... people. الغربية ٢٠٢٢

a) thanks b) hits c) protects d) gives

5. When you invite a person to your house, they are your ..... . الغربية ٢٠٢٣

a) grass b) guess c) guests d) glasses

6. When two people get married, they have a ..... . قنا ٢٠٢٣

a) birthday b) shop c) weeding d) wedding

7. Be careful when you cut bread because the knife is very ..... .

a) grateful b) useful c) crowded d) sharp

8. My sister loves ..... selfies all the time.

a) taking b) giving c) having d) making

9. When people travel, they put their clothes in ..... . WB

a) suits b) suitcases c) shopping bags d) sacks

10. My best friend is very ..... . He always makes me laugh.

a) boring b) funny c) bad d) free

11. I like to sit in the ..... of the class to be in front of the board.

a) foreground b) background c) towards d) back

12. ..... is everything in the world that is not made by humans. WB

a) Technology b) Wedding c) Manual d) Nature

13. When you do something ..... for someone else, this makes you feel happy.

a) boring b) unfriendly c) kind d) unkind

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The _____ temperature for people is 37°C.
   a) strange b) modern c) unusual d) normal
2. The skin of a zebra is _____.
   a) striped b) curly c) sharp d) worried
3. Nobody likes to live in the _____ because it's very hot there.
   a) lake b) desert c) coast d) forest
4. It's normal to get _____ when your father is late.
   a) bored b) worried c) happy d) lazy
5. To feel _____ means feeling happy about the good things in your life.
   a) worried b) careful c) grateful d) normal
6. Dr Sami is Mrs Hala's _____.
   a) wife b) husband c) daughter d) sister
7. I was happy because it was the first time to _____ on a plane.
   a) take b) get c) make d) have
8. This is my baby sister. She is _____. Everyone likes her.
   a) sweet b) ugly c) friendly d) busy
9. This is a photo of my parents' _____. They are very happy.
   a) weeding b) wedding c) married d) crowds
10. This is a/an _____ film. I advise you to watch it.
    a) ugly b) unhappy c) exciting d) boring
11. Our teacher always stands _____ the middle of the class.
    a) on b) in c) at d) of
12. Salwa is _____ ready to take a photo.
    a) getting b) making c) having d) giving
13. If you are tired, why don't you _____ a rest?
    a) do b) make c) try d) have

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

ADVERBS OF MANNER الظروف

We use the adverbs of manner to describe how we do the action of a verb.

يستخدم الظرف لوصف الفعل.

- Mr. Adel speaks loudly.
- I can climb this tree easily.

- وتحول الصفة إلى ظرف غالبًا بإضافة (ly) فى نهاية الصفة.

Adjective		Adverb		Adjective		Adverb	
kind	عطوف	kindly	بعطف	bad	سيئ	badly	بشكل سيئ
quick	سريع	quickly	بسرعة	happy	سعيد	happily	بسعادة
sad	حزين	sadly	بحزن	strong	قوى	strongly	بقوة

Study these irregular adjectives ادرس هذه الصفات غير المنتظمة

good	جيد	well	بشكل جيد	hard	صعب	hard	بجد
early	مبكر	early	مبكرا	fast	سريع	fast	بسرعة
late	متأخر	late	متأخرا				

لاحظ

- يأتى الظرف قبل الفعل أو بعده:

- I'm sitting under a tree and hungrily **eating** my lunch.
- She's **smiling** happily at the camera.

- الفرق بين الصفة والظرف فى الأمثلة التالية:

- Mr. **Waleed** is kind. He treats the children kindly.
- الصفة (kind) تصف الاسم (Mr. Waleed) بينما الظرف (kindly) يصف الفعل (treats).

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My sister plays the piano ..... (loud).

- الإجابة الصحيحة (loudly) لأنها ظرف يصف الفعل plays.

2. The children laughed ..... (happy).

- الإجابة الصحيحة (happily) لأنها ظرف يصف الفعل laughed.

3. She hurt her leg ..... (bad).

- الإجابة الصحيحة (badly) لأنها ظرف يصف الفعل hurt.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Salma speaks English ..... . القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

a) clear b) bad c) good d) well

2. The teacher treats his pupils ..... . They love him. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a) kind b) kindly c) kindness d) unkindly

3. It is important not to drive ..... when it is raining. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

a) carefully b) carelessly c) careless d) careful

4. They are sitting ..... on the bed watching a play. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

a) happiness b) happy c) happily d) happier

5. The boys are waiting ..... for the match. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a) excited b) excitedly c) excite d) exciting

6. It's at the end of the day and the guests are ..... leaving.

a) slowest b) slow c) slower d) slowly

7. She is clever. She studies ..... . سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

a) hard b) good c) bad d) hardly

8. My parents are ..... buying some sandwiches for us to eat on the plane.

a) quick b) quickly c) quicker d) quickest

9. The teacher looked at me ..... because I forgot my book.

a) angriest b) angrier c) angrily d) angry

10. I do ..... at school and I enjoy my weekends with my family.

a) good b) better c) best d) well

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The children are singing ..... (loud) in the playground. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
2. My sister speaks very ..... (quiet). المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
3. That bird is flying very ..... (faster). القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
4. You speak English ..... (good). القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
5. Don't run ..... (quick) in the street. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
6. Everyone should work ..... (hardly).

D Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد

How to ask someone for help

كيفية طلب المساعدة من شخص ما

From : ahmed@yahoo.com
To : tamer@yahoo.com
Subject : Asking for help

Dear Tamer,

Greetings! How are you and your family? I hope you all are in good health. I'm very happy to write this email to you. I am a normal teenager, but I often feel worried. I do my homework every day. I have lots of friends. I get texts from my friends. I do well at school. I enjoy my weekends with my family, but I think that my friends are having a better time than me. Please help me. I look forward to hearing from you. Write soon.

Best wishes.
Yours,
Ahmed

Writing tips

Start your email with greetings such as:
ابدأ رسالتك الإلكترونية بالقاء التحية:
Hello, Dear...., Hope you are well. ...
And end it with: وقم بإنهائها مستخدمًا:
Regards,
Hope to see you soon,
Yours, ...

Check Point

Write an email to your friend Salma. Tell her about your problems at school and ask her for help. Your name is Aya.

To :
From :
Subject :

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 2 Lessons (3&4)

17.5

1 Read the following, then answer the questions: الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

Teenagers need many things to feel happy. They should get lots of rest. They often don't sleep enough, but this is a time in your life when you need a lot of sleep. Young people who sleep eight to ten hours a night are much happier! Teenagers should be friendly. It's good to be alone sometimes, but people need each other. Spend time with your family and also try to make new friends because this makes teenagers happy. Teenagers need to go outside. People need nature to be happy. Go to the desert or the river. If you live in the city, go to the park. They should help other people. When you do something kind for someone else, this makes you feel happy, too. Try it! You feel really good. Teenagers should be grateful. One of the best ways to be happy is to remember the good things in your life and feel pleased about them.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of this text? .....
2. What do the underlined words "each other" refer to? .....
3. In your opinion, what's the best way to be a happy teenager? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. People should sleep ..... hours a night.
   a) five b) six c) eight d) four
5. Someone who lives in the city can go to a ..... to enjoy the nature.
   a) school b) garage c) prison d) park
6. A grateful person is the one who ..... people.
   a) thanks b) hits c) protects d) gives

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'm a ..... teenager, but I often feel worried about things. العربية ٢٠٢٣
   a) strange b) formal c) normal d) informal
2. Every day, I ..... texts from my friends.
   a) do b) take c) make d) get
3. There are sharp rocks. You have to be ..... . قنا ٢٠٢٣
   a) carefully b) careful c) carelessly d) quickly
4. I often ..... a better time on holidays.
   a) have b) stay c) make d) give
5. We all work and relax ..... different times.
   a) off b) at c) on d) for

6. You should be ..... for the good things in your life and continue to work hard. الصومعة ٢٠٢٣

a) careful b) wasteful c) grateful d) helpful

7. The weather was very bad, but they ..... to play the match.

a) finished b) continued c) stayed d) gave

8. Walk ..... or you may miss the bus.

a) quick b) fast c) slow d) slowly

9. He is a ..... driver. He drives very carelessly.

a) carefully b) careful c) careless d) carelessly

10. Mr Omar speaks English ..... . He helps his pupils do better. الصومعة ٢٠٢٢

a) good b) well c) bad d) badly

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The cat is sitting in the sun ..... (lazy). الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
2. She can answer all the questions ..... (easy). القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
3. They look at the broken vase ..... (sad). القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
4. The man accepted the offer ..... (immediate). الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"What teenagers should do and what they shouldn't do"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The students were not happy ..... find so much rubbish.

a) about b) to c) with d) for

2. My ..... brother is very ill. We're very sad.

a) centre b) middle c) background d) foreground

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I feel ..... (real) good.
2. He felt ..... (happily) when he got high marks.

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 19 & 20 | WB pages 83 & 84

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

congratulations (n)	تهانينا	pity (n)	شفقة/حزن
get better	يتحسن	prepare (d) (v)	يعد/يجهز
greetings (n)	تحيات	well done	أحسنت
pass (ed) (v)	ينجح فى	worry (y ied) (v)	يقلق

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

amazing (adj)	مذهل	football practice (n)	تدريب كرة القدم
coach (n)	مدرب	imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل
difficult/hard (adj)	صعب	miss (ed) (v)	يفتقد

Check Point

Choose and complete: pity - miss - pass - better

1. We should study hard to ..... the exam.
2. If you get up late, you'll ..... the bus.
3. Practise more English and you'll get ..... .

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do > hours of homework	يقوم بساعات من الواجبات المنزلية	pass > an exam	يجتاز امتحانا

Prepositions — حروف الجر

congratulations on	مبروك على	sorry to + inf.	اسف لـ
look after	يعتنى بـ	speak to	يتحدث إلى
respond to	يرد على	with time	بمرور الوقت

Check Point

Choose and complete: to - after - on - do

1 Congratulations ..... passing your exam.

2 Nurses look ..... patients.

3 I will ..... my homework at 7 pm.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word — الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) — عكسها
difficult — صعب	easy — سهل
pass — ينجح	fail — يفشل

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word — الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) — مرادفها
difficult — صعب	hard — صعب
pass — ينجح	succeed — ينجح

Suffix اللاحقة

Word — الكلمة	Suffix — اللاحقة	Function — الوظيفة	The new word — الكلمة الجديدة
amaze (v) — يذهل	-ing	تحويل الفعل إلى صفة	amazing (adj) — مذهل
congratulate (v) — يهنئ	-ion	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	congratulation (n) — تهنئة

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I expect he'll pass the test. He'll ..... .

a) calm b) fail c) succeed d) arrange

2 To get the noun from the verb "congratulate", add the suffix "..... ".

a) -ing b) -ed c) -ion d) -ness

3 It's difficult for me to tell him the truth. It's not ..... .

a) hard b) careful c) calm d) easy

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

Pre-listening question: - How's it going at your school?

Listen to four short conversations and put the photos in the correct order.

SB page 19

1. **Ali** Hi, Yasser! Are you coming to football practice on Thursday?
   Yasser Oh, hello Ali. No, I can't come this week. My granddad is in hospital again. I have to look after my little brothers while my mum goes to visit him.
   Ali I'm sorry to hear that. I hope he gets better[1] soon. It's a pity[2] that you can't come. Maybe see you next Thursday, then.
   Yasser Thanks, Ali.

(1) يتحسن
(2) شفقة/حزن
(3) يخص
(4) أحسنت
(5) أخبار
(6) يختار
(7) تهانينا

2. **Yasser** Hey Ali, Guess[3] what! I'm in the football team! The coach told me after football practice last night.
   Ali Well done[4], Yasser! That's great news[5].



3. **Hana** Hello, Salma. How are you? Great to see you! How's it going at your new school? Are you enjoying it?
   Salma Hello, Hana. Great to see you too! The new school is really hard! I don't know anyone, and I feel everyone is much cleverer than me. I have to do hours of homework every night.
   Hana That must be difficult. But don't worry: I'm sure things will get better with time. You were always the best student in our class!



4. **Hana** Hi, Huda. How are things?
   Huda Hello, Hana! Fine thanks. I passed[6] my English exam!
   Hana Congratulations[7]! I'm so happy for you. Everyone knows that's a really difficult exam.

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

congratulation /kən,grætʃə'leɪʃən/

Post-listening question:

- Do you think Yasser is coming to the football practice on Thursday? Why/Why not?

Lesson 6

Pre-reading question:

- What kind of news would you tell your friend?

Read Injy's email to her friend Salma and answer the questions. *SB page 20*

Hi Salma,



How are you? I hope you are enjoying your new school. We really miss[1] you.

I am fine, but there is some bad news from school. Mrs. Tahany is leaving! She is such a good science teacher and we are feeling very sad.

I have some good news[2], too. Guess what?

My parents say I can go on the school trip[3] to Amman. I am very excited! There are many amazing places to visit there. The trip is in March and I can't wait.

So what's your news? Write soon!

(1) يعتقد (2) أخبار (3) رحلة مدرسية

Injy

Read the email from Tamer to Tarek. Correct the mistakes. Listen and check your answers. *WB page 84*

Hi Tarek,



How's it going? Congratulations[1] on passing[2] your maths test! Do you have more exams next term?

The news from me is that we are moving to a new house! I'm so excited because my bedroom in the new house is very big. I have some bad news, too. I'm sharing[3] the room with my brother! But this is only for a week until his room is ready.

I'm looking forward to meeting you in the summer. Do you want to go swimming or sailing[4] at the beach this year? I can't wait to see you.

Write soon!

Tamer

(1) تهانينا
(2) بجتاز
(3) بشارك
(4) الإبحار

Post-reading question:

- Why do you think Tamer is very excited?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When he took the medicine, he ..... better. الصنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) went b) played c) found d) got

2. The waiter ..... food for people to eat. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) prepares b) takes c) misses d) does

3. A ..... teaches people how to play or improve a sport. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) scientist b) sports coach c) nurse d) worker

4. It is easy to ..... what life in Roman times was like here. الصنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) get b) imagine c) need d) visit

5. I'm so happy to see you after these long years. I really ..... you. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) lose b) win c) earn d) miss

6. **A:** Your father is late. **B:** Don't ..... . He'll come soon.
   a) worry b) miss c) lose d) win

7. What a .....! I didn't pass my exams. الصنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) pity b) dear c) great thing d) shore

8. The exam was really ..... . Most students were crying.
   a) easy b) full c) difficult d) lazy

9. My parents say I can go ..... the school trip to Amman.
   a) at b) on c) in d) of

10. .....! I'm so happy for you. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
    a) Shame b) Congratulations c) Pity d) Sorry

11. The teacher helped me ..... my maths exams. السويس ٢٠٢٣
    a) cross b) guess c) succeed d) pass

12. I think Real Madrid is the best ..... in the world.
    a) shop b) time c) coach d) team

13. We always go to our football ..... to keep fit.
    a) practise b) practice c) fan d) experience

C Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.



Speaking

Responding to news

الرد على الأخبار

Good news	الأخبار الجيدة	Bad news	الأخبار السيئة
- Well done!	أحسنت!	- I'm sorry to hear that.	حزين لسماع ذلك.
- That's great news!	إنها أخبار عظيمة!	- I hope he gets better soon.	أتمنى أن يتحسن قريبًا (تقال في المرض).
- Congratulations!	مبروك/تهانينا!	- It's a pity that you ...	من المحزن-الشفقة أنك ... .
		-That must be difficult. But don't worry.	من المؤكد أن هذا صعب. ولكن لا تقلق.
- I'm so happy for you.	أنا سعيد جدًا من أجلك.	- Don't worry. I'm sure things will get better with time.	لا تقلق. أنا متأكد أن الأمور سوف تتحسن بمرور الوقت.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Leila is happy because she has passed her driving test.

Randa : You look happy, Leila. What's the matter?

Leila : (1)..... .

Randa : Well done! Have you got a car?

Leila : (2)..... . My uncle bought a new car. He gave me his old one.

Randa : (3).....!

Leila : Would you like to come with me?

Randa : Yes, I'd love to. (4).....?

Leila : We could go to the park.

Randa : (5).....?

Leila : We will meet at three.

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 2 Lessons (5&6)

15.5

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Basem asks Wafaa about her exams. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

Basem : Hello, Wafaa. How are things?

Wafaa : (1) ..... . And you?

Basem : (2) ..... . I've passed my exams.

Wafaa : (3) ..... !

Basem : Thanks. (4) ..... ?

Wafaa : Me! I passed but with low marks.

Basem : I'm sorry to hear that.

Wafaa : (5) ..... ?

Basem : You should study hard next year.

Wafaa : Thanks for your advice.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We sent her a card with birthday ..... .

a) hobbies b) fears c) worries d) greetings

2. It's a ..... that you can't come to my birthday party.

a) fun b) pity c) team d) coach

3. We ..... her on her marriage. العربية ٢٠٢٣

a) congratulated b) interested c) succeeded d) punished

4. ..... done, Yasser! You got the first prize.

a) Paintings b) Greetings c) Well d) Congratulations

5. I can go on the school ..... to Aswan.

a) trip b) tour c) travel d) season

6. I ..... a room with my sister. There are two beds. الملوفية ٢٠٢٣

a) do b) cry c) share d) play

7. I have some good ..... . My sister has a new baby girl.

a) data b) maths c) news d) papers

8. That bird is flying very ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a) careful b) quick c) loud d) fast

9. He ..... with his parents at the moment.

a) stay b) stays c) is staying d) staying

10. I ..... to an art class once a week.

a) go b) goes c) going d) is going

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You won't find Mona at home right now. She ..... (study) in the library.
2. Sally is singing ..... (happy) in the kitchen.
3. Is your father ..... (water) the plants?
4. He passed his exam because he answered ..... (good). المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Some good news happened to you"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ..... see you next Thursday.

a) May be b) Maybe

c) May d) Be

2. How's it ..... at your new school?

a) going b) coming

c) arriving d) getting

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. There is ..... (any) bad news from school.
2. I'm looking forward ..... (meeting) you in the summer.

Review On Unit 2

Vocabulary

airport	مطار
neighbour	جار
calligraphy	فن الخط
ward	جناح/قسم
congratulations	تهانينا
crowds	الحشد/الجمهور
deaf	أصم
food stall	كشك الطعام
sewing	الخياطة/الحياكة
sign language	لغة الإشارة
get married	يتزوج
grateful	ممتن/شاكر
happiness	السعادة
teenager	مراهق
look forward to	يتطلع إلى
wedding	حفل زفاف
call-centre worker	عامل مركز الاتصال
police officer	ضابط شرطة
computer engineer	مهندس كمبيوتر
shop worker	عامل فى محل
street-food seller	بائع طعام بالشارع

Language

The present continuous tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Form التكوين

- I am **playing** chess.
- My grandfather is **repairing** his laptop now.
- **They** are **sleeping.**

Key words الكلمات الدالة

Look! - فى هذه اللحظة at the moment

Watch out! - احترس انصت - Listen! انظر

at present - فى الوقت الحاضر now - الآن

Question السؤال

- Are you learning sign language?
- Is Sara cooking lunch?
- What is he doing?
- Where are you going?

Adverbs of manner الظروف

- quick ..... quickly
- loud ..... loudly
- good ..... well
- Mr. Adel speaks loudly.
- I can climb this tree easily.

Skills

Speaking

Responding to news

Good news:

- Well done!
- Congratulations.
- That's great news!
- I'm so happy for you.

Bad news:

- I'm sorry to hear that.
- That must be difficult.
- It's a pity that you ...
- Don't worry

Question Bank

Al-Adwaa Test On Unit 2

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

1. Mr Othman is my ..... .
   a) friend
   b) neighbour
   c) teacher
   d) uncle
2. Mr Othman helped me pass my ..... exam.
   a) English
   b) maths
   c) history
   d) geography
3. Mr Othman was teaching at a ..... school.
   a) secondary
   b) nursery
   c) primary
   d) preparatory
4. He used his old ..... to help his students.
   a) school books
   b) diaries
   c) stories
   d) tools

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Samy is asking Ali about what he is interested in.

القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

Samy : Hello Ali! What are you doing?
Ali : Hi Samy! (1)..... .
Samy : Do you like watching movies?
Ali : (2)..... .
Samy : (3).....?
Ali : I enjoy watching movies in the cinema.
Samy : (4).....?
Ali : This movie is about Egypt's history.
Samy : Can I go with you to the cinema next time?
Ali : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

It's normal to get worried or to feel sad sometimes, but what helps teenagers to feel happy? We found five things that can help. Teenagers often don't sleep enough, but this is a time in your life when you need a lot of sleep. Young people who sleep from eight to ten hours a night are much happier. It's good to be alone sometimes, but people need people. Spend time with your family and also try to make new friends because this makes teenagers happy. People need nature to be happy. Go to the desert or the river or if you live in the city go to a park. When you do something kind for someone else, this makes you feel happy, too. Try it! You will feel really good.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage. .....
2. How many hours should young people sleep a night? .....
3. What do you think makes teenagers happy? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ..... .
   a) to be kind b) to be false c) to be unkind d) to be angry
5. Why do people need nature?
   a) To be sad. b) To be happy.
   c) To be unhappy. d) To be important.
6. The underlined word "sad" means ..... .
   a) happy b) pleased c) unhappy d) brave

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My little brother is very ..... . He always wants to stay at home and watch TV. WB
   a) clever b) dangerous c) lazy d) active
2. He is looking forward to ..... hot coffee. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) playing b) drinking c) eating d) sleeping
3. My mother is a fantastic ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) cooker b) cook c) cooking d) cooked
4. A/An ..... is a boy or girl aged 13 - 19. الصوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) old man b) child c) baby d) teenager

5. "....." means usual, not different. WB

a) Natural b) Modern c) Normal d) Ancient

6. I didn't pass my exams. It's a ..... . الصنوفية ٢٠٢٣

a) share b) pity c) great thing d) shore

7. ..... is beautiful writing using special pens or brushes. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a) Calligraphy b) Photography c) Sewing d) Wedding

8. How often do you ..... dinner? WB

a) make b) making c) made d) makes

9. He is a bad driver. He drives ..... .

a) dangerously b) dangerous c) slow d) carefully

10. On Saturday, I usually ..... time with my cousins. WB

a) spends b) spend c) am spending d) spending

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Our television ..... (doesn't) working.
2. ..... (Do) you listening to me?
3. It's important to drive ..... (careful) when it's raining. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
4. Mohamed Salah plays football ..... (good). بني سويف ٢٠٢٣

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"A job you should like to do in the future" الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Monthly Models On Units 1&2

هذه النماذج ستساعدك فى التدرب على الاختبارات الشهرية.

October Model 1

10

أسبوع ٢٠٢٣

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Basma wants to get more information about Sara's daily routine.

Basma : Hello, Sara. How are you?

Sara : (1) _____.

Basma : (2) _____?

Sara : I always walk to school.

Basma : Why?

Sara : (3) _____.

Basma : What do you do in your free time?

Sara : (4) _____.

Basma : Great. (5) _____?

Sara : Yes, I do. I have one sister.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We _____ many activities at school.
   a) give b) take c) do d) make
2. I sometimes share my books _____ my friends.
   a) at b) with c) for d) to
3. Come and sit on this _____; four people can sit on it.
   a) sofa b) chair c) bed d) wheelchair
4. Her computer doesn't work, so she might need a _____ to repair it.
   a) doctor b) vet c) computer engineer d) dentist
5. Before you go on holiday, you should _____ sure that the doors are locked.
   a) do b) make c) get d) hear

6. Deaf people use ..... language to communicate with each other. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a) song b) signal c) sign d) English

7. The girls are playing ..... in the club.

a) happy b) happily c) happier d) happiest

8. Faten never ..... to school late. It's her habit.

a) arrives b) arrive c) arriving d) arrived

9. Where ..... your father work?

a) has b) do c) is d) does

10. Ali ..... a jacket today because it is very hot.

a) not wear b) isn't wearing c) don't wear d) wasn't wearing

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (Do) Ali like playing football?
2. Every day, Salma ..... (walk) to school with her brother.
3. They ..... (study) English at the moment.
4. She entered the room ..... (quiet) that she would not wake the baby up.
5. What time ..... (do) the party start yesterday?

Part 2 Final Revision





قم بمراجعة أهم المفردات والقواعد اللغوية والمهارات وحل المزيد من الأسئلة الخاصة بالوحدتين الأولى والثانية عن طريق الذهاب لجزء المراجعة الشهرية بملحق التقويم.

October Model 2

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I had a/an ..... with the most important scientist.
   a) hobby b) interview c) routine d) topic
2. I have a new mobile phone. So I can ..... my friend. الصفوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) order b) hurt c) text d) listen
3. He has a/an ..... garden full of flowers and trees.
   a) terrible b) bad c) attractive d) ugly
4. I saw a beautiful ..... on the floor in front of my sister's living room.
   a) carpet b) curtain c) fridge d) TV
5. There are four ..... on the sofa.
   a) chairs b) cushions c) tables d) windows
6. If you are tired, ... a rest.
   a) give b) make c) do d) get
7. On a ..... day, Reem gets up, goes to school and then helps her mother in her jobs.
   a) electrical b) typical
   c) technical d) technological
8. The sun never ..... at night.
   a) rise b) rises c) rising d) is rising
9. What ..... you laughing at?
   a) can b) have c) do d) are
10. He is ..... a cup of tea at the moment.
    a) drinking b) drank c) drinks d) drink

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We ..... (build) many roads nowadays.
2. Abeer ..... (go always) to school by car.
3. How ..... (long) does he visit his aunt?
4. If you walk so ..... (slow), you will miss the bus.
5. ..... (Does) Malak got a new bike?

October Model 3

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Dalida's mother is ill.

Dalida : My mother didn't go out.

Heba : (1)..... ?

Dalida : Because she is ill.

Heba : (2)..... .

Dalida : She had an interview for a new job.

Heba : What did she do?

Dalida : (3)..... .

Heba : Online from home! (4)..... ?

Dalida : Yes, she passed it and got the job!

Heba : (5)..... ! I'm so happy for her.

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mrs Saleh had two children. Samy was seven years old, and his sister Nora was four. Samy went to school, but Nora did not. When Samy was at home, he often played with Nora while their mother was cooking, washing and cleaning. Mrs Saleh was usually free to do her work quietly because Samy was very nice to his little sister. One Friday morning, the two children were playing in the garden while their mother was cooking lunch. They were quite happy until Nora suddenly began to cry and ran into the kitchen to her mother. Mrs Saleh stopped cooking and said, "Why are you crying, Nora? Samy broke my toy," Nora answered, crying more loudly." How did he break it?" her mother asked. Nora stopped crying, but did not answer for a few seconds. Then she said, "I hit him on the head with it."

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage.

.....

2. Why was Mrs Saleh usually free to do her work quietly?

.....

3. What do you think of Nora?

.....

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "he" refers to _____.

a) Mrs Saleh
b) Samy
c) Nora
d) father

5. When Nora cried, her mother was in the _____.

a) garden
b) bedroom
c) kitchen
d) school

6. The underlined word "broke" means _____.

a) repaired
b) cleaned
c) damaged
d) old

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My father _____ (not/drive) his car to work every day.
2. What time does he _____ (getting) up?
3. Why are you _____ (cry)?
4. She works very _____ (hardly) to get high marks.

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Your daily routine"



Unit 3

Great jobs

Objectives of the unit

Reading	An article about the Egyptian handball team; a text about Ancient Egyptian doctors; a text about heroes
Writing	A paragraph about your rubbish collectors; a paragraph about someone you are proud of
Listening	Descriptions of different heroes; a talk about a family history; a discussion about what makes a hero
Speaking	Talking about heroes; discussing your family history; saying what you are proud of; checking your understanding
Language	*used to*
Life Skills	Collaboration; communication
Values	Work values; love and respect for homeland and the family
Issues	Citizenship; loyalty and belonging; national unity



Tapescript

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 22 - 25 WB pages 86 & 87

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

against (prep)	ضد	medicine (n)	دواء
attack (ed) (v)	يهاجم	national (adj)	وطنى/قومى
brave (adj)	شجاع	nuclear (adj)	نووى
charity worker (n)	عامل فى جمعية خيرية	patron (n)	راعٍ/كفيل
competition (n)	منافسة/مسابقة	princess (n)	أميرة
date of birth	تاريخ الميلاد	scientist (n)	عالم
event (n)	حدث	shark (n)	سمكة قرش
final (n)	المباراة النهائية	sports coach (n)	مدرب رياضى
heart surgeon (n)	جراح قلب	successful (adj)	ناجح
improve (d) (v)	يحسن/يطور	teamwork (n)	عمل جماعى
Khedive (n)	الخديوى	treatment (n)	علاج

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

die (d) (v)	يموت	primary (adj)	ابتدائى
preparatory (adj)	إعدادى	university (n)	جامعة

Check Point

Choose and complete: Medicine - primary - final - shark

1. My sister is 10 years old. She is in a ..... school.
2. Al-Ahly played the ..... match last Friday.
3. My father is a professor at the Faculty of ..... .

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do	> experiments	يُجرى تجارب معملية	lose	> a leg	يفقد ساقًا
get	> a prize	يحصل على جائزة	make	> a hero	يصنع بطلًا

Prepositions — حروف الجر

by (v + ing)	بواسطة	play for	يلعب لـ
good/ the best at	جيد /الأفضل فى	throw into	يرمى فى داخل
help with	يساعد فى	was born in	وُلِدَ فى
look inside the body	ينظر داخل الجسم	with heart problems	ذو مشاكل فى القلب

Check Point

Choose and complete: (with - do - for - was)

1. We can ..... experiments at the science lab.
2. My little sister was born ..... a heart problem.
3. Mo Salah plays ..... the Egyptian national team.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
become	يصبح	became	become	mean	يعنى/يقصد	meant	meant
lose	يخسر	lost	lost	throw	يرمى	threw	thrown

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
dangerous	خطير	safe	آمن
ill	مريض	well	بصحة جيدة
junior	مبتدئ/ناشئ	senior/older	أكبر سنًا/خبرة
nervous	عصبى/متوتر	patient	صبور

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية

1 was/were + born — وُلِدَ

- Magdy Yacoub was born in 1935.
- My children were born outside Egypt.

2 work as + وظيفة — يعمل كـ

- My father works as a teacher.
- He stopped his work as a surgeon.

3 the first ..... to + inf. — أول ... من ...

- They were the first team from Africa to win the Under-19 World Cup Final in 2019.

4 use + الشىء + (to + inf.) / (for + v.ing/ n) — يستخدم

- Ancient Egyptian doctors used plants to help people with burns.

5 الفاعل + last + ماضٍ بسيط — آخر مرة

- I last saw Mr Said three days ago.

6 Important Sports Vocabulary: — مصطلحات رياضية هامة:

- the Africa Cup of Nations — كأس الأمم الإفريقية
- the Under-19 World Cup Final — نهائى كأس العالم تحت١٩ سنة
- the Handball Africa Cup of Nations — كأس الأمم الإفريقية لكرة اليد
- the Egyptian handball team — المنتخب المصرى لكرة اليد
- the Egyptian junior team — منتخب الناشئين المصرى
- the Egyptian senior team — منتخب الكبار المصرى

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My little brothers ..... born in Luxor.
   a) was b) were c) is d) are
2. I was the first student ..... at school yesterday.
   a) arrive b) arriving c) to arriving d) to arrive
3. She works ..... a nurse in a hospital.
   a) such b) like c) as d) such as

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Definitions — التعريفات

competition	مسابقة/منافسة	an event[1] when people try to get a prize by being the best at something
handball	كرة اليد	a sport with seven players in a team, they score by throwing the ball into a goal
junior	مبتدئ/ناشئ	for younger[2] people
patron	راعٍ/كفيل	gives money[3] to people or places
scientist	عالِم	does experiments[4] to study and find out about how things work
senior	الأكبر سنًا/خبرة	for older[5] people
sports coach	مدرب رياضى	teaches people how to play or improve[6] in a sport
surgeon	جراح	knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill
won	فاز	were first in a game or competition

(1) حدث
(2) الأصغر سنًا
(3) يتبرع بالمال
(4) تحارب
(5) الأكبر سنًا
(6) يطور

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word — الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) — مرادفها
ill — مريض	sick/unwell — مريض
pleased — مسرور	happy — سعيد

Suffix اللاحقة

Word — الكلمة	Suffix — اللاحقة	Function — الوظيفة	The new word — الكلمة الجديدة
nation (n) — أمة	-al	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	national (adj) — وطنى/قومى
success (n) — نجاح	-ful		successful (adj) — ناجح

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word — الكلمة	Similar word — الكلمة المشابهة
brave — شجاع	brief — ملخص
heart — قلب	hurt — يؤذى/يؤلم

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question:

Lesson 1

- Mention a great character that faced problems and succeeded in his/her life.

SB page 23

Listen to someone talking about the people in the photos. Check your answers to Exercise 1.

(1) سمكة قرش (3) ناجح (5) علاج
(2) يهاجم (4) عالم نووى (6) حراج قلب



1 Photo one shows Omar Abdelkader. He was born in 1994. When Omar was 22, a shark[1] attacked[2] him and he lost a leg, but this did not stop him wanting to be successful[3]. Now he helps other people with similar problems and he is an important sports coach.



2 Photo two shows Sameera Moussa. Sameera was born in 1917 and studied science at Cairo University. She was Egypt's first female nuclear scientist[4] and wanted to use nuclear treatments[5] in medicine. She died in 1952.



3 Photo three shows Magdy Yacoub. He was born in Bilbeis in 1935. He went to Cairo University and became an important heart surgeon[6]. He then helped people with heart problems for many years. He stopped most of his work a long time ago, but in 2006, he started a charity to help children with heart problems.

4 Photo four shows Princess[7] Fatma Ismail. The Princess was the daughter of Khedive[8] Ismail and she was born in 1853. She became a patron[9] of Egypt's first national university[10] after she gave a lot of money and land to help it to open in 1908. From 1908 to 1940, people called it the Egyptian University, but it is now called Cairo University.

(7) أميرة (9) راعٍ/كفيل
(8) الخديوى (10) جامعة وطنية



Post-listening questions:

1 Dr Magdy Yacoub is a great Egyptian surgeon. Explain.

2 Why do you think Princess Fatma Ismail became the patron of Egypt's first national university?

Pre-reading question:

- Where did you use to live when you were young?

Circle the correct words: *WB page 86*

When my parents were younger, they lived **in** Luxor. Then they moved to Port Said **in** 1990. My father got a job in Cairo 15 years **ago**. They then lived in a small flat **from** 2005 **to** 2006. They moved to the bigger flat a year later **when** I was born.

Post-reading question:

- When did the writer's parents move to Port Said?



Pre-reading question: - What sport do you like?

Look at the photo. Do you know which team this is? Which sport do you think they play? *SB page 24*

Egyptian heroes!

The Egyptian handball[1] team are heroes[2]! They won[3] the Handball Africa Cup of Nations in Tunisia in 2020. They won the final[4] against Tunisia 27-23. That means they are the best team in Africa!



This is not the first time Egypt's handball team played in a final. In 2019, the junior team[5] won the Under-19 World Cup[6] Final 32-28 against Germany. They were the first team from Africa to win it. In 2018, the senior team[7] were also in the final of the Africa Cup of Nations, but lost the final against Tunisia.

Now, lots of people in Egypt love the sport. Let's hope the Egyptian team can win competitions[8] again!

Post-reading question:

- The Egyptian handball team are heroes. Explain.

Lesson 2

(1) كرة اليد
(2) أبطال
(3) فاز
(4) المباراة النهائية
(5) فريق الشباب
(6) كأس العالم
(7) الفريق الأول
(8) منافسات

Pre-reading question: - What are the most popular sports in Egypt?

Complete the text with these words. *WB page 87*

My brother Ahmed loves playing **handball** and he's very good at it. When he was eight, he played in a **junior** competition for a team in our city. The team didn't **win**, but it was second. Ahmed is now 21 and last year, he played for an important senior team. He was very pleased. Next year, the team are playing in an important **competition**. I hope they win it!



Post-reading question:

- When did Ahmed start playing handball?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My teacher is very ..... . He never gets nervous. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) brave b) patient c) slow d) ugly
2. Leen is very ....., so she isn't afraid of the dog. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) sad b) glad c) brave d) big
3. A ..... worker helps people or animals that need help. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) charity b) sports c) nuclear d) fruit
4. A ..... is an event when people try to get a prize. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) hero b) competition c) player d) goal
5. The ..... does experiments. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) patron b) farmer c) coach d) scientist
6. A wild dog ..... a small boy and the boy was afraid.
   a) stopped b) made c) started d) attacked
7. Everyone works hard to be ..... . بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) succeed b) away c) junior d) successful
8. Sameera Moussa was Egypt's first female ..... scientist. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
   a) nuclear b) chemistry c) biology d) Arabic
9. She wants to be a doctor, so she is going to study ..... .
   a) maths b) medicine c) arts d) music
10. Princess Fatma Ismail was the daughter of ..... Ismail.
    a) Surgeon b) Doctor c) Worker d) Khedive
11. Our ..... team will play next week.
    a) successful b) brave c) national d) nuclear
12. In 2020,Egypt won the final match ..... Tunisia. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
    a) against b) to c) for d) by
13. He is 25. He played for an important ..... team.
    a) junior b) senior c) younger d) little

Time to Practise



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ..... trains people how to play or improve a sport. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) scientist b) surgeon
   c) sports coach d) charity worker
2. The ..... handball team won the Under-19 World Cup Final. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) senior b) junior c) old d) children
3. This is the school which won the ..... match. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) final b) fan c) fin d) finally
4. The Egyptian handball team are all ..... . They won the cup. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) bad b) heroes c) sad d) ill
5. Egypt ..... football team wants to win the match to go to the World Cup.
   a) national b) natural c) cultural d) final
6. He ..... his camera yesterday. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) played b) lost c) read d) painted
7. Do you feel ..... during exams?
   a) brave b) dangerous c) successful d) nervous
8. Sameera Moussa wanted to use nuclear ..... in medicine.
   a) teamwork b) surgeons c) competitions d) treatments
9. A ..... knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill.
   a) patron b) scientist c) surgeon d) coach
10. A ..... gives money to people or places. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
    a) volunteer b) patron c) coach d) surgeon
11. The Egyptian handball team ..... the handball Africa Cup of Nations in Tunisia in 2020.
    a) attacked b) won c) started d) played
12. My brother Ahmed loves playing handball. He played ..... a famous team.
    a) by b) with c) to d) for
13. He was very ..... because he won the cup.
    a) dangerous b) unhappy c) pleased d) sad



لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

THE PAST SIMPLE TENSE زمن الماضى البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

- We use the past simple tense to talk about actions that started and ended in the past and for past habits.

- نستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط لنتحدث عن فعل حدث فى الماضى وانتهى أو للتعبير عن عادات فى الماضى.

- I visited my uncle yesterday.

1 Verb "to be":

I / He / She / It	was / wasn't	>	frightened. / hungry. / a nurse. / big.
You / We / They	were / weren't	>	early. / at school. / quiet.

Yes/No questions السؤال بمعنى هل

Affirmative	They were excited.	He was busy.
Question	Were they excited?	Was he busy?

- تذكر أنه يتم تحويل I was إلى Were you فى حالة السؤال.

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 He ..... (be) at school yesterday.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (was) لوجود yesterday الدالة على زمن الماضى البسيط والفاعل مفرد.

2 They ..... (didn't) happy last Friday because they lost their money.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (weren't) لوجود صفة والجملة فى زمن الماضى والفاعل جمع.

2 Regular & Irregular verbs:

- **Subject +** التصريف الثانى للفعل

Form التكوين

- I visited my uncle last weekend.
- My father bought a new car last year.

لاحظ

تنقسم الأفعال إلى قسمين:

- **Regular verbs:** أفعال منتظمة:

live	lived	تتكون بإضافة (d/ ed/ ied) للمصدر
visit	visited	

- **Irregular verbs:** أفعال غير منتظمة:

win	won	يتغير صيغا شكل الفعل وليس لها قاعدة محددة
lose	lost	

Key words الكلمات الدالة

(yesterday أمس - last ... الماضى - ... ago منذ - in the past فى الماضى

from + سنة ماضية + to + سنة ماضية - in + سنة فى الماضى (in 2010) - for + لمدة)

- My father **was born** in 1980.

Negative النفى

- نضع (didn't) بعد الفاعل ثم نضيف الفعل فى المصدر.

Subject > did not (didn't) **+ inf.**

I did not **arrive** late for school yesterday.

لاحظ

- استخدام (when) بمعنى «عندما» مع زمن الماضى البسيط:

- When I was 12, I won a medal.
- My parents lived in Tanta when they were young.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Last year, I ..... (spend) my holiday in Alex.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (spent) لوجود Last year الدالة على الماضى البسيط.

2 We ..... (not/use) the computer last night.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (didn't use) لوجود last الدالة على زمن الماضى البسيط وهى هنا فى صيغة النفى.

3 When I travelled to Paris, I ..... (visit) the Eiffel Tower.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (visited) لوجود (When) بمعنى عندما فيتبعها الفعل فى الماضى البسيط.

Question السؤال

Yes/No questions

Did + subject + inf.?

A: Did you **watch** TV last night? **B:** Yes, I did. / **B:** No, I didn't.

Wh- question

- عند السؤال بكلمة استفهام توضع أداة الاستفهام قبل (did) ثم الفاعل ثم المصدر.

Question word (أداة استفهام) + did + **subject** + **inf.?**

A: What time did you **go** to bed? **B:** I went to bed at 10 o'clock.

3 Pronunciation of (ed):

The pronunciation of words ending in (ed) depends on the final consonant (sound). There are three ways to pronounce (ed).

- نطق الكلمات المنتهية بـ (ed) يعتمد على الصوت الأخير للكلمة. وهناك ثلاث طرق لنطق الحرفين (ed).

/id/		/t/		/d/	
t	wanted	p	helped	l	called
t	started	k	looked	n	cleaned
d	needed	sh	washed	r	offered
		ch	watched	g	damaged
		gh	laughed	v	loved

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 ..... (Does) Ahmed visit Giza Zoo two days ago?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Did) لوجود ago الدالة على زمن الماضى البسيط.

2 Where ..... (you/ spend) your last holiday?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (did you spend) لوجود last الدالة على زمن الماضى البسيط وهى صيغة سؤال فى الماضى.

3 Did you ..... (helped) your mother with the housework yesterday?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (help) لوجود yesterday الدالة على زمن الماضى البسيط وهى فى صيغة السؤال.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My grandfather ..... work in 2015. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) stopping b) stop c) stopped d) stops
2. They ..... the first team from Africa to win it. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) were b) did c) was d) does
3. Omar ..... a junior chess competition when he was only 21. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) winning b) wins c) win d) won
4. Where did your parents ..... when they were young? القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) lived b) lives c) live d) to live
5. My father ..... me to school last week.
   a) drove b) drives c) drive d) driving
6. They didn't ..... to the stadium last month. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) went b) go c) going d) to go
7. My parents moved back to England ..... I was five.
   a) as b) ago c) when d) if
8. Why ..... your father come home early yesterday?
   a) has b) is c) did d) do
9. When I was young, I ..... to be a police officer.
   a) wanted b) wanting c) wants d) want
10. I ..... rice when I was young, but I like it now.
    a) like b) liked c) don't like d) didn't like

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She ..... (not/find) a job last week.
2. Did Noha ..... (went) home? القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
3. How ..... (be) your last weekend? القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
4. It was hot yesterday so we ..... (go) swimming. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
5. Magdy ..... (not/be) at home yesterday. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
6. My grandfather was born ..... (ago) 1950.

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My team ..... the cup in 2018. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) wins b) won c) win d) winning
2. ..... your friends ready for the exam last week? القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) Was b) Did c) Do d) Were
3. Last summer, my family ..... a fantastic holiday in Morocco. المرسى ٢٠٢٢
   a) have b) had c) has d) are having
4. When Omar was 22, a shark attacked him and he ..... a leg. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) lost b) to lose c) is lost d) loses
5. The weather wasn't good yesterday, so we ..... tennis.
   a) play b) played c) didn't play d) don't play
6. Salem bought this car 2 years ..... . الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) ago b) for c) since d) yet
7. We usually go to the cinema on Sunday, but last Sunday we ..... .
   a) went b) didn't go c) go d) don't go
8. Last Friday, the children ..... about a day out in the country.
   a) talked b) talk c) are talking d) talking
9. How ..... you sleep last night?
   a) have b) are c) did d) do

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Last year, I ..... (go) to Cairo and visited a fantastic museum. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
2. My father usually ..... (walk) to school when he was young. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
3. My parents ..... (get) married in 2008. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
4. ..... (Do) you meet Hoda last Monday? أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
5. The students ..... (do) a project last week.
6. Who ..... (win) the Africa Cup of Nations in 2018? القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

D Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about what makes a hero

كيفية الكتابة عن مواصفات البطل

- A hero is someone who can (فعل).
- He's a person who can help people in many ways.
- A hero can be someone who gives up their life so that others could live.
- A hero can be (وظيفه).
- He can (طبيعة عمله).
- He's a person who makes a difference in a person's life.

Writing tips

Write down relevant ideas and vocabulary to the topic.

- اكتب موضوعك متضمنا افكارا ومفردات مرتبطة به.

Example

What makes a hero

A hero is someone who can show courage when they face a problem. A hero is a person who is able to help others in many ways. A person can become a hero by saving someone who is in danger. A hero is also a person who is there to help others to go on through the difficulties of life. A hero can be someone who gives up their life so that others could live. A hero does not always have to show courage, he can be afraid, but he is still a hero through his other actions. A hero can be a teacher. He can teach you to read or write and that will make a big difference in your life. That is a hero to me, someone who makes a difference in a person's life.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Your hero"

Take a test

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 3 Lessons (1&2)

19.5

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. Who was Princess Fatma? - She was Khedive Ismail's ..... .
   a) aunt b) daughter
   c) mother d) sister
2. When was she born?
   a) In 1953. b) In 1935. c) In 1853. d) In 1835.
3. **A:** How did she help in building Egypt's first national university?
   B: She gave ..... .
   a) money b) land c) a & b d) none
4. When did Egypt's first national university open?
   a) In 1890. b) In 1980. c) In 1809. d) In 1908.

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Hala is asking Nora about her holiday.

الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

Hala : Where did you go on holiday last year?
Nora : (1)..... .
Hala : (2).....?
Nora : I stayed in my uncle's flat.
Hala : How did you travel to Alexandria?
Nora : (3)..... .
Hala : (4).....?
Nora : Yes, I swam in the sea.
Hala : Did you visit Alex Library there?
Nora : (5)..... . It was amazing.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ..... is an organisation that helps people who need them. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) emergency b) charity c) center d) school
2. Magid won the international cycling ..... . الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) pollution b) competition c) completion d) population
3. Dr Magdy Yacoub became an important heart ..... . السويس ٢٠٢٣
   a) patient b) patron c) surgeon d) cleaner
4. The nurse is a ..... . She saved a lot of people. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) hero b) beggar c) manager d) donate
5. A/An ..... is a large, dangerous animal that lives in the sea. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) shark b) eagle c) turtle d) crab

6. He started a charity to help people ..... heart problems.
a) to b) with c) on d) for

7. If you are ..... of someone, you feel pleased with them. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
a) angry b) afraid c) proud d) terrible

8. My brother ..... a job in Cairo 15 years ago.
a) getting b) gets c) get d) got

9. My father ..... basketball when he was young. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
a) plays b) play c) played d) playing

10. I ..... the last competition, but I was second.
a) won b) didn't win c) don't win d) win

A Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Gamal ..... (not/visit) his uncle last week. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
2. When ..... (do) Ahmed start playing handball?
3. When he ..... (be) a student, he played basketball.
4. ..... (you/ have) a bicycle when you were young?

5 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Your hero" المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1. The Egyptian handball team was the first team from Africa ..... the Under-19 World Cup Final.
a) win b) to win c) winning d) won

2. They moved to the bigger flat a year ..... .
a) latest b) last c) late d) later

3. The news ..... very bad a week ago. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
a) is b) were c) are d) was

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 3 & 4



SB pages 26 - 28 | WB pages 88 & 89

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

blood (n)	دم	function (n)	وظيفة (الشيء)
bone (n)	عظمة	furniture (n)	أثاث
brain (n)	المخ	heart (n)	القلب
breathe (d) (v)	يتنفس	infect (ed) (v)	يعدي/يصيب
burn (n/v)	حرق/يحرق	jewellery (n)	مجوهرات
charity (n)	جمعية خيرية	lungs (n)	الرئتان
countryside (n)	ريف	pump (ed) (n/v)	مضخة/يضخ
disaster (n)	كارثة	serious (adj)	خطير/جاد
earthquake (n)	زلزال	stomach (n)	معدة
emergency (n)	طوارئ	volunteer (n)	متطوع

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

broken (adj)	مكسور	plant (ed) (n/v)	نبات/يزرع
fill (ed) (v)	يملأ	scary (adj)	مخيف
fire (n)	حريق/نار	the Red Crescent (n)	الهلال الأحمر

Check Point

Choose and complete: breathe - broken - serious - volunteer

1. I work as a ..... in a famous charity.
2. Can you mend this ..... chair?
3. I wasn't ..... . I was kidding يمزح.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do	a job	يؤدى وظيفة	play	the piano	يعزف على البيانو
	research	يقوم بعمل بحث	sew	cuts	يخيط الجروح
make	a note	بدون ملاحظة	stop	infections	يوقف العدوى/الالتهابات

Prepositions — حروف الجر

a cut on	جرح فى	pleased with	مسرور من
cut into pieces	يقطع إلى أجزاء	proud of	فخور بـ
do a project on	يقوم بعمل مشروع عن	take in air	يستنشق هواء
for no money	بدون مقابل	write down	يدون

Check Point

Choose and complete: (do - play - of - on)

1. Scientists always ..... new research.
2. I can ..... the piano well.
3. We are all proud ..... our parents.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
fall off	يقع من	fell	fallen	pay for	يدفع ثمن ...	paid	paid

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
ancient	قديم	modern	حديث
mend	يصلح	break	يكسر
natural	طبيعى	unnatural	غير طبيعى
terrible	فظيع/سيئ جدًا	beautiful	جميل

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Definitions التعريفات

brain	مخ	it tells the parts[1] of our body what to do
charity	جمعية خيرية	a group of people that helps people who are poor, sick or don't have a home/an organisation[2] that helps people who need them
countryside	الريف	the area[3] outside a city, where there are farms and lots of nature
emergency	طوارئ	something serious or dangerous that you need to do something about
heart	القلب	it pumps blood around[4] the body
lungs	الرئتان	they take in[5] air and help us to breathe
natural disaster	كارثة طبيعية	a terrible event such as an earthquake
proud	فخور	feeling pleased[6] with someone because you think they are or have done something very good
volunteer	متطوع	someone who works for no money to help people

(1) أجزاء
(2) منظمة
(3) منطقة
(4) فى أنحاء
(5) يستنشق
(6) مسرور

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) مرادفها
mend يصلح	fix/repair يصلح
terrible فظيع/سيئ جدًا	horrible رهيب

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
infect (v) يعدى/يصيب	-ion	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	infection (n) عدوى
nature (n) الطبيعة	-al	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	natural (adj) طبيعى

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-listening question:

- Why do you think it is important to know about your family history?

Listen to Yasser talking about his family history and answer the questions.

SB page 26

I didn't use to know very much about my family history. Then, last week, I did a school project[1] about someone in my family, so I did some research and I found out some really interesting things about my great grandfather. I knew he used to be a doctor, but I didn't know he worked for a charity!



(1) مشروع
(2) الريف
(3) الهلال الأحمر
(4) كارثة طبيعية
(5) طوارئ
(6) زلزال
(7) مخيف
(8) مخور

My great grandfather used to live in the countryside[2] and he worked as a volunteer doctor for the Red Crescent[3] when there was a natural disaster[4] or a health emergency[5]. For example, when there was an earthquake[6], my great grandfather went to help. The work was difficult and sometimes scary[7]. He also used to look after people who didn't have much money. I feel very proud[8] of him.

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

crescent /kresənt/ earthquake /ɜːrθkweɪk/

Post-listening question:

- Why do you think Yasser is proud of his great grandfather?



Pre-reading question: - What do you know about Dr Magdy Yacoub?

Read about Magdy Yacoub and complete the text. *WB page 88*

We should all be proud[1] of Magdy Yacoub. He was born in 1935 in Bilbeis, but the family **used to travel** to many places because his father was an important doctor. Magdy also became a doctor. Before he stopped working in 2001, he **used to work** in a special hospital in London. At this hospital, Magdy **used to help** to give people new hearts[2] for the first time. Before the 1980s, people with heart problems often **died**. In 2009, Magdy Yacoub started a charity[3] for ill children in Aswan. Very ill children **didn't use to live** long lives, but many ill children can now live healthy lives.

(1) فخور
(2) قلوب
(3) جمعية خيرية



Post-reading question:

- Why do you think many young children dream to be like Dr Magdy Yacoub?

Lesson 4

Pre-reading question: - How do you think life in Ancient Egypt was?

Complete the text. *WB page 89*

Life in Ancient Egypt[1] was different to today. Poor children didn't use to **go** to school, but children from rich families[2] used to **start** school when they were about seven. When they were at home, children used to **enjoy** playing games. When older parents die, they used to leave their houses to the sons. However, they used to **leave** things inside the house, such as jewellery[3] and furniture[4], to the daughters.

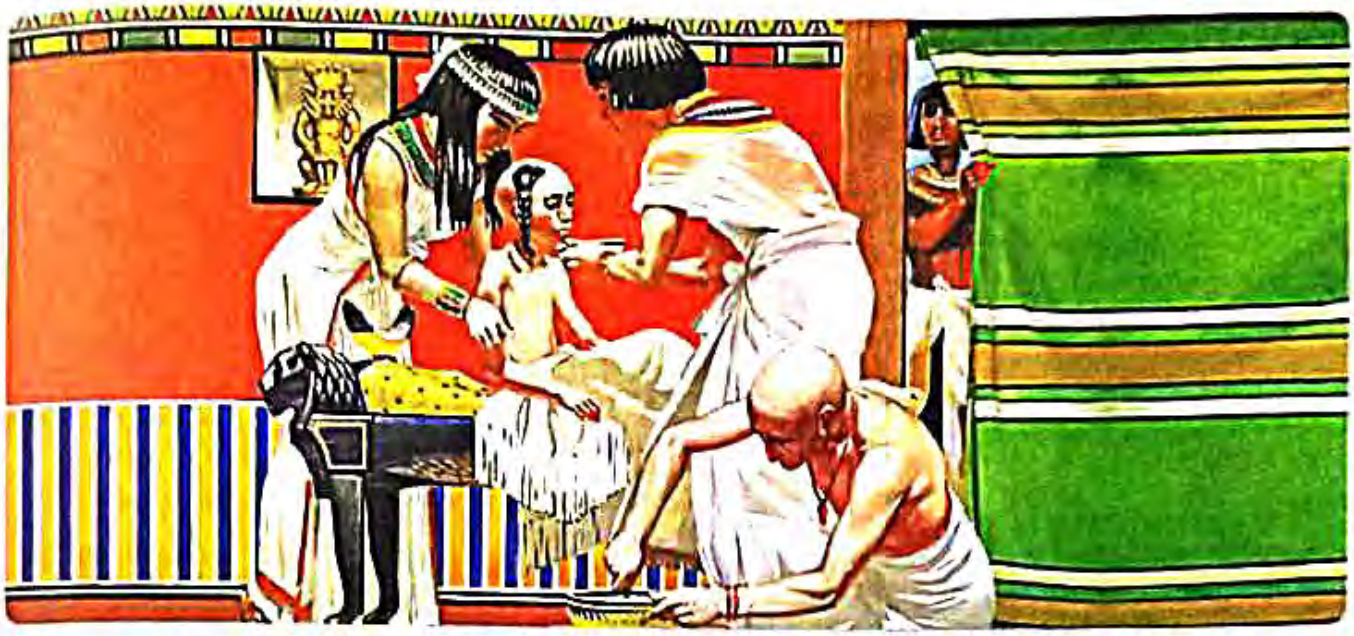
(1) مصر القديمة
(2) الأسر الغنية
(3) مجوهرات
(4) أثاث/موبيليا

Post-reading question:

- How was life difficult for poor children?

Pre-reading question: - Did Ancient Egyptians use to have doctors?

Read the article. Which parts of the body did Ancient Egyptian doctors understand some things about? *SB page 28*



Ancient Egyptian doctors

We know how Ancient Egyptian doctors helped their patients[1] because they wrote down their ideas thousands of years ago.

The body

Ancient Egyptian doctors understood that the heart[2] pumps[3] blood[4] around the body. However, they used to think that the heart also pumped air[5] to our lungs[6]! They were also the first people to understand some of the things the brain[7] does, but they did not know how important it was.

Ways to help

Doctors used to use plants to help people with burns[8] and to stop infections[9]. We still use some of these plants today. They also knew how to mend[10] broken bones[11] and sew cuts[12], but they didn't use to know everything. For example, they used to make medicine from animal eyes. They used to think that an animal's eye helped people who could not see!

(1) المرضى
(2) القلب
(3) يضخ
(4) الدم
(5) الهواء
(6) الرئتان
(7) المخ
(8) الحروق
(9) العدوى
(10) يصلح
(11) عظام
(12) جروح

Post-reading question:

- Ancient Egyptian doctors were very clever. Explain.

Note: تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

lung /lʌŋ/ infection /ɪnfekʃən/

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The ..... pumps blood around the body. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) heart b) lung c) liver d) leg
2. The ..... tells the parts of our body what to do. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) heart b) lung c) brain d) leg
3. The ..... take air into the body. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) eyes b) hearts c) lungs d) legs
4. He was a ..... for a charity. He works for no money. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) beggar b) patient c) student d) volunteer
5. The earthquake is a natural ..... . الصوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) proud b) disaster c) infection d) volunteer
6. The teacher asked me to ..... a school project about someone in my family.
   a) take b) have c) make d) do
7. The eyes, stomach, heart and ..... are parts of the body.
   a) lungs b) pumps c) cuts d) plants
8. The ..... happens when the Earth moves suddenly.
   a) flood b) drought c) earthquake d) emergency
9. My grandfather worked for a charity that ..... people who didn't have much money.
   a) took in b) went into c) found out d) looked after
10. There is lots of ..... in the room. It's very busy.
    a) jewellery b) furniture c) blood d) research
11. When he took the medicine, he ..... better.
    a) found b) took c) had d) got
12. Ancient Egyptian doctors used plants to help people ..... infections.
    a) stop b) make c) do d) attack
13. Don't sit on this chair. It's ..... .
    a) brave b) cool c) broken d) good

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Always give money to a ..... that helps poor children. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) medicine b) library c) history d) charity
2. There was a/an ..... emergency and many people were in hospitals. قنا ٢٠٢٣
   a) wealth b) earth c) north d) health
3. The ..... is a place where there are farms and lots of nature. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) city b) desert c) town d) countryside
4. Eman's sister is in the hospital with eye ..... . الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) infection b) infect c) plant d) light
5. Our TV is broken. Can you ..... it? المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) make b) do c) mix d) mend
6. Scientists like to ..... research about things they don't know.
   a) catch b) do c) make d) hold
7. My grandfather worked ..... a charity when he was young.
   a) with b) by c) for d) to
8. We are ..... of being Egyptians. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) pride b) sad c) proud d) tired
9. Children should drink milk to have strong ..... .
   a) pumps b) infections c) bones d) brains
10. ..... is usually made of gold and it is expensive. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
    a) Clay b) Rocks c) Plastic d) Jewellery
11. I always write ..... what the teacher says.
    a) for b) to c) down d) in
12. It is important to stay calm in a/an ..... .
    a) research b) idea c) brain d) emergency
13. Scientists ..... medicine from plants.
    a) catch b) give c) do d) make

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

(USED TO) for regular past habits and routines اعتاد أن

Usage الاستخدام

- We use (used to + inf.) to talk about habits or states that were true in the past but are not true now.

- نستخدم (used to + inf.) للتعبير عن عادة كنا نفعلها فى الماضى، أما الآن فهى لا تحدث.

Form التكوين

Subject + used to + **inf.** اعتاد أن

- He used to **live** in the countryside.

Negative النفى

Subject + didn't use to + **inf.** لم يعتد أن

- I didn't use to **know** much about my family history.

Question السؤال

Yes/No questions

Did + **subject** + use to + **inf.?**

A: Did she use to **live** in Cairo? **B:** Yes, she did. / **B:** No, she didn't.

Wh- question

Question word + did + **subject** + use to + **inf.?**

A: Where did you use to **live?** **B:** We used to **live** in a village.

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 I ..... (use to/swim) a lot when I was younger.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (used to swim) بمعنى «اعتاد أن» فى الماضى.

2 ..... (use to/they) have a car?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Did they use to) بمعنى «هل اعتاد أن ...؟» فى الماضى.

3 I ..... (not/use/enjoy) studying, but I do now.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (didn't use to enjoy) بمعنى «لم يعتد أن» فى الماضى.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practice more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My uncle used to ..... his car to work. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) drives b) drove c) drive d) driving
2. When you were ten, did you ..... to live in a different house? القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) use to b) use c) used to d) used
3. She used to ..... fat but now she's thin. الصومعة ٢٠٢٣
   a) was b) is c) being d) be
4. Soha's mother ..... be a teacher, but now she works in a bank. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) used to b) use to c) is using d) use
5. Did you use ..... up? الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) wash b) to wash c) washed d) washing
6. She ..... to be lonely because she lived on her own. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) used b) would c) using d) use to
7. Where did your grandparents use to .....? الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) live b) lives c) living d) lived
8. **A:** ..... you use to visit Alexandria? **B:** Yes, I did.
   a) Did b) Do c) Does d) Are
9. My grandfather used to ..... tennis. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) play b) plays c) playing d) played
10. He used to walk to school, but now he ..... . البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
    a) didn't b) doesn't c) don't d) isn't

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He ..... (use) to live in the countryside. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
2. My father didn't use to (being) ..... lazy when he was young. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
3. How did you ..... (using) to go to school? أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
4. I ..... (not/use to) swim when I was a child. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
5. I didn't ..... (used) to know much about my family history. الصومعة ٢٠٢٢
6. She ..... (not/use) be active, but now she is.

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Discussing family history

مناقشة تاريخ العائلة

online

Where did your parents use to live when they were young?
أين اعتاد والداك أن يعيشا فى الماضى؟

They used to live in Tanta. اعتادا أن يعيشا فى طنطا.

When you were ten, did you use to live in a different house?
عندما كنتَ فى العاشرة، هل اعتدت أن تعيش فى منزل مختلف؟

Yes, I did. نعم.

Did you use to have different hobbies?
هل اعتدت أن يكون لديك هوايات أخرى؟

No, I didn't. لا.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

▶ **Ali is talking to Amr about his great grandfather.** دقيقتان

Amr : Do you know much about your grandfather?
Ali : (1)..... .
Amr : (2).....?
Ali : Yes, he was kind. He used to have a big charity in his village.
Amr : (3).....?
Ali : He gave money to the poor.
Amr : What else did he use to do?
Ali : (4)..... .
Amr : Are you proud of him?
Ali : (5)..... .

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء الى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد

1. How to write about past habits

كيفية الكتابة عن عادات قديمة

- When I was young, I used to live in (المكان).
- I used to (الأفعال التى اعتدت أن تفعلها).
- I didn't use to (الأفعال التى لم تعتد على فعلها).
- I used to go to (المكان).
- There used to be ..... .
- There didn't use to be ..... .

Writing tips

Use varied sentence patterns in your writing. There should be both long and short sentences.

استخدم نماذج جملة متنوعة عن الجمل. يجب ان يكون هناك جمل طويلة وأخرى قصيرة في الفقرة

Example

What you used or didn't use to do when you were young

That was so long ago, I can't remember well. I used to do a lot of things. When I was young, I used to get up early and go to school. When I got home from school. I used to do my homework, then go out and play with all the other kids. I didn't use to help my mum with cooking. At the weekends, I used to visit my grandparents. They used to live in a village. There didn't use to be a supermarket in the village. My cousins and I used to play in the streets as there didn't use to be a lot of cars. We used to cycle to go to any place we wanted. I really miss my life when I was a kid.

2. How to write about someone you are proud of

كيفية الكتابة عن شخص تفتخر به

To : mona@student.com
From : sara@student.com
Subject : Someone I'm proud of

Hello Mona,

Of all the members in my family, my mother is the person I am proud of. She is 40. She looks much younger than her age with short hair and a beautiful face. She works hard. At work, she is respected by all of her friends. She is a useful person in society. My mother always does the housework well. She is a very good cook. I really admire her for her wonderful dishes. She often spends her free time cooking delicious dishes for us, which makes everyone in my family happy. What's more, my mother is an excellent adviser. I always love her and I will always be proud of her.

Write soon.
Sara

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 3 Lessons (3 & 4)

17.5

1 Read the following, then answer the questions: القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

Sir Magdy Habib Yacoub is an Egyptian heart surgeon, one of the world's most famous surgeons. He was born on 16th November, 1935 in Bilbeis, Sharkia. His family used to travel to many places because his father was an important doctor. When he was four, his aunt died at age 22 years because of heart disease. Then he decided to be a heart surgeon. At the age of 15, he entered the University of Cairo. He studied medicine <u>there</u> and became a doctor in 1957. His father died in 1958. In 1962, he moved to London and the USA to work there. Before he stopped working in 2001, at the age of 65, Magdy used to help to give people new hearts for the first time. In 2009, Magdy Yacoub started a charity, called Aswan Heart centre, for ill children in Aswan. Very <u>ill</u> children didn't use to live long lives but many ill children can now live healthy lives.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's this passage about? .....
2. What does the underlined word "<u>there</u>" refer to? .....
3. What do you think of Sir Magdy Yacoub? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Dr Magdy Yacoub started the Aswan Heart Centre in ..... .
   a) 1995 b) 2001 c) 2009 d) 1962
5. He became a doctor at the age of ..... .
   a) 12 b) 20 c) 21 d) 22
6. The underlined word "<u>ill</u>" is the opposite of ..... .
   a) well b) unwell c) sick d) unhealthy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Earthquakes and volcanoes are natural ..... . الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) disasters b) lakes c) floods d) rivers
2. All the Egyptians are ..... of Mohamed Salah. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) pride b) sad c) proud d) tired
3. A ..... helps people who are poor, sick or don't have a home. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) charity b) group c) prison d) thief
4. If something is serious or dangerous, it's ..... . الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
   a) party b) emergency c) charity d) organisation
5. Salma's mother is a volunteer at the hospital. They don't ..... her for work. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) buy b) take c) pay d) look

6. I always feel _____ about the good things in my life.
a) worried b) angry c) hungry d) pleased

7. The _____ take in air and helps us to breathe.
a) brains b) lungs c) hearts d) hands

8. Dina _____ use to get up early but now she does.
a) wasn't b) didn't c) don't d) doesn't

9. My sister didn't _____ to wear short clothes.
a) used b) uses c) use d) using

10. They _____ have a lot of money, but now they are poor.
a) used b) used to c) didn't use to d) didn't use

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Yasser's grandfather didn't _____ (used) to drive a car.
2. He used to _____ (played) tennis when he was a child.
3. Where did you _____ (used to) live before you move to Giza?
4. In Ancient Egypt, poor children _____ (not/used) to go to school.

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"A person you are proud of"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brother is a doctor. He sometimes sleeps in the hospital when there is a ..... emergency.
a) healthy b) health c) wealth d) wealthy

2. With treatments, many ill children can now live a ..... life.
a) healthy b) health c) wealth d) wealthy

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. There didn't use to ..... (was) a bank in our area.
2. She used to be late for school, but now she ..... (doesn't).

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 29 & 30 | WB pages 90 & 91

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

confuse (d) (v)	يتحير/يرتبك	organisation (n)	منظمة
difference (n)	اختلاف	painting (n)	لوحة/ التلوين
education (n)	التعليم	rubbish collector (n)	جامع القمامة
firefighter (n)	رجل إطفاء	society (n)	مجتمع
heroic (adj)	بطولى	statue (n)	تمثال
nursing manager (n)	مدير التمريض	street cleaner (n)	عامل نظافة الشارع

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

building (n)	مبنى	explain (ed) (v)	يشرح
discussion (n)	مناقشة	reason (n)	سبب

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

collect > rubbish	يجمع القمامة	make > a poster	يعد ملصقًا إعلانيًا
give > information	يعطى معلومات	put > first	يضع فى المقام الأول

Prepositions — حروف الجر

scared of	خائف من	useful for	مفيد لـ

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
continue	يستمر	stop	يتوقف
scared	خائف	brave	شجاع
useful	مفيد	harmful	ضار

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

Pre-listening question:

- Tell us about a person you respect the most.

Listen to two people having a class discussion. Tick the correct topic.



Mona What is a hero[1], Huda?

Huda I think a hero is someone who is very brave[2].

Mona What do you mean[3]?

Huda I mean a hero isn't scared[4] of anything.

Mona I think a hero is someone who is scared, but still tries his/her best.

Huda I'm not sure what you mean.

Mona In other words, they often do difficult or dangerous things.

Huda It's also about putting other people first.

Mona Sorry, I don't understand[5].

Huda I mean a hero helps other people.

Mona Yes, I agree[6]!

SB page 29

(1) بطل

(2) شجاع

(3) يعني

(4) خائف

(5) يفهم

(6) يتفق

Post-listening question:

- In your opinion, what makes a hero?

Pre-reading question: - Who is your hero?

Lesson 6

Read the article. Who is the writer's hero? Why? *SB page 30*

My heroic mother

Today, my mother is an important nurse, Mrs Karima Mohamed, but I know that her life used to be difficult. She studied to be a nurse at the Faculty of Nursing in Ain Shams University and used to work as a nurse, too, sometimes at night, to learn all she could. She then got a job at a big hospital in Cairo. She continued to work hard but did not stop her studies, and soon she became one of the most important nurses in Cairo.



Now, she works in a big hospital in Cairo in 2020, many people became ill and she worked every day for many weeks. It was difficult, but heroic[1] work, because most of them got better. She is also a nursing manager[2] and she helps to teach younger nurses.

(1) بطولى

(2) مديرة قسم التمريض

(3) التعليم

I think she is a hero because she studied and worked very hard to get an important job and now she helps people every day. She always tells me that education[3] is very important, and that if I work hard, I can do anything.

Read the email and write the sentences a-c in the right places. *WB page 91*

Hi!

My name's Adam and I want to write about a person I am very proud to know. **Her name's Mrs Karima Mohamed.**

When she was younger, she used to study very hard because she wanted to be a nurse. She also used to work to help pay for her studies, but that is not the reason I am proud of her! In 2020, there was a health emergency and many people were in hospital. **I became ill, too.** I was in hospital for two weeks and Mrs Karima Mohamed helped me and other people in the hospital. She was always very kind. I now know that she is one of the most important nursing managers in Cairo, so I am very happy she helped me. **I am very proud of her.**

Post-reading question: - Karima Mohamed is a great character. Explain.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This book is about some ..... Egyptian people who we are proud of.
   a) useless b) heroic c) silly d) horrible
2. You can see ..... in a museum.
   a) sights b) states c) statues d) stages
3. My grandfather is my ..... . He was a volunteer for a charity that helps poor people.
   a) hero b) waiter c) worker d) officer
4. This boy is very ..... . He isn't afraid of anything.
   a) useful b) ugly c) busy d) brave
5. I don't understand this. Can you tell me what it .....?
   a) agrees b) means c) paints d) pays
6. The little girl is always ..... of dogs. She doesn't like them.
   a) scary b) proud c) scared d) fond
7. Everyone should ..... their best to get what they want.
   a) try b) sleep c) mean d) understand
8. My brother wanted to eat out, but I didn't ..... .
   a) say b) agree c) make d) do
9. A good teacher should make sure that students ..... everything.
   a) say b) agree c) understand d) mean
10. My aunt is a/an ..... . She helps to teach younger nurses.
    a) engineer b) nursing manager
    c) farmer d) officer
11. He gave money to the World Health ..... to help sick people.
    a) Station b) Captain c) Society d) Organisation
12. She wants to study ..... to help the patients.
    a) music b) maths c) arts d) nursing

C Skills

Speaking

Checking understanding

التأكد من الفهم

Asking for clarification طلب توضيح أمر ما		Clarification توضيح أمر ما	
What do you mean?	ماذا تعنى؟	I mean, ...	أنا أعنى ...
I'm not sure what you mean.	لست متأكدًا مما تعنيه.	In other words, ...	بمعنى آخر ...
Sorry, I don't understand.	آسف، لا أفهم.		
Agreeing عند الاتفاق مع شخص فى الكلام		**Disagreeing** عند عدم الاتفاق مع شخص	
Yes, I agree.	أنا أتفق معك.	I don't agree.	لا أتفق معك.
That's true. / Yes, that's true.	هذا حقيقى.	I'm not sure about that.	لست متأكدًا من ذلك.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue: WB

▶ **Mona is asking Huda about her hero.**

Mona : What's a hero, Huda?

Huda : (1)..... .

Mona : Brave! (2).....?

Huda : I mean, a hero isn't scared of anything. (3).....?

Mona : I think a hero is someone who is scared, but still tries their best.

Huda : (4)..... .

Mona : In other words, they often do difficult or dangerous things. What else makes a hero?

Huda : It's also about putting other people first.

Mona : (5)..... .

Huda : I mean, a hero helps other people.

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 3 Lessons (5 & 6)

15.5

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Motaz is asking Sleem about his hero. اسيوط ٢٠٢٣

Motaz : Who is your hero, Sleem?

Sleem : (1)..... .

Motaz : What was your grandfather's job?

Sleem : (2)..... .

Motaz : Great! (3).....?

Sleem : He worked in a big hospital in Cairo.

Motaz : Did he use to be a volunteer?

Sleem : (4)..... .

Motaz : (5).....?

Sleem : Yes, I am so proud of him.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The teacher asked me about the ..... why I didn't do my homework.
   a) reason b) hero c) life d) building
2. ..... technology has opened our eyes to many useful things.
   a) Dangerous b) Ancient c) Modern d) Old
3. I had eight years of good ..... .
   a) discussion b) education c) society d) organisation
4. It wasn't an easy lesson, but the teacher ..... it to us in a perfect way.
   a) got b) explained c) studied d) understood
5. The teacher asked us to ..... a poster about our project.
   a) make b) play c) spend d) give
6. When my mother was younger, she worked at a hospital and continued her ..... .
   a) reports b) studies c) answers d) heroes
7. All mothers don't worry about themselves, but they ..... their family first.
   a) collect b) put c) make d) keep

8. She ..... in Paris last summer.
a) are b) is c) were d) was

9. There ..... a hotel in our city ten years ago but now there are three. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
a) weren't b) didn't c) isn't d) didn't use to be

10. They ..... have an expensive car. Now they have an awesome one. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
a) used b) used to c) didn't use d) didn't use to

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Who ..... (do) you use to play with when you were young?
2. I ..... (watch) a match at the stadium last weekend.
3. ..... (You were) at the park yesterday?
4. When I was young, I ..... (don't) use to walk to school.

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Someone you admire"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Challenging Questions مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ola's mother works ..... a nursing manager in a big hospital.
a) as b) such c) such as d) like

2. Milk is useful ..... children.
a) at b) in c) on d) for

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She is used to ..... (cook) our lunch.
2. My father used to get up late, but now he ..... (does).

Review On Unit 3

Vocabulary

jewellery	مجوهرات
blood	دم
lungs	الرئتان
manager	مدير
medicine	دواء
brave	شجاع
disaster	كارثة طبيعية
charity	جمعية خيرية
countryside	الريف
proud of	فخور بـ
pump (ed)	مضخة/يضخ
rubbish collector	جامع القمامة
society	مجتمع
heart	القلب
stomach	المعدة
hero	بطل
the Red Crescent	الهلال الأحمر
infection	عدوى
volunteer	متطوع
nuclear scientist	عالم نووى
street cleaner	عامل نظافة الشارع
surgeon	جراح

Language

1 **The Past Simple Tense:** زمن الماضى البسيط

Affirmative

- I visited my uncle yesterday.

Key words

(yesterday أمس - last ... الماضى - ... ago منذ - in the past - فى الماضى from + سنة ماضية + to + سنة ماضية - in + سنة فى الماضى (in 2010) - for + مدة)

My father **was born** in 1980.

Negative

- I did not arrive late for school yesterday.

Question

- Did you watch TV last night?
- What time did you go to bed?

2 **(used to) for regular past habits and routines:**

Subject + used to + inf. اعتاد أن

- He used to live in the countryside.

Subject + didn't use to + inf. لم يعتد أن

- I didn't use to know much about my family history.

Skills

1 **Discussing family history:** مناقشة تاريخ العائلة

- **A:** Where did your parents use to live when they were young?

أين اعتاد والداك أن يعيشا فى الماضى؟

- **B:** They used to live in Tanta.

اعتادا أن يعيشا فى طنطا.

- **A:** When you were ten, did you use to live in a different house?

عندما كنتَ فى العاشرة، هل اعتدت أن تعيش فى منزل مختلف؟

- **B:** Yes, I did.

2 **Checking understanding:** التأكد من الفهم

- What do you mean?

ماذا تعنى؟

- I mean, ...

أنا أعنى ...

- I'm not sure what you mean.

لست متأكدًا مما تعنيه.

- In other words, ...

بمعنى آخر ...

Question Bank

Al-Adwaa Test On Unit 3

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. Who is your hero?
   a) My father. b) My mother.
   c) My friend. d) My uncle.
2. Where was he born?
   a) In a village. b) In a city.
   c) In a town. d) In a tent.
3. What is he interested in?
   a) Tennis. b) Football.
   c) Helping people. d) Reading.
4. What's his job?
   a) A teacher. b) A doctor.
   c) A nurse. d) A baker.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ola and Salma are talking about Dr Magdy Yacoub. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

Ola : We should be proud of Dr Magdy Yacoub. He is an important hero.
Salma : (1).....?
Ola : He was born in 1935.
Salma : (2).....?
Ola : He was born in Sharkia.
Salma : Where did he work in the past?
Ola : (3)..... .
Salma : Do you want to be a doctor and work in a hospital, too?
Ola : (4)..... .
Salma : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

The Egyptian handball team are heroes! They won the handball Africa Cup of Nations in Tunisia in 2020. They won the final against Tunisia 27- 23. That means they are the best team in Africa! This is not the first time Egypt's handball team played in a final. In 2019,the junior team won the under-19 World Cup Final 32-28 against Germany. They were the first team from Africa to win it. In 2018, the senior team were also in the final of the Africa Cup of Nations, but lost the final against Tunisia. Now, lots of people in Egypt love the sport. Let's hope the Egyptian team can win competitions again!

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the passage about?

.....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?

.....

3. Do you think that lots of people in Egypt love handball? Why? Why not?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. In 2020, they won the final against ..... .
   a) Germany b) Tunisia c) Libya d) Iraq
5. The senior handball team lost the final of the Africa Cup of Nations in ..... .
   a) 2018 b) 2019 c) 2017 d) 2020
6. "....." is the opposite of the underlined word "win".
   a) Pass b) Succeed c) Lose d) Fall

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should keep your body clean to stop ..... .
   a) burns b) functions c) patients d) infections
2. A ..... knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) sports coach b) surgeon c) police officer d) hero
3. Mrs Mona is very ..... . She never gets nervous. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) ill b) sick c) patient d) careless
4. Dr Magdy Yacoub helped many people ..... heart problems.
   a) with b) by c) in d) on

5. A ..... is someone who works for no money to help people.
a) scientist b) police officer c) nurse d) volunteer

6. Nurses do ..... work when most of their sick people got better.
a) heroic b) terrible c) horrible d) bad

7. Use this door only when there is a/an ..... .
a) ball b) concert c) emergency d) wedding

8. My parents ..... home late last Thursday. I was very worried.
a) didn't come b) comes c) come d) came

9. **A:** Why ..... your friends very happy?
B: Because they passed their exams.
a) were b) did c) do d) are

10. Where did your grandparents ..... when they were young? العربية ٢٠٢٢
a) lived b) use to live c) used to live d) living

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The weather ..... (be) nice yesterday.
2. Baher ..... (lose) his arm in the last accident.
3. How did she ..... (sang)?
4. Where did you ..... (spent) your last holiday?

E Writing

6 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Dina to tell her about your hero. Your name is Yasmin and your email address is yasmin@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is dina@gmail.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



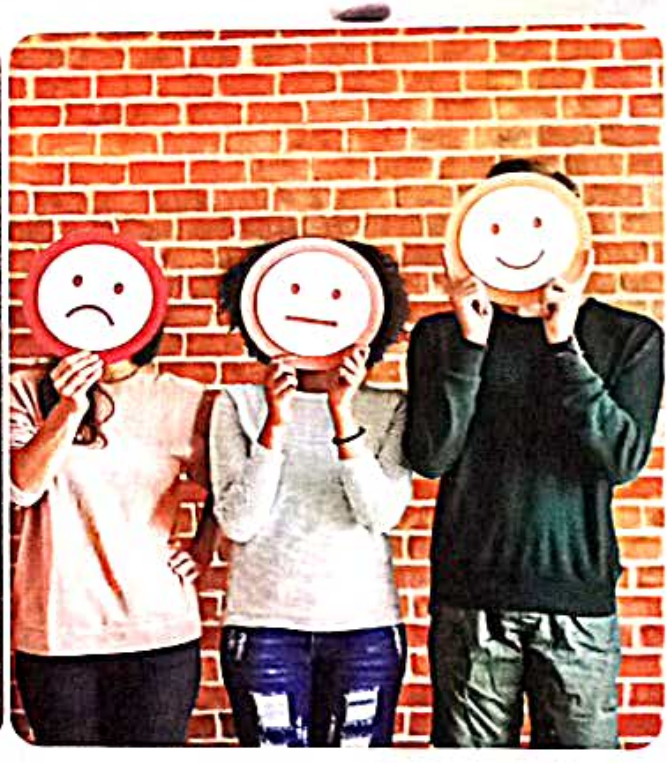
Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Review A







Units 1, 2 & 3

Review A

Lesson 1

Pre-listening question:

- Where did you live when you were younger? Who did you live with?

Listen to Dalia talking to her father. Check your answers to Exercise 1.

SB page 32



Dalia Hi Dad, I'm doing a school project about our family history. Can I ask you some questions?

Dad Of course, what do you want to know?

Dalia Where did you live when you were a child? Was it in Luxor?

Dad No, I moved to(1) Luxor when I was a teenager(2). When I was a child, I used to live in a village outside the city.

Dalia Oh, I see. Who did you live with?

Dad I lived with my mum, dad, my sisters and also my grandparents(3). We used to live in my grandparents' house.

Dalia What time did you usually get up?

Dad Very early! On a school day, I got up at about 4:30 am!

Dalia Really? Why did you get up so early?

Dad Because my school was very far from where we lived. It took me an hour to get there.

Dalia How did you travel to school?

Dad I went on my bike. We didn't have a car then.

Dalia What subjects did and didn't you like at school?

Dad My favourite subject was maths, but I didn't like history.

(1) ينتقل إلى .....

(2) مراهق .....

(3) الأجداد

Post-listening question:

- Why did Dalia's father have to wake up early?

Pre-listening question:

- Do you like school trips? Where did you go last time?

Listen and label the picture with the correct names (you do not need to label all the people in the picture). *WB page 93*



My name's Hana. This is a picture of my class. We are walking through an attractive park on a school trip. There are three teachers with us. Our English teacher, Miss Badria, is on the left, near a large lake. I am in the foreground, with my best friends Lamia and Ola. I am in the middle and Lamia is on the right. My twin cousins Azza and Randa are in the background. Azza has a dark blue jumper and a striped school bag.

Post-listening question:

- How many students are there in Hana's class?

Pre-reading question:

- What do you know about Antarctica?

Lesson 2

Read the text again and match the questions 1–3 to the answers a–c.

SB page 33

Life in Antarctica



(a) Why did you come to work in Antarctica?

I used to work as a scientist at a university. Then, I saw a job advertisement for scientists to work in Antarctica for a year and thought it looked interesting.

(b) What is daily life like in Antarctica?

Some things are the same as home!

We usually get up at about 7 am. We have breakfast and do some exercise. Then we start work at 9 am and finish at 5 pm. We eat dinner together and then watch TV, play some games or read.

(c) What is different about life in Antarctica?

At the moment, it is winter, so it is dark all day and night! The weather is very cold and windy. Only 20 people are working here now.

I miss my friends and family, but it is an amazing experience!

Post-reading question:

- Would you like to live in Antarctica? Why/Why not?

Write a reply to this email from a penfriend in Canada.

SB page 33

Hi!

How are you? I wanted your help with something. My homework is to write about life for children around the world. I have some questions about life in Egypt when you were a little child. What games did you use to play? What did your favourite toy use to be? What did you use to eat?

I hope you can answer the questions for me.

Write soon!

Max



Unit 4

Into the past

Objectives of the unit

Reading	Reviews of historic places in Egypt; a student's account of Jerash; information about a museum; a text about ancient objects; a text about the Stone Circles of Senegambia
Writing	A paragraph describing a historic place; a report about a historic site
Listening	A talk about a school trip; a talk about a historic place; an account of a trip to a museum; a class debate
Speaking	Describing a historic place; a telephone call asking for information; a debate about the effects of tourism
Language	Past continuous
Life Skills	Self-management; critical thinking
Values	Coexistence values; responsible behaviour
Issues	Environmental and developmental issues

Tapescript

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 34 - 37 | WB pages 95 & 96

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

ancient (adj)	أثرى/قديم جدًا	protect (ed) (v)	يحمى
arch (n)	قوس/قنطرة	race (n)	سباق
awesome (adj)	رائع	recommend (ed) (v)	يرشح/يوصى بـ
behave (d) (v)	يتصرف	ruins (n)	أطلال/أنقاض
castle (n)	قلعة	stadium (n)	استاد
culture (n)	ثقافة	statue (n)	تمثال
guide (n)	مرشد	temple (n)	معبد
historic (adj)	تاريخى	theatre (n)	مسرح
mosque (n)	مسجد	ticket (n)	تذكرة
pray (ed) (v)	يصلى	view (n)	منظر

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

bring (brought) (v)	يحضر	respect (ed) (v/n)	يحترم/احترام
concerning (adj)	بخصوص/متعلق بـ	rule (n)	قاعدة
object (n)	شيء	sports match (n)	مباراة رياضية
packed lunch (n)	غداء معلّبًا	stone (n)	حجر
picnic lunch (n)	غداء النزهة	time (n)	عصر/عهد

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية: (prep) = preposition | (adj) = adjective | (n) = noun
(conj) = conjunction | (adv) = adverb | (v) = verb

Check Point

Choose and complete: statue – respect – castle – temple

1. In the past, the king usually lived in a ..... .
2. I went to the museum and saw the ..... of Ramsis.
3. We must ..... old people.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

drop	> litter	يلقى القمامة	leave	> straight away	يغادر على الفور
get	> a guide	يحصل على مرشد	plan	> properly	يخطط بشكل مناسب

Prepositions — حروف الجر

a long drive to	مسافة طويلة بالسيارة إلى	excited about	متحمس بخصوص
a long walk to	مسيرة طويلة إلى	go back to	يعود/يرجع إلى
away from	بعيدًا عن	interested in	مهتم بـ
date to	يرجع تاريخه إلى	entrance to	مدخل لـ

Check Point

Choose and complete: in – drop – from – on

1. I take the bus because my school is a long way ..... my house.
2. What is your little brother interested .....?
3. Some tourists ..... litter in historic places.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
forget ينسى	forgot	forgotten	take يأخذ	took	taken

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word — الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) — عكسها
awesome رائع	terrible/horrible فظيع/سيئ جدا
national قومى/وطنى	international دولى/عالمى
ancient قديم/أثرى	modern حديث
protect يحمى	damage يتلف/يدمر

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية

1 historic (adj) ذو أهمية تاريخية (له وجود فى التاريخ)/تاريخى
history (n) التاريخ/مادة التاريخ

- I like visiting historic places.
- My favourite subject is history.

2 arrive at + مكان محدد تمامًا (مدرسة/بيت/مكتب/مطار) يصل إلى
arrive in + مكان غير محدد (بلد/مدينة/قرية)

- He arrives at school on time.
- He arrived in Cairo last night.

3 مضارع بسيط + so that + فاعل + can + inf. لكى

- On Sunday morning, you **must arrive** at school on time so that **we can leave** straight away.

4 recommend (v + ing) يوصى بـ/يرشح

- I **recommend** visiting the Egyptian Museum.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 When did you arrive ..... the station?
a) at b) on c) in d) by

2 You mustn't talk in the library ..... people can work.
a) as b) such as c) so d) so that

3 We should take more care of our ..... buildings.
a) historic b) history c) hero d) heroic

4 My penfriend recommended ..... to Paris next holiday.
a) travel b) travels c) travelled d) travelling

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

قمة (3) مكتمل (2) دول (1)

Definitions التعريفات

ancient	أثرى/قديم جدًا	very old
arch	قوس/قنطرة	an entrance to another place
awesome	رائع	amazing
castle	قلعة	a place that has very strong walls
guide	مرشد	a person who can show you round[1] a place
historic	تاريخى	important in history
mosque	مسجد	a place that Muslims can pray at
ruins	أطلال	not a complete[2] building
stadium	استاد	a place you can watch a sports match at
statue	تمثال	something you can see in a museum
view	منظر	what you can see from the top[3] of something

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
national	قومى/وطنى	local	محلى
protect	يحمى	save	يحفظ
awesome	رائع	amazing/attractive	مذهل/جذاب

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
history (n)	تاريخ	-ic		تحويل الاسم لصفة		historic (adj)	تاريخى
amaze (v)	يذهل	-ing		تحويل الفعل لصفة		amazing (adj)	مذهل

Places and Countries أماكن وبلاد

Abydos	مدينة ابيدوس (مصر)	Djenne	دجين (مالى)	Leptis Magna	لبدة الكبرى (ليبيا)
Algeria	الجزائر	Jerash/Petra	جرش/بيترا (الأردن)	Libya	ليبيا
Assuit	أسيوط	Jordan	الأردن	Mali	مالى
Baalbeck	بعلبك (لبنان)	Karnak Temple	معبد الكرنك	Roman	الرومان
Djemila	قرية جميلة (الجزائر)	Lebanon	لبنان		

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question: - How do you plan for a school trip?

Lesson 1

Listen to the teacher. What is she telling the class about?

SB page 35



Teacher I'm sure you're all excited about visiting the Pyramids next Sunday. It's important that we plan our trip properly, so I need to talk to you about rules.

(1) ثقافة (2) يحمي

On Sunday morning, you must arrive at school on time so that we can leave straight away. It's a long drive to Giza from the school. We're going to be away from school for the whole day, so you must bring a packed lunch. It's going to be very hot, so you must also bring a hat and a bottle of water.

Of course, the Pyramids are very important to the history and culture[1] of our country. We must help to protect[2] them. You mustn't climb the pyramids or sit on them. You mustn't drop litter. We must bring all of our rubbish home with us.

So, are there any questions about the trip?

Note:

culture /kʌltʃər/ تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

Post-listening question:

- We all should help protect our culture. Explain.

Lesson 1

Pre-reading question:

- Did you visit a special place before? What did you do before visiting it?

Complete the text with *must* or *mustn't*. *WB page 95*



It is a long walk to the temple(1) so you **must** all listen carefully. It is hot today, so you **must** all wear a hat. You **must** take some water, too. Cars **mustn't** drive on this road so we can walk on it safely(2). However, you **mustn't** stay on the road and you **must** walk. You **mustn't** run there. When we arrive at the temple, you **mustn't** touch any of the buildings because it is very old. We can eat our picnic lunches(3) after we visit the temple, but you **mustn't** eat in the temple. Finally, you **mustn't** forget to write about what you see!

(1) معبد (2) بأمان

(3) غداء النزهة

Lesson 2

Complete the review with words or a number from Exercises 1 and 2. *WB page 96*

My trip to Petra



I love historic(1) places like Petra in Jordan. It dates to around 300 BCE, so it is more than two thousand years old! You must buy a ticket to visit, but when you are inside, you can walk for a long way through the old city and the views(2) from some of the higher places are awesome(3), but you must be careful! Our guide(4) explained how old the temples are: they are really interesting. I really enjoyed our day there and recommend(5) a visit!

(1) تاريخي (2) مناظر

(3) رائع (4) مرشد

(5) يوصي بـ

Note: تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

picnic /pɪknɪk/

awesome /ˈɔːsəm/

Post-reading question:

- Can you name two big cities in Jordan?

Pre-reading question: - Where's the Roman theatre?

Lesson 2

Read the reviews and answer the questions.

SB page 36



An amazing day out! ★★★★★

I visited Abydos last week with my cousins. There's so much to see: temples, amazing art and ruins in the desert. I'm not usually very interested in history, but this place is awesome! It's really amazing!

Maged, Cairo

(1) بقايا / أطلال

(2) يتخيل

Get a guide ★★★★

The ruins[1] at the Karnak Temple were amazing and we really enjoyed our visit! It's a big place, so you need a few hours to walk around it. It's also a good idea to get a guide to tell you all about the history.

Leila, Assiut

Go back to Roman times! ★★★★★

I visited the Roman theatre in Alexandria with my cousins last week. It is easy to imagine[2] what life in Roman times was like here. There are also statues and the ruins of a temple in the museum there. It was great fun.

Samir, Giza

Post-reading question:

- Do you think Maged was happy in Abydos? Why/Why not?

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

statues /ˈstætʃuːz/

ruins /ˈruːɪnz/

Values

1. What can we learn from historic places?
2. Why is it important to learn about the history of other countries?
3. How should you behave when you visit historic places in other countries?

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 2

- What do you know about Jerash?

Read about Jerash and match the photos A-D to the paragraphs 1-4.

SB page 37

The City of Jerash By Azza

Jerash is a Roman city in Jordan. It is more than 2,000 years old!

When you go there, the first thing you see is the entrance[1] to the city. The arch[2] is very tall. You must buy a ticket before you go in.



The Romans enjoyed watching sport. This stadium[3] is for Roman horse races[4]. You can watch races there today.



Jerash has three Roman theatres[5]. The biggest theatre is the South Theatre. Five thousand people can sit here.



This temple[6] is on a hill[7]. There is an amazing view[8] of the city from here. I think it is important to learn about historic[9] places around the world[10]. We must protect[11] them so that people can visit in the future, too.



(1) مدخل
(2) قوس/قنطرة
(3) استاد
(4) سباقات
(5) مسارح
(6) معبد
(7) تل
(8) منظر
(9) تاريخي
(10) العالم
(11) يحمي

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

arch /ɑ:rtʃ/

Post-reading question:

- The City of Jerash is great. Explain.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We can call something that is ..... when it is very old.
   a) amazing b) awesome c) patient d) ancient
2. I love going to the ..... places such as museums and ancient ruins. الصوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) historic b) busy c) culture d) modern
3. Children must learn how to ..... politely. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) buy b) behave c) repair d) design
4. That building became ..... after the earthquake. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) mosque b) ruins c) museum d) hospital
5. People wear sunglasses to ..... their eyes from the sun. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) protect b) affect c) infect d) give
6. The children are excited ..... visiting the Pyramids.
   a) for b) to c) off d) about
7. Students must ..... school rules. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) follow b) break c) borrow d) lend
8. I should arrive ..... London at 6 tomorrow morning. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) of b) in c) to d) at
9. Don't worry. We'll get there ..... time.
   a) on b) for c) to d) at
10. We will go to the desert on a trip, so the teacher asked us to ..... a hat and a bottle of water.
    a) bring b) leave c) respect d) protect
11. Cars mustn't drive ..... this road. It's closed.
    a) of b) on c) at d) in
12. We ate our ..... lunches under the tree in the park.
    a) culture b) guide c) picnic d) temple

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We walked under a big ..... before we entered the museum. القاهرة/الزهر ٢٠٢٣
   a) arch b) castle c) stadium d) theatre
2. We usually pray at a/an ..... . أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) arch b) mosque c) castle d) statue
3. You can enjoy watching amazing plays in the ..... . الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) cinema b) stadium c) hospital d) theatre
4. It's good for tourists to take a ..... with them in historic places. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) guide b) doctor c) teacher d) pilot
5. Visiting the museum was really ..... . We all enjoyed our time. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) tiring b) awesome c) boring d) terrible
6. We should ..... our work properly before we start.
   a) get b) go c) make d) plan
7. Where is the ..... of this building?
   a) picnic b) culture c) review d) entrance
8. We had a cool trip and our mother gave us a ..... lunch.
   a) rule b) packed c) mosque d) stone
9. The pyramids are important to the history and ..... of our country. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) culture b) fall c) take d) random
10. You mustn't ..... litter in the playground.
    a) have b) make c) drop d) stay
11. Children must not ..... the objects in the museum. السويس ٢٠٢٣
    a) see b) protect c) repair d) touch
12. I go to school on foot. It isn't a long ..... .
    a) flight b) plane c) walk d) voyage

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

must/ mustn't — يجب/ يجب ألا

Subject + must + inf.

We use (must) to talk about necessity and obligation.

نستخدم (must + inf.) بمعنى (يجب أن) للتعبير عن الضرورة (ما يجب علينا فعله).

- They must **arrive** on time.
- You must **listen** to the teacher.

Subject + mustn't + inf.

We use (mustn't) to say that it is important not to do something.

نستخدم (mustn't + inf.) بمعنى (لا يجب أن) للتعبير عن شيء من المهم ألا نفعله.

- In a museum, you mustn't **touch** the objects.
- You mustn't **run** inside the building.

mustn't = must not = must never

لاحظ

- You must never run inside the building.

Must + subj. + inf.?

Question السؤال

A: Must we **put** rubbish in the bin? **B:** Yes, you must.

A: Must the boys **wear** the school uniform on the school trip?

B: No, they mustn't.

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال
تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We ..... (mustn't) be kind to other people.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (must) لأنه شيء مرغوب فيه.

2. You ..... (must) forget your books.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (mustn't) لأنه شيء غير مرغوب فيه.

3. Must we ..... (doing) our homework in the aftrernoon?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (do) لوجود Must التى يأتى بعدها المصدر.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You must ..... hard for your exams. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) studies b) studied c) study d) studying
2. You ..... be careful when you use a knife. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) has to b) must c) must to d) mustn't
3. You ..... eat or drink in the library. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) must b) mustn't c) should d) have
4. You ..... swim here. It's against the law. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
   a) can b) must c) should d) mustn't
5. It's late. You mustn't ..... so much noise.
   a) making b) to making c) to make d) make
6. Students ..... follow their school rules. الصوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) are b) have c) must d) had
7. You ..... touch the statues in the museum. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) mustn't b) should c) must d) could
8. When ..... come to see the film?
   a) must b) we c) must we d) we must
9. We must do more exercise or ..... a sport to stay fit.
   a) play b) to play c) playing d) to playing

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Tamer must ..... (gets) ready for the exam. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
2. People ..... (must) throw rubbish in the street. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
3. Noran mustn't ..... (drives) carelessly. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
4. You ..... (must) smoke in the hospital. بني سويف ٢٠٢٣
5. You must ..... (listening) to the teacher during lessons. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
6. What must you ..... (did) before the exams? سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

D Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about a historic place

كيفية الكتابة عن مكان تاريخى

- I visited one of the greatest historic places in (المدينة/البلد، اسم المكان).
- It's (وصف المكان).
- I studied about it in my history lessons.
- It was built by (اسم صاحب المبنى).
- It was built in (تاريخ البناء).
- It was built to (سبب البناء).
- It is one of the most awesome historic places.

Writing tips

Use capital letters at the beginning of a sentence, for names, cities, countries and touristic sites.

استخدم الحروف الكبيرة مع بداية الجملة وأسماء الأشخاص والمدن والدول والمعالم السياحية.

Example

A historic place you visited

I visited one of the greatest historic places in India, the Taj Mahal in Agra. I went there with my mum and dad. It is very huge in size. I studied about the Taj Mahal at school, I also saw its pictures. But watching it with my eyes was like a dream that came true. It was built by Shah Jahan around the 1630s. He built it as a gift to his wife, Mumtaz Mahal. It took around 22 years to build. People think that Shah Jahan cut off the hands of the workers who built it so that no similar building could be built. Therefore, this is one of the most awesome historic places.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"An ancient place"

I visited one of the greatest historic places in .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

TEST YOURSELF

Take a test

Unit 4 Lessons (1&2)

19.5

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

1. We bought tickets to visit the ..... .
   a) school b) museum c) space d) club
2. There were ..... things to see in the museum.
   a) a lot of b) little c) nothing d) bit
3. We ..... touch the objects.
   a) must b) mustn't c) have to d) should
4. The place was ..... .
   a) unpleasant b) awful c) boring d) amazing

2 Complete the following dialogue:

الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢

Bassem is advising Reda about his visit to the Egyptian Museum.

Bassem: Where are you going next weekend?
Reda : (1)..... .
Bassem: Well! The Egyptian Museum is fantastic. (2).....?
Reda : I'm going with my friends.
Bassem: Do you know what you mustn't do there?
Reda : (3)..... . What mustn't I do?
Bassem: (4)..... .
Reda : OK, I won't touch them. (5).....?
Bassem: You can go there by bus.
Reda : Thanks for your advice.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My uncle won in the last horse ..... .
   a) ride b) match c) game d) race
2. There is an amazing ..... of the city from the hill.
   الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) review b) site c) view d) sight
3. You must buy your ..... before you enter the theatre.
   كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
   a) scarf b) mask c) ticket d) paper
4. You can find a lot of ..... at museums.
   الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) status b) statues c) states d) stages
5. Our ..... explained how old the temples are.
   a) worker b) guide c) vet d) scientist

6. I visited Al-Azhar Mosque in Cairo and ..... in it. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
a) dived b) fished c) prayed d) played

7. We should ..... our temples and ruins. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
a) protect b) destroy c) steal d) damage

8. You ..... be quiet in the library. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
a) must b) mustn't c) can't be d) shouldn't

9. You ..... climb on the wall. It's dangerous. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
a) can b) must c) should d) mustn't

10. Children ..... be nice to their friends.
a) mustn't b) must c) must to d) mustn't to

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I ..... (must) be late. It's the most important meeting of the year. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
2. You ..... (must) eat or drink in a museum. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
3. I must (going) ..... shopping today. I have got nothing at home to eat. المنيا ٢٠٢٢
4. ..... (We must) eat fruit and vegetables every day?

5 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"A visit to the pyramids" الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1. We're going to be ..... from school for the whole day.
a) way b) way a c) a way d) away

2. I saw a ..... programme on TV yesterday.
a) history b) historic c) historian d) guide

3. This is a good book. I ..... it to you.
a) order b) ask c) recommend d) advise

4. Do you think ..... meet after school?
a) we b) must c) must we d) we must

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 3 & 4



SB pages 38 - 40 | WB pages 97 & 98

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

bowl (n)	سلطانية	mix (ed) (v)	يخلط
chemical (adj/n)	كيميائى/مادة كيميائية	necklace (n)	عقد/قلادة
clay (n)	الطين/الصلصال	oil (n)	البترول/الزيت
coin (n)	عملة معدنية	papyrus (n)	ورق/نبات البردى
design (ed) (v/n)	يصمم/تصميم	pot (n)	إناء/وعاء
figure (n)	شكل (بشرى)	ring (n)	خاتم
huge (adj)	ضخم	repair (ed) (v)	يصلح
ingredients (n)	مكونات/مقادير	tool (n)	أداة
mask (n)	قناع	vase (n)	زهرية

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

adult (adj/n)	بالغ	mirror (n)	مرآة
customer (n)	زبون	mosquitos (n)	ناموس/بعوض
decide to (v)	يقرر أن	opening times	مواعيد العمل
doorbell (n)	جرس الباب	station (n)	محطة
equipment (n)	معدات	ticket office (n)	مكتب التذاكر
except (prep)	ما عدا	ticket officer (n)	موظف التذاكر

Check Point

Choose and complete: papyrus – ingredients – necklaces – doorbell

1. Women like to wear beautiful and expensive ..... .
2. Rice and pasta are the main ..... of koshari.
3. Ancient Egyptians used ..... for writing.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس مهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

look	> good	يبدو جيدًا	make	> bread/food	يعد خبزًا/طعامًا

Prepositions — حروف الجر

a ticket for	تذكرة لـ	protect from	يحمي من
go into	يدخل	What's on?	ماذا يعرض؟
keep away	يبتعد	take off	يخلع ملابسه/حذاءه
look around	يتجول حول	thanks for	يشكر على

Check Point

Choose and complete: makes – from – on

1. He had no raincoat to protect himself ..... the rain.
2. My mum always ..... delicious food.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
cost	يكلف	cost	cost	hold	يمسك/يحفظ	held	held
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn	ring	يرن	rang	rung

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية

1 "be" made of — يصنع من (المادة الخام موجودة)

"be" made from — يصنع من (تغيرت المادة الخام تمامًا)

- Tables are made of **wood**.
- Glass is made from **sand**.

2 What + is/are + الشيء + made of? — مم يصنع...؟ (تسأل عن مادة التصنيع الخام)

- What is this mirror made of?

3 What + (Is/ are)/(was/were) + الشيء + (used) for? — من أجل ماذا ....؟ (تسأل عن سبب الاستخدام)

- What were mirrors used for?

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

قطع (1) نموذج (2) معدات (3) يصلح (4) تحمل (5)

Definitions التعريفات

coins	عملات معدنية	pieces[1] of money made of metal
figure	شكل (بشرى)	a model[2] of a person
mask	قناع	something people wear to cover or protect their face
necklace	عقد/قلادة	jewellery you wear around your neck
tool	أداة	a piece of equipment[3] you can use to make or repair[4] things
vase	زهرية	a pot used for holding[5] flowers

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) مرادفها
huge ضخم	large/very big كبير الحجم

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
equip (v) يعد/يجهز	-ment	تحول الفعل لاسم	equipment (n) معدات

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word الكلمة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
un-	تعطى عكس المعنى	popular شعبى/محبوب	unpopular غير شعبى/غير محبوب

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is wood used .....?
   a) from b) of c) with d) for
2. Bread is made ..... flour.
   a) at b) into c) from d) of
3. To get the opposite of "popular", we add the prefix "..... ".
   a) un- b) in- c) dis- d) im-

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-listening question:

- Have you visited any museums before? When? Describe it.

Listen to Ahmed's talk about a museum visit. What did he leave at the museum?

SB page 39



Ahmed Last Tuesday, I went to the Museum of Islamic Art[1] with my family. While we were waiting to go into the museum[2], I saw my friend Amir with his mum and dad! While my parents were buying the tickets, Amir and I decided what we wanted to see first.

(1) متحف الفن الإسلامى (2) متحف

(3) تصميمات

While we were looking around the museum, Amir and I found some tall doors with amazing designs[3] on them. They were very interesting, so I wanted a photo. I put my bag on the floor while I was taking the photo.

We stayed in the museum for two hours before we went home. While we were travelling home, Amir phoned me. He had my bag – I left it in the museum! We got home an hour later. Amir arrived while I was taking off my shoes! He gave me my bag.

Note:

design /dɪzaɪn/ تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

Post-listening question:

- What was Ahmed doing when he left the bag?

Lesson 3

WB page 97

Put the dialogue in the correct order.





Ticket officer Good morning, City Museum. How can I help you?

Customer Good morning. Can you tell me what times the museum is open?

Ticket officer Certainly. We open from 9:30 to 6:30 every day except Friday. We close then.

Customer I'd like to know how much a ticket for two adults and one child is, please.

Ticket officer Of course. Adults are 150 pounds and children under 12 are 75 pounds.

Customer Can I buy the tickets at the museum?

Ticket officer Yes, or you can buy them online.

Customer Thank you for your help. Goodbye.

Lesson 4

Listen and match these modern objects a–d to the descriptions 1–4. WB page 98

1. **Speaker** These are made of wood. People use them to play a game.
2. **Speaker** These are usually made of plastic. They help to protect your eyes from the sun.
3. **Speaker** These are made of glass or wood. They help to keep away insects.
4. **Speaker** This is made of metal and plastic. People use it to mix ingredients when they are cooking.

Note:

ingredient /ɪngri:diənt/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:









Lesson 4

Pre-reading question:

- Name three things that the Ancient Egyptians used and we also use them nowadays.

Read about objects in Ancient Egypt. Why did people draw squares on the floor?

SB page 40

Objects from Egypt's past

Objects[1] from the past can help us to understand what life was like many years ago. They can also show us that we use many of the same objects today!





In Ancient Egypt, many people used mirrors[2] to help them paint around their eyes. This was not just to make them look good: the paint helped to protect their eyes from the sun and kept away insects[3]. The mirrors were metal and had interesting designs[4]. Where do you have mirrors in your home?

The Ancient Egyptians used pots[5] and bowls[6] for making food such as bread. These objects were made of clay[7], which came from the River Nile. While some people were mixing[8] ingredients[9] for bread in bowls, other people used large stones to mix the ingredients in a bowl. How do we make bread today?



Ancient Egyptians liked playing games like senet[10]. Senet boxes have 30 squares. This box is made of wood and is about 3,500 years old. Some people did not have senet boxes, but they still played the game. They drew the squares on the floor. What games are popular[11] in Egypt today?

(1) اشياء

(2) مرايا

(3) حشرات

(4) تصميمات

(5) اوانٍ

(6) سلطانيات

(7) طين الصلصال

(8) يخلط

(9) مقادير/مكونات

(10) السينيت لعبة تشبه الشطرنج

(11) شعبي/مشهور

Post-reading question:

- Mirrors played an important role in Ancient Egypt. Explain.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ..... are pieces of money made of metal.
   a) Cans b) Pots c) Coins d) Bowls
2. The Ancient Egyptians used ..... and bowls for making food.
   a) bins b) pots c) tabs d) lambs
3. She ..... the ingredients in a big bowl.
   a) fixed b) painted c) mixed d) covered
4. A ..... is something people wear to cover or protect their faces.
   a) vase b) coin c) clay d) mask
5. ..... is a type of paper that was used in ancient Egypt.
   a) Wooden b) Papyrus c) Ink d) Oil
6. While we were looking ..... the museum, we met some tourists.
   a) forward b) like c) around d) good
7. We saw some tall doors with amazing ..... on them.
   a) bowls b) designs c) coins d) masks
8. We should ..... our shoes before we enter.
   a) take off b) look at c) wait for d) find out
9. Rana looks at the ..... to see herself in the new dress.
   a) ward b) carpet c) curtain d) mirror
10. Ancient Egyptians painted their eyes to keep ..... insects.
    a) in b) on c) at d) away
11. The shop is very crowded today. There are many ..... .
    a) waiters b) customers c) sellers d) objects
12. A ..... is a piece of jewellery you wear on your finger.
    a) vase b) necklace c) mask d) ring
13. This watch doesn't ..... much money, but it's good.
    a) pay b) cost c) buy d) sell

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. These bowls are made of ..... .
   a) clay b) oil c) water d) paper
2. Miss Amal used to wear a gold ..... around her neck.
   a) necklace b) ring c) mask d) neighbour
3. A/An ..... is a model of a person.
   a) figure b) mask c) arch d) necklace
4. The pot used for holding flowers is called ..... .
   a) necklace b) bowl c) dish d) vase
5. We need to ..... our computer. It doesn't work.
   a) damage b) prepare c) repair d) care
6. We ..... to visit the Museum of Islamic Art.
   a) repaired b) decided c) cost d) hold
7. The nearby shop is open every day ..... Friday.
   a) during b) through c) around d) except
8. Which programme is ..... tonight?
   a) on b) with c) in d) out
9. Thank you ..... your help.
   a) with b) at c) to d) for
10. My mother uses healthy ..... when she cooks.
    a) coins b) ingredients c) stones d) necklaces
11. She paints around her eyes to ..... good.
    a) look b) make c) stay d) hold
12. He wants to take the train, so he went to the ..... early.
    a) station b) statue c) coin d) bowl
13. A knife is a ..... that we use for cutting things.
    a) pot b) tool c) ring d) coin

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

Language

THE PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE زمن الماضى المستمر

Usage الاستخدام

We use the past continuous to talk about events that were in progress at a certain time during the past.

- يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث كانت مستمرة فى وقت محدد فى الماضى.

- Ali was playing football all day yesterday.
- Dina and Hossam were playing tennis at 10:30 yesterday.

Form التكوين

I He She It (اسم مفرد)	was (wasn't)	inf + ing	were (weren't)	You We They (اسم جمع)

- I was (wasn't) playing football.
- They were (weren't) swimming.

Question السؤال

1. Yes/No questions

- فى حالة السؤال بمعنى (هل) نستخدم:

Was Were	>	I/ he/ she/ it/ اسم مفرد they/ we/ you/ اسم جمع	+ inf + ing..?

A: Was Aya sleeping? **B:** Yes, she was. / **B:** No, she wasn't.
A: Were they watching TV? **B:** Yes, they were. / **B:** No, they weren't.

2. Wh- questions

أداة الاستفهام	>	was were	>	I/ he/ she/ it/ اسم مفرد they/ we/ you/ اسم جمع + inf + ing..?

A: What were you doing at 5:00 yesterday? **B:** I was playing football.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

While/As بينما - أثناء / When عندما

- نستخدم (While/ As/ When) للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرًا فى الماضى (الماضى المستمر) حين قطعه حدث آخر (الماضى البسيط).

1. While/As past continuous, past simple

- As we were walking into the museum, we saw some old statues.
- While I was reading my book, the phone rang.

2. Past simple while/as past continuous

- Grandfather arrived while mum was cooking.
- I put my bag on the floor as I was taking a photo.

3. When past simple, past continuous

- When it rained, I was cycling to school.

4. past continuous when past simple

- My father was reading a book when my mum called him.

لاحظ

إذا استمر الفعلان معا فى نفس الوقت نستخدم الماضى المستمر للجملتين

5. While past continuous, past continuous

While I was studying, my mother was cooking dinner.

يمكن حذف الفاعل بعد (While) وكتابة الفعل مضافًا إليه (ing) إذا كان الفاعل واحدًا للجملتين

6. While v ing

While playing, I fell down.

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I ..... (play) the guitar when he came home.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (was playing) لوجود when التى يأتى قبلها ماضٍ مستمر.

2. We ..... (not/cycle) all day yesterday.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (weren't cycling) لوجود all day yesterday ويأتى معها ماضٍ مستمر.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Practise more

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ali hurt his arm while he ..... tennis. السويس ٢٠٢٣
   a) played b) has played c) was playing d) were playing
2. As I was reading the book, the phone ..... . المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) ring b) rings c) rang d) ringing
3. My mother was cooking ..... my father came. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) when b) while c) as d) which
4. Two men ..... when it rained heavily. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
   a) will work b) working
   c) are working d) were working
5. While he was running, he ..... down. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) falls b) fall c) fell d) falling
6. While we were ..... for the bus, I saw my friend Amir.
   a) waits b) waited
   c) waiting d) to waiting
7. While I was watching the final World Cup match, mum ..... a cake. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) makes b) made
   c) is making d) was making
8. ..... sleeping when his father arrived?
   a) He was b) Was he c) Did he d) He did
9. We were talking ..... the accident happened.
   a) after b) as c) while d) when

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (he/have) lunch at 4 p.m. yesterday?
2. What were you doing when I ..... (phone) you? المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
3. As we ..... (walk) into the museum, we saw some huge statues. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
4. I ..... (do) my homework when my sister called me. قنا ٢٠٢٣
5. Yesterday at three, I ..... (make) dinner.
6. My father ..... (walk) in the garden when it started to rain.

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What ..... at 10 p.m. last night? القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) were they doing b) did they do c) did they use to do d) are they doing
2. While ..... my homework, I slept. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) was doing b) were doing c) doing d) did
3. Sanaa heard the noise ..... she was watching a film. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) if b) unless c) after d) while
4. When I walked into the room, everyone ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) worked b) is working c) works d) was working
5. While Nada ..... to school, she saw a famous player. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) is walking b) walked c) was walking d) walks
6. As Kareem ..... photos, he lost his phone. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) was taking b) takes c) took d) taking
7. Amir ..... home while I was playing video games on his laptop!
   a) arrived b) was arriving c) arriving d) arrive
8. We were playing tennis when Tamer ..... his ankle.
   a) hurts b) hurt c) hurting d) is hurting
9. Why was he ..... yesterday evening?
   a) study b) studying c) studied d) studies
10. I was going to school when you ..... me.
    a) sees b) see c) saw d) were seeing

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He was having a shower ..... (while) someone knocked on the door.
2. I was ..... (sweep) the floor when I heard a noise.
3. My dad fell off while he ..... (paint) the wall. الصوم ٢٠٢٣
4. I was reading a book while mum ..... (cook). الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
5. The girls were going to the club when the storm ..... (begin).
6. ..... (They were) drinking coffee when you arrived?

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

D Skills

1. Speaking

Asking for information on the phone طلب معلومات عبر الهاتف

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف **Response** جملة الرد

online

١- عند عرض المساعدة:

How can I help you? كيف يمكننى مساعدتك؟

I'd like to know what time the museum is open.
أود معرفة موعد فتح المتحف.

٢- عند السؤال عن موعد فتح الأماكن:

Can you tell me what time the museum is open?
هل يمكن أن تخبرنى عن مواعيد المتحف؟

It's open daily from 8 a.m. to 3 p.m.
إنه مفتوح من الساعة الثامنة صباحًا إلى الثالثة عصرًا.

٣- عند السؤال عن السعر أو الثمن:

I'd like to know how much a ticket for two adults and one child is, please. أريد أن أعرف سعر التذكرة لفردين وطفل.

It's 20 pounds for adults. Children under 5 are free.
إنها بعشرين جنيهًا للبالغين ومجانية للأطفال تحت سن خمس سنوات.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

▶ **The ticket officer is trying to help Karim through a phone call.**

Ticket officer: Hello, Cairo Tower. How can I help you?
Karim : Hi. (1)..... .
Ticket officer: We're open from 9.00 a.m. to 10.00 p.m. every day.
Karim : (2)..... .
Ticket officer: Of course. Adults are 50 pounds and children under 12 are 25 pounds.
Karim : (3).....?
Ticket officer: Sure, you can buy the tickets online. Anything else?
Karim : (4).....?
Ticket officer: Of course, you could bring your camera with you.
Karim : (5)..... . Goodbye.

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about homes today

كيفية الكتابة عن منازل اليوم

- Our homes today are more (صفة) than they were before.
- I live in a/an .... (صفة) house.
- It's (موقعه).
- There are many objects which we use in the house.
- We use (اسم الشيء المستخدم).
- We use it to (السبب).
- Next to (الشيء), there is (شيء اخر).
- I like my house a lot.

Writing tips

Before writing, you need to think of ideas relevant to the topic.

قبل البدء في الكتابة، يجب أن تبحث عن أفكار مرتبطة بالموضوع.

Example

From : rawda@student.com
To : fatma@student.com
Subject : My home

Hi Fatma,

How are you? I want to tell you about my home. Our homes today are more modern than they were before, and they will get smarter. I live in a quite small but beautiful home. My home is near the river, so fresh and cool air comes to our home. There are many important objects which we use in our home. In the centre of my bedroom, there is a large bed. Next to the bed, there is a table with a vase of flowers. There is a large wardrobe to the left of my bed with a computer table, cupboards and shelves built into it. The kitchen is the place where there are many objects. A mixer is used for mixing food. The mixer is made of metal and plastic. A kettle is a metal container which is used for boiling water. I really love my home.

Write soon.
Rawda

Check Point

Write an email to your friend Tarek telling him about your home. Your name is Malek and your email address is malek@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is tarek@gmail.com.

.....

.....

.....

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 4 Lessons (3 & 4)

17.5

1 Read the following, then answer the questions: المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

There are so many places of interest in Egypt. There are also a lot of important places in history. Everyone should visit these historical places in Egypt. That helps us to know more about our beautiful country. Last week, I visited the Citadel in Cairo. It's an important monument. It has very tall towers. I saw them from a long way. Salah al-Din built it to protect Cairo. It took eight years to complete. I visited many museums and mosques there. I hope to visit it again one day. I am also going to visit the Museum of Islamic Art next week. It's a very important place where you can see a lot of things of the Islamic period. It's open from 9:30 a.m. to 6:30 p.m. every day except Friday. I hope I will have a good time **there**.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Suggest a suitable title for this passage.

.....

2. Do you think the writer will enjoy his time in the Museum of Islamic Art?

.....

3. Why did Salah al-Din build the Citadel?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The Citadel in Cairo is ..... .
   a) modern b) new c) ancient d) bad
5. You can visit the Museum of Islamic Art ..... .
   a) every day b) on Fridays c) 12 a.m. d) six days a week
6. The underlined word "there" refers to ..... .
   a) the towers b) the Citadel
   c) the mosque d) the Museum of Islamic Art

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ancient Egyptians made pots ..... clay. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) of b) from c) with d) about
2. This chemical helps keep ..... mosquitos. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) road b) away c) in d) on
3. Girls prefer to wear modern clothes to ..... good. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) take b) do c) make d) look
4. The ..... is a piece of equipment you can use to make or repair things. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
   a) coin b) mask c) tool d) vase

5. I bought a ..... to put flowers in it. البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
a) necklace b) statue c) mask d) vase
6. The ticket officer says children ..... seven are free.
a) between b) in c) on d) under
7. In Ancient Egypt, many people used mirrors to ..... around their eyes.
a) mend b) fix c) paint d) mix
8. While he ....., a shark attacked him. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
a) was swimming b) swim c) swimming d) swam
9. I was sleeping when someone ..... into my room violently. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
a) brake b) broke c) break d) was broke
10. Ali was brushing his teeth when his father ..... . الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
a) come b) came c) coming d) comes

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. While we ..... (study), the light went out. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
2. What were you doing when I ..... (phone) you? العربية ٢٠٢٢
3. ..... (they/clean) their house all morning yesterday?
4. He ..... (meet) a lot of people while he was working in London.

4 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Asmaa to tell her about objects from the past. Your name is Huda and your email address is huda@hotmail.com. Your friend's email address is asmaa@gmail.com.

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1 We saw some tall doors ..... amazing designs on them.
a) to b) with c) for d) at
2 Objects from the past can help us to understand what life was ..... .
a) such b) such as c) as d) like
3 The children ..... ice cream while they were watching TV. العربية ٢٠٢٢
a) eating b) eat c) were eating d) eats

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 41 & 42 | WB pages 99 & 100

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

century (n)	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	needle (n)	إبرة/مسلة
damage (d) (v)	يدمر/يضر/يتلف	pharaoh (n)	فرعون
debate (n)	مناقشة/مناظرة	report (n)	تقرير
environment (n)	البيئة	ruler (n)	حاكم
holiday company (n)	شركة لتنظيم الإجازات	tourism (n)	السياحة
local people (n)	السكان المحليون	valuable (adj)	قيّم
monuments (n)	اثار	war (n)	حرب

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

across (prep)	عبر	nearly (adv)	تقريبًا
cause (d) (v)	يسبب	pollute (d) (v)	يلوث
electric bus (n)	أتوبيس كهربائى	special (adj)	خاص/مميز
injure (d) (v)	يصيب/يؤذى/يؤلم	weigh (ed) (v)	يزن

Check Point

Choose and complete: Tourism – war – century – pollute

1. We shouldn't ..... the environment.
2. ..... is very important for our country.
3. Al Ahly SC was named the club of the 20th ..... .

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

follow > rules/signs	يتبع القواعد/الافتات	make > pollution	يسبب تلوثًا

Prepositions — حروف الجر

forms of transport	أشكال/أنواع النقل	walk up	يصعد
happen to	يحدث لـ	watch out	يحترس من

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
agree	يوافق	disagree	يرفض
war	حرب	peace	سلام

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
agree	يوافق	accept	يقبل
remain	يظل/يبقى	stay	يظل/يبقى

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
pollute (v)	يلوث	-ion		تحويل الفعل لاسم		pollution (n)	تلوث
value (n)	قيمة	-able		تحويل الاسم لصفة		valuable (adj)	قيم

Places and Countries — أماكن وبلاد

Cleopatra's Needle	مسلة كليوباترا	the River Gambia	نهر جامبيا
Gambia	جامبيا (دولة إفريقية)	the River Thames	نهر التايمز
Senegal	السنغال (دولة إفريقية)	the Stone Circles of Senegambia	الدوائر الحجرية فى سينجامبيا

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(1) To get the noun from the verb "pollute", we add the ..... "-ion".
a) synonym b) antonym c) suffix d) prefix

(2) She finally agreed to marry me. The synonym of "agree" is ".....".
a) disagree b) accept c) remain d) leave

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

Pre-listening question: - Why do you think tourism is important?

Listen again and complete the conversation. *SB page 41*



Amira What do you think, Hana? Is tourism[1] good for historic[2] places?

Hana Yes, Amira, **I think it is.** Tourists bring money to an area[3]. This helps the local people[4].

Amira **I don't think so.** A lot of the money goes to big companies, not local people.

Hana **Maybe**, but some holiday companies help the environment[5] and the local people.

Amira **I don't agree** that tourism helps the environment. Tourists drop litter[6] and damage[7] places in other ways, like sitting on ancient ruins.

Hana **I see what you mean**, but most tourists behave[8] well. They know it's important to protect historic places.

(1) السياحة
(2) تاريخي
(3) منطقة
(4) السكان المحليون
(5) البيئة
(6) القمامة
(7) يدمر/يتلف
(8) يتصرف

Post-listening question:

- Do you think it's important to protect historic places? Why?

Life Skills

It is important to protect all parts of the environment.

1. How can we help to protect historic places?
2. How can we protect the environment when we travel?
3. What can big companies do to protect the environment?



Lesson 5

Pre-listening question:

- Where do you stay when you travel to another country?

Listen to check your answers, then role-play the conversation. *WB page 99*



Fady Do you think this plan for a new hotel is a good idea, Baher?

Baher I don't think so. It only has jobs for people in the city.

Fady I don't agree. More tourists in the area can help the local people.

Baher Maybe, but what about the water? Taking water from the lake will damage the environment.

Fady I see what you mean. It's important to protect the environment.

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

environment /ɪnvaɪərənmənt/

Lesson 5

Read the email and write the missing sentences a-c in the right places. *WB page 99*



While we were visiting the beach last month, we decided it was a great place to build a new hotel. *The hotel will give work to a lot of people.* We are a big company, so we can ask people from our city hotels to work here in the summer. *We can use the water from the lake for the new hotel.* There is not much water near the beach at the moment, but while we were driving to the area, we saw a big lake. *This is the time when the hotel will be busy.* Let me know what you think of our plan.

Post-reading question:

- Do you think it's a good idea to build more hotels on the beach? Why/Why not?

Pre-reading question: - What do you know about the stone circles?

Read the report and look at the photos. Where are the stone circles and what do you think they can tell us? *SB page 42*

Report on the Stone Circles of Senegambia

Where are the stone circles?

- There are more than 1,000 Stone Circles[1] of Senegambia. They follow the River Gambia for 350 kilometres across two countries: Senegal and Gambia.



Stone circles at Sine Ngayene, Senegal

Why are the stone circles important?

- The stone circles are very important to the history of Senegal and Gambia. They tell us about the people who made them and how they lived.

How old are the stone circles?

- The oldest stone circles are around 2,300 years old and the youngest are around 500 years old. This means that people were building the circles for more than 1,800 years.

Can tourists visit them?

- Tourisits can visit them, but they must not damage[2] them. Money from tourism[3] helps to pay for local people[4] to look after the stones. It is important to protect[5] the stones.

(1) الدوائر الحجرية

(2) يتلف/يضر

(3) السياحة

(4) السكان المحليون

(5) يحمي

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

damage /dæmɪdʒ/

Post-reading question:

- Do you think the stone circles are important?Why/Why not?

Pre-reading question: - Where's the Cleopatra's Needle?

Read the report and match the parts 1-5 with the headings a-e.

WB page 100

Report on Cleopatra's Needle

Where is Cleopatra's Needle?

Cleopatra's Needle[1] is a large and important stone with beautiful designs on it. You can see it next to the River Thames in London, England.

(1) مسلة كليوباترا

(2) يرى

(3) عاصفة

How old is it?

The Ancient Egyptians made the stone for Pharaoh Thutmose III and it is about 3,500 years old.



How big is it?

The stone is more than 20 metres high and weighs[2] about 200,000 kilograms.

How did it get to this country?

The British made a special ship for the stone in 1877. While the ship was travelling to London, it nearly sank in a storm[3]. Another ship helped the stone to arrive in England a year later.

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Thames /temz/ Pharaoh /'feərəʊ/

Post-reading question:

- Why do you think the first ship sank?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Stop playing here or you might ..... that car. ٢٠٢٣ هنا
   a) hurt b) injure c) damage d) collect
2. The ..... is the place where we live.
   a) war b) fact c) environment d) ruler
3. Money from tourism helps to pay for ..... people. ٢٠٢٢ العربية
   a) cultural b) global c) world d) local
4. A ..... is a period of one hundred years.
   a) needle b) report c) century d) debate
5. Mohammed Ali was the ..... of Egypt in the past. He was very important. ٢٠٢٣ الصوم
   a) ruler b) roller c) baker d) waiter
6. Many cars on the road can ..... pollution.
   a) make b) do c) follow d) remain
7. Cleopatra's Needle is a large and important ..... with beautiful designs on it. ٢٠٢٣ القاهرة
   a) stone b) sand c) wool d) cotton
8. Egypt has many ..... that tourists like to see.
   a) debates b) reports c) rulers d) monuments
9. These pots are ..... . They date back to the Ancient Egyptians.
   a) valuable b) injured c) polluted d) bad
10. There was a ..... in the school about how to protect our environment.
    a) ruler b) debate c) pollution d) pharaoh
11. My uncle works for a big oil ..... in Cairo. ٢٠٢٢ القاهرة
    a) company b) work c) job d) house
12. Trains are one of the best ..... of transport.
    a) reports b) forms c) debates d) rulers

B Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

Speaking

Asking for and giving opinions

السؤال عن، وإبداء الرأى

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف **Response** جملة الرد

online

١- السؤال عن الرأى وكيفية الرد:

What do you think, Abbas? Is tourism good for historic places?
ما رأيك يا عباس؟ هل السياحة مفيدة للأماكن التاريخية؟

I don't think so. Tourists often travel by car. This makes more pollution.
لا أعتقد ذلك. يسافر السائحون غالبًا بالسيارة، وهذا يؤدى إلى زيادة التلوث.

Do you think it's important to protect historic places?
هل تعتقد أنه من المهم حماية الأماكن الأثرية؟

Yes. I think so.
نعم. أعتقد ذلك.

٢- التعبير عن الرأى والرد:

I think that tourists damage places in other ways.
أعتقد أن السائحين يسببون ضررًا للأماكن بطرق مختلفة.

I agree/don't agree with you.
أتفق/لا أتفق معك فى ذلك.

I see what you mean.
أفهم ما تعنيه.

Speaking Exercise

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue: القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

▶ **Amira and Hana are talking about tourism.**

Amira : What do you think, Hana? Is tourism good for historic places?
Hana : Yes, I think it is.
Amira : (1).....?
Hana : Because a lot of money goes to the local people.
Amira : (2)..... . A lot of the money goes to big companies, not local people.
Hana : Maybe! (3).....?
Amira : No, I don't agree that holiday companies help the environment.
Hana : Why don't you agree?
Amira : (4)..... .
Hana : (5)..... . Some tourists can damage some places.

TEST YOURSELF

Take a test

Unit 4 Lessons (5 & 6)

15.5

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Sandy asks Maya to help her with the school project.

Sandy : Can you help me with my project? We have a class debate.

Maya : Yes, of course! (1).....?

Sandy : It's about technology and our world.

Maya : (2).....?

Sandy : I think it wastes our time.

Maya : (3)..... . I think it makes our world better.

Sandy : (4)..... . But some people use it badly.

Maya : Maybe. We must advise people how to use it.

Sandy : Do you think they will listen to us?

Maya : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brother works in a holiday ..... that organises holidays.
   a) fort b) company c) palace d) castle
2. ..... is very important for Egypt. It brings a lot of money. الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
   a) Earthquake b) Flood c) Disaster d) Tourism
3. I want to know what happened ..... your father last night.
   a) to b) in c) under d) at
4. Some tourists are careless because they ..... rubbish in the historic places.
   a) drop b) make c) lend d) mix
5. Some projects in the area help ..... people to find jobs easily.
   a) cultural b) local c) historical d) natural
6. Drivers should ..... signs of the road to be safe on the road.
   a) get b) give
   c) make d) follow
7. Ali ..... his leg while he was playing football.
   a) followed b) injured
   c) protected d) made

8. While I ..... out rubbish, my father came. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) take b) took c) was taking d) taking

9. I was doing my homework and my mother and father ..... at work. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢

a) were b) was c) are d) is

10. While ..... at home, Ziad phoned me. العربية ٢٠٢٢

a) was being b) am c) were d) being

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I ..... (tidy) my bedroom at eight o'clock yesterday.
2. I must ..... (am) home on time.
3. This was a nice evening. We ..... (mustn't) meet again.
4. When you arrived at the party, ... (they were) dancing?

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Ancient Egyptians' objects"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

25

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1. The oldest stone circles are ..... 2,300 years old.

a) round b) around c) a round d) round a

2. My father travelled five years ago, but my brother travelled a year ..... .

a) late b) last c) latest d) later

3. Stone Circles of Senegambia ..... the River Gambia for 350 kilometres across two countries.

a) follow b) walk c) run d) go

4. The British made a ..... ship for the stone in 1877.

a) exciting b) important c) special d) private

Review on Unit 4

Vocabulary

ancient	أثرى/قديم جدًا
arch	قوس/قنطرة
awesome	رائع
behave (d)	يتصرف
castle	قلعة
century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)
chemical	مادة كيميائية
clay	طين/صلصال
coin	عملة معدنية
damage (d)	يدمر/يضر/يتلف
date to	يرجع تاريخه إلى
debate	مناقشة/مناظرة
entrance to	مدخل (لـ)
environment	البيئة
follow (ed)	يتبع
historic	تاريخى
keep away	يبعد
local people	السكان المحليون
mosque	مسجد
national	قومى/وطنى
necklace	عقد/قلادة
papyrus	ورق/نبات البردى
pray (ed)	يصلى
race	سباق
recommend (ed)	يرشح/يوصى بـ
ruins	أطلال
ruler	حاكم
statue	تمثال
stone circles	الدوائر الحجرية
temple	معبد
theatre	مسرح
tool	أداة

Language

1- Must/Mustn't يجب/يجب ألا

Subject + must/mustn't + inf.

- You must drop litter in the bin.
- You mustn't damage historic places.

2- The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر

Subject + was/were + v.ing

- Aya and Ola were doing their homework all night.

While/As + past continuous, past simple

- While/As mum was cooking, grandfather arrived.

When + past simple + past continuous

- When the game started, it was raining.

Skills

Speaking:

1. Asking for information on the phone

- How can I help you?
  - I'd like to know what time the museum is open.
- Hello, can you tell me if the museum is open on Fridays?
  - Certainly./Of course. It's open daily.
- Can I buy the tickets online?
  - Sure./Of course.

2. Asking for and giving opinions

- What do you think, Abbas? Is tourism good for historic places?
  - I think that tourists damage places in other ways.
- I don't agree with you.
- I don't think so.
- I see what you mean.

Question Bank

Al-Adwaa Test On Unit 4

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. The Ancient Egyptians used ..... for making food.
   a) pots b) bowls
   c) plastic plates d) both a and b
2. Pots were made of ..... .
   a) mud b) clay
   c) wood d) metal
3. Clay was taken from the ..... .
   a) Red Sea b) beach
   c) lake d) River Nile
4. The Ancient Egyptians were very ..... .
   a) bad b) evil
   c) clever d) stupid

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ramy suggests going to the Citadel.

ناصرة ٢٠٢٣

Ramy : Hello, Samy. What about going to the Citadel?
Samy : (1)..... .
Ramy : (2).....?
Samy : We can take a taxi.
Ramy : (3).....?
Samy : Salah al-Din Al Ayouby built it.
Ramy : Why?
Samy : (4)..... .
Ramy : Is it a historic building?
Samy : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Egypt is a great country in the Middle East. Its capital is Cairo city. The main language is Arabic. The weather in Egypt is fine all the year, so many tourists come from all over the world to enjoy it. When **they** come to Egypt, they enjoy its ancient places such as the Egyptian Museum to see the ancient statues. They also visit Luxor and Aswan to enjoy and see Luxor Temples and the High Dam in Aswan. Also, they visit the Cairo Tower where they can have a look on the whole city of Cairo. It is a beautiful view. Tourists can have **delicious** meals at the restaurants in Cairo.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage.

.....

2. What does the underlined word "**they**" refer to?

.....

3. Why do you think tourists like to visit Egypt?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "**delicious**" in the passage means ..... .

a) bad b) dangerous c) tasty d) ancient

5. The main language in Egypt is ..... .

a) French b) Arabic

c) Italian d) Spanish

6. The weather in Egypt is ..... all the year.

a) fine b) bad c) cold d) very hot

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The opposite of "modern" is ..... .

a) ancient b) difficult

c) new d) fashionable

2. This place is ....., I like it very much.

a) boring b) easy c) awesome d) busy

3. You can see beautiful ..... on Cleopatra's Needle.
a) headings b) designs c) subheadings d) storms
4. Dropping rubbish into the river can ..... water.
a) pollute b) weigh c) injure d) follow
5. ..... are bad events that damage many places.
a) Wars b) Weddings c) Birthdays d) Parties
6. The crops were badly ..... by the storm.
a) attacked b) attracted c) damaged d) debated
7. I read an interesting ..... in a magazine.
a) debate b) report c) paper d) plan
8. You ..... be quiet in the library.
a) must b) mustn't c) can't d) shouldn't
9. You ..... touch the paintings in an art gallery.
a) must b) mustn't c) have to d) doesn't have to
10. When I phoned Soha, she ..... dinner.
a) having b) has c) is having d) was having

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. During an exam, you ..... (must) copy from the other students.
2. You ..... (must) eat or drink in a museum.
3. As Karim ..... (take) photos of the animals, he lost his phone.
4. Marina ..... (cook) all morning yesterday.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"A historic place you visited"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....



Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Monthly Models On Units 3&4

هذه النماذج ستساعدك فى التدرب على الاختبارات الشهرية.

November Model 1

10

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Fadi and Nadi are talking about street cleaners.

Fadi : What do you think of street cleaners?

Nadi: (1)..... .

Fadi : (2).....?

Nadi: I mean by heroes that they do something useful.

Fadi : Why do you think so?

Nadi: (3)..... .

Fadi : (4).....?

Nadi: We should encourage them and give them more money.

Fadi : But I think money is not enough.

Nadi: (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Rubbish and polluted areas cause ..... and diseases for people.
   a) protection b) infection c) happiness d) beauty
2. Students sometimes ..... experiments in the laboratory.
   a) get b) do c) make d) spend
3. A natural ..... is a terrible event, such as an earthquake.
   a) water b) science c) gas d) disaster
4. It is important to learn about ..... places around the world.
   a) scary b) ugly c) historic d) boring
5. Rubbish in the river ..... wildlife.
   a) damages b) cleans c) recycles d) protects
6. Magdy Yacoub is one of the greatest heart ..... in the world.
   a) engineers b) architects c) surgeons d) artists

7. A ..... is someone who works for no money to help people.

a) baker b) teacher c) volunteer d) nurse

8. I ..... work, walked to the beach and met my friends.

a) was finished b) finish c) finished d) finishing

9. My grandfather used to ..... tennis.

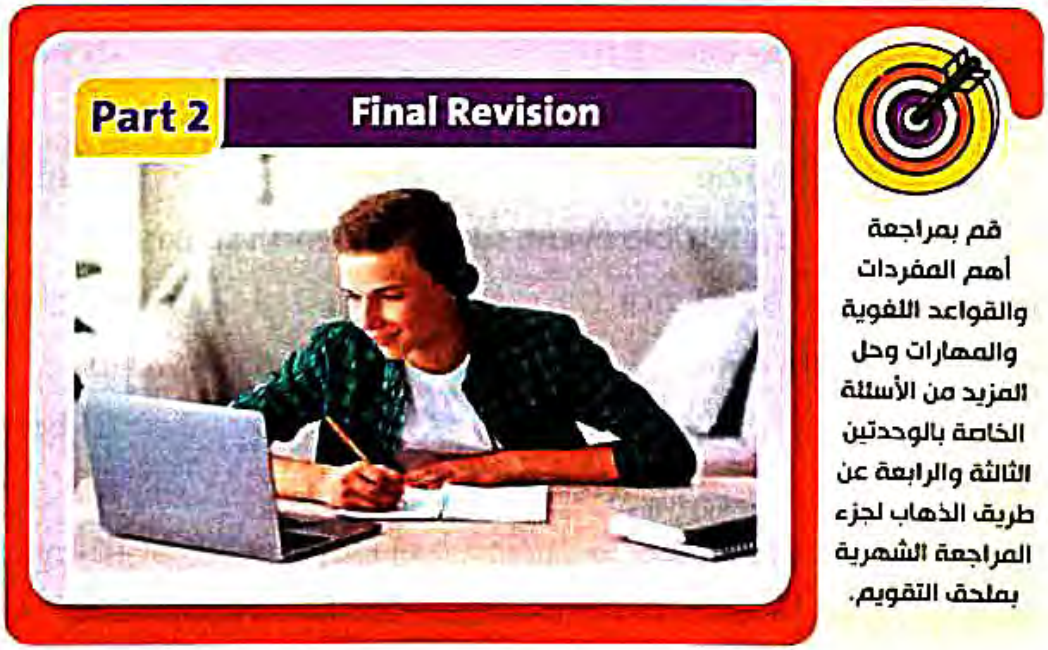
a) play b) plays c) playing d) played

10. ..... Sama entered the room, I was doing my homework.

a) While b) If c) As d) When

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What ..... (be) you doing at 9 o'clock yesterday?
2. Last year, my uncle ..... (buy) a new car.
3. What did you ..... (used) like when you were a child?
4. You mustn't ..... (using) a mobile phone in class.
5. My father was driving when the police (stop) ..... him.



قم بمراجعة أهم المفردات والقواعد اللغوية والمهارات وحل المزيد من الأسئلة الخاصة بالوحدتين الثالثة والرابعة عن طريق الذهاب لجزء المراجعة الشهرية بملحق التقويم.

November Model 2

7.5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I went to the stadium to watch the ..... between Egypt and Tunisia.
   a) primary b) brave c) national d) final
2. The lungs take in air and help us to ..... .
   a) breeze b) breath c) breathe d) freeze
3. People who work for no money are ..... .
   a) criminals b) volunteers c) bad d) ugly
4. We must ..... the historic places around the world.
   a) protect b) mix c) injure d) damage
5. Football games are played at the ..... .
   a) cinema b) zoo c) museum d) stadium
6. The nurse is a ..... . She saved a lot of people.
   a) hero b) hello c) manager d) servant
7. Good students should follow the school ..... .
   a) rules b) lines c) ruins d) roles
8. He ..... hard for the exam, so he passed it.
   a) studies b) doesn't study
   c) studied d) didn't study
9. I was revising my lessons when my father ..... in.
   a) is coming b) was coming c) comes d) came
10. People ..... respect each other.
    a) must b) must to c) mustn't d) mustn't to

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You ..... (must) eat inside the castle.
2. I didn't ..... (saw) you yesterday.
3. My grandfather ..... (not/use) have a car.
4. We mustn't ..... (are) late for the exam.
5. Where ..... (do) you use to live when you were 7?

November Model 3

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Tarek and Khaled are discussing where they used to eat.

Tarek : Hi, Khaled. How are you?

Khaled : (1)..... .

Tarek : Did you use to eat in a restaurant?

Khaled : (2)..... . My friend Hani and I used to eat at a famous one.

Tarek : (3).....?

Khaled : Yes, we enjoyed our meal very much.

Tarek : Unfortunately, I didn't eat in a restaurant.

Khaled : (4).....?

Tarek : I used to eat at home with my family! Can we go together next weekend?

Khaled : (5)..... .

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The person I admire in my family is my grandfather. He was born in 1940. He worked as a doctor. He worked in a big hospital. All people there liked **him** because he was kind and helpful. I **admire** him because he did voluntary work and helped people for no money. I like him because he gave me many presents and helped me a lot. He used to help the poor and give them money. He always advised me to help people all the time. When he died last year, people were all sad. He left all his money for poor people and asked us to build a hospital for them.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage.

.....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "**him**" refer to?

.....

3. What do you think of the writer's grandfather?

.....

B) **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The word "admire" means to ..... .

a) dislike b) hate

c) kill d) love

5. My grandfather advised me to ..... .

a) work as a doctor b) help people

c) build a school d) be a volunteer

6. My grandfather asked us to build a ..... for poor people.

a) hospital b) charity c) bank d) library

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. It ..... (didn't) cold yesterday night.
2. His father called him while he ..... (prepare) breakfast.
3. In Ancient Egypt, poor children ..... (not/use) to go to school.
4. I ..... (mustn't) eat less cake or I'll get fat.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"A job you like to do"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

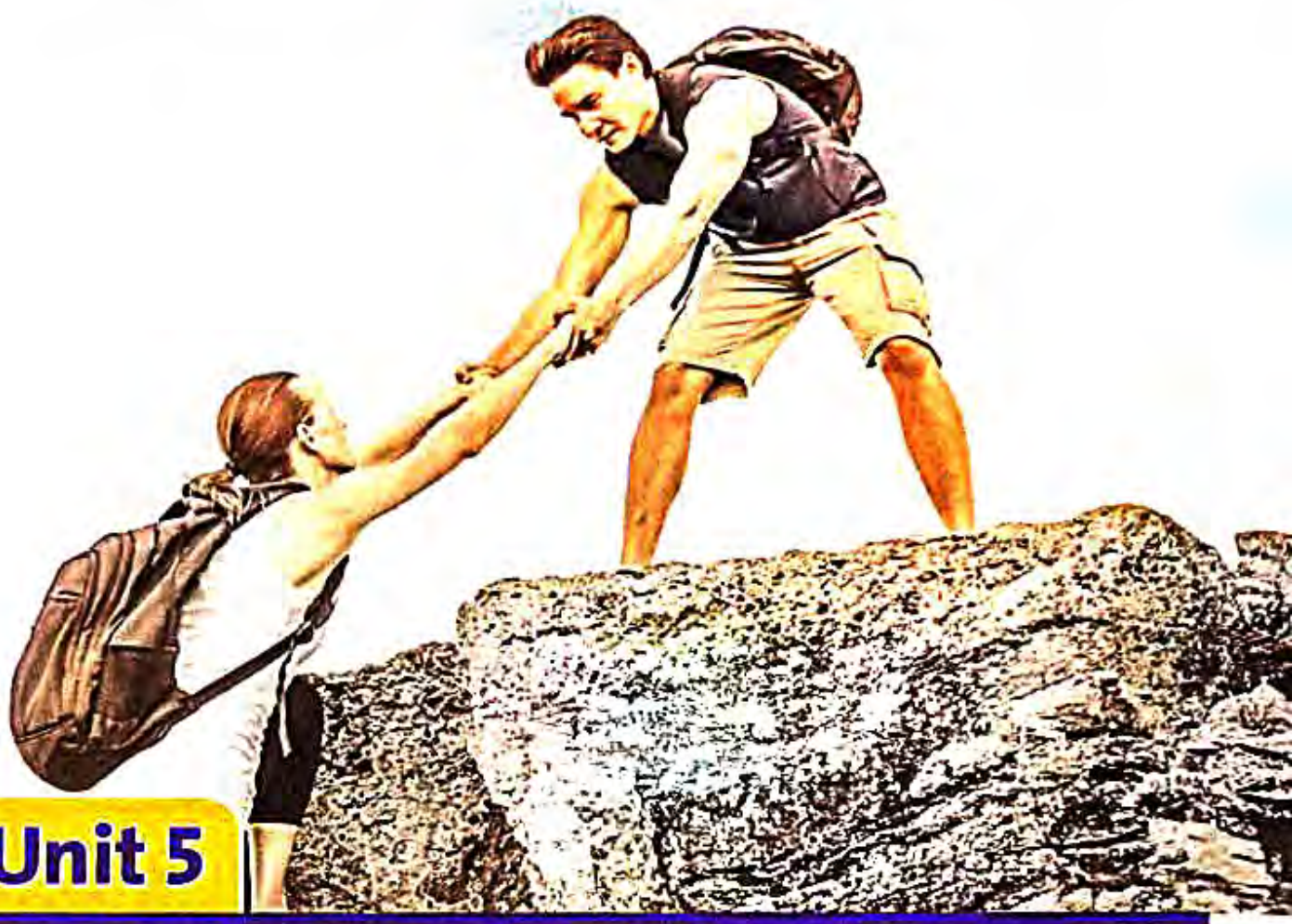
.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit 5

Helping you, helping me

Objectives of the unit

Reading	An article about kindness; blogs about volunteering for charities; A Little Princess; a news report about a charity; a blog about a project
Writing	A blog post on how to help your community
Listening	Conversations about jobs in the house; descriptions of photos; stories about people who helped; people making suggestions
Speaking	A discussion about jobs in the house; discussing random acts of kindness; making suggestions
Language	who, which, that, where
Life Skills	Participation; Collaboration
Values	Coexistence values; Sharing; Random acts of kindness
Issues	Community participation



Tapescript

تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات WB

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 44 - 47 | WB pages 102 & 103

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

acts (n)	أفعال/أعمال	smile (n)	ابتسامة
advertisement (n)	إعلان	stranger (n)	غريب
apartment = flat (n)	شقة	teenager (n)	مراهق
kindness (n)	لطف/عطف	thief (n)	لص/حرامي
random (adj)	عشوائي	tips (n)	تلميحات/نصائح

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

address (n)	عنوان (منزل)	shape (n)	شكل
bin (n)	سلة القمامة	shopkeeper (n)	البائع
check (ed) (v)	يفحص/يتحقق/يراجع	short distance	مسافة قصيرة
fantastic (adj)	رائع	wheelchair (n)	كرسي متحرك
practise (d) (v)	يمارس		

Check Point

Choose and complete: bin - wash - address - thief

1. We should throw our rubbish in the ..... .
2. What's your name and .....?
3. The ..... stole my father's wallet yesterday.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun	(adj) = adjective	(prep) = preposition
(v) = verb	(adv) = adverb	(conj) = conjunction

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do	acts	يقوم بأعمال	give	a seat to	يعطى المقعد لـ
	a job	يؤدى وظيفة		a model	يصنع نموذجًا
	homework	يؤدى الواجب المنزلى	make	friends	يكوّن صداقة
	kind things	يفعل أشياء لطيفة		the bed	يرتب الفراش
	the cooking	تقوم بالطهى	take	the lift/stairs	يأخذ المصعد/السلالم
get	his bag ready for	يجهز حقيبته لـ		turns	يتبادل الأدوار
	on the bus	يركب الأتوبيس			

Prepositions — حروف الجر

busy with	مشغول بـ/مع	on the third floor	فى الطابق الثالث
care about	يهتم/يعتنى بـ	put away	يضع شيئًا فى مكانه
give back	يرجع/يعيد	run after	يجرى وراء/خلف
go on a boat	يذهب فى قارب	spend money on	ينفق مالًا على
help with	يساعد فى	take out	يُخرج/يزيل شيئًا
kind to	عطوف/طيب مع	tidy up	يرتب
look after	يعتنى بـ	wash up	يغسل الأطباق

Check Point

Choose and complete: made - did - to - about

1. The teacher always cares ..... all the students in his class.
2. I ..... a lot of friends at school last year.
3. We should be kind ..... each other.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
put away	يضع شيئًا فى مكانه	put away	put away
stand	يقف	stood	stood

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
borrow	يستعير	lend	يسلف
full	ممتلئ	empty	فارغ
lucky	محظوظ	unlucky	غير محظوظ
messy	فوضوى/غير مرتب	tidy	مرتب
right	صحيح	wrong	خطأ
surprised	مندهش	unsurprised	غير مندهش

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية

1 spend + time + (v + ing) - يقضى وقتا فى ...

- I usually spend 2 hours **watching** TV.

2 **on time** فى الوقت المحدد / **in time** فى الوقت المناسب

- I usually arrive at school on time.
- We arrived at the theatre in time. The play starts soon.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Definitions

التعريفات

fantastic	رائع	very good
kindness	لطف/عطف	when you do things to help others[1] and show you care about them
random	عشوائى	happening[2] without[3] a plan
smile	ابتسامة	the shape of your mouth that shows you are happy
strangers	أشخاص غرباء	people you don't know

(1) الآخرون (2) يحدث (3) بدون

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
right	صحيح	correct/true	صحيح
surprised	مندهش	amazed	مندهش

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
kind (adj)	عطوف/طيب	-ness		تحويل الصفة إلى اسم		kindness (n)	لطف/عطف
luck/noise (n)	حظ/ضوضاء	-y		تحويل الاسم إلى صفة		lucky/noisy (adj)	محظوظ/ صاخب

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
bin	سلة قمامة	pin	دبوس
left	شمال	lift	يرفع/مصعد
tip	نصيحة	tap	صنبور

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة في الهجاء ولكن مختلفة في المعنى.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. On the summer holiday, we spend much time ..... movies and programmes.
   - a) watch
   - b) watches
   - c) watching
   - d) watched
2. My brother's office is on the 7th floor. He usually takes the ..... .
   - a) left
   - b) right
   - c) leave
   - d) lift
3. My little sister was very surprised when she saw the animals at the zoo. "Surprised" is similar in meaning to ..... .
   - a) amazed
   - b) lucky
   - c) unsurprised
   - d) correct

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question: - How do you help around your house?

Lesson 1

Listen to four teenagers doing the jobs on page 44. What do they do to help in the house? Listen and match the names with the jobs. *SB page 45*



Hala I'm Hala. I have to make my bed(1) every day and tidy up(2) my bedroom once a week. My mother isn't happy about how messy(3) I am, but I always tidy up once a week on Saturday morning. It takes a long time. I have to put away(4) all my clothes(5).



Munir My name's Munir. During the week, my sister and I take turns to wash up(6) after meals. I wash up after dinner on Mondays and Wednesdays and she washes up after dinner on Tuesdays and Thursdays. Sometimes, I help my grandmother to do the cooking. I love making koushari.



Adam I'm Adam. I help with different things at home but my most difficult job is taking out(7) our rubbish. I don't have to do this every day; only when the bins are full. I usually take out the bins in the evening on Wednesdays and Sundays. Our apartment(8) is on the third floor, so I have to go down to the street in the lift(9). The bins are heavy when they are full!



Nader I sometimes have to look after my brother after school, but I like doing this. We play games and I give him a snack to eat. He doesn't have to do any homework yet, but he has to get his bag ready for school and I make sure he has the right books.

(1) يرتب السرير
(2) ينظم
(3) غير مرتب
(4) يضع الشيء في مكانه
(5) ملابس
(6) يغسل الأطباق
(7) يخرج
(8) شقة
(9) مصعد

Post-listening question:

- Which job do you think is the easiest? Why?

Lesson 1

Pre-reading question:

- What do you have to do every day?

Complete the text with the correct form of have to: *WB page 102*

We're going on a boat today. It's going to be hot, so you **have to** wear sunglasses and a hat. Boats are fun but they can be dangerous. Dina uses a wheelchair[1], so she **has to** go on the boat first. You all have to be careful when you get on the boat. You also **have to** sit down when the boat is moving, but you **don't have to** sit when the boat stops. You can stand up then. Finally, if you see a dolphin[2], you **have to** tell us! That is why we are going!



(1) كرسي متحرك

(2) دولفين

Lesson 2

Listen to two people talking about the photos. Do they have the same ideas as you? *SB page 46*



Adel The girl looks sad to be alone. I think she's new in the school and doesn't have any friends yet. The other students shouldn't forget how it feels when you start school. They should try to make friends with her.

Samir A man forgot his bag. Someone should run after him and give the bag back to him. Or they should look inside the bag to find his name and address.

Adel The woman looks really tired! I think someone in her family should make her a cup of tea and she should have a rest. They should take the children outside and play with them.

Samir She shouldn't carry all those things. Someone should carry some of the things for her.

Post-listening question:

- Why do you think the girl looks sad?

Pre-reading question:

- Why should we all be kind?

Lesson 2

Read the article. What happens on Random Acts of Kindness Day? *SB page 47*

Random acts of kindness



In 1982, some friends were in a restaurant in California, USA. They wanted to make the world better. One of the friends, Anne Herbert, wrote down her idea: *Practise random acts of kindness*[1].

A random act of kindness is a kind thing that you do for someone, for no reason[2]. You can do random acts of kindness for the people you know: for example, buy flowers for your mother. You can also be kind to strangers[3]: for example, give your seat to someone on a bus.

(1) أعمال لطف عشوائية

(2) سبب

(3) الغرباء

(4) يوم اللطف العالمي

(5) ابتسامة

(6) رائع

Now, February 17th is Random Acts of Kindness Day[4]. All over the world, people do kind things for the day: not because they have to, but because they want to see a smile[5] on a person's face. Isn't that a fantastic[6] idea?

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

reason /'ri:zən/ because /bɪkɒz/

Post-reading question:

- Random Acts of Kindness Day has a long history. Explain.

Project

1. Try to do random acts of kindness for three days, at home and at school.
2. Take notes about what you do and how people feel. You will need these notes later in the unit.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Giving your seat to someone in the bus is a/an ..... act of kindness. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) impolite b) bad c) random d) ungrateful
2. Something ..... means extremely good or excellent. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) hard b) difficult c) boring d) fantastic
3. She helped to look ..... poor children in Egypt from 1920 to 1969. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) after b) from c) for d) in
4. Kareem's cousin is ..... and he never puts his books away. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) messy b) cruel c) serious d) tidy
5. Ezz is a happy person and always has a ..... on his face. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) tablet b) smile c) knife d) pencil case
6. Someone who is kind shows ..... . الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) kindness b) fear c) pride d) princess
7. My mother always asks me to ..... my bed before I go to school.
   a) take b) look c) put d) make
8. Mother does the cooking and I ..... up after having lunch. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
   a) wash b) give c) look d) watch
9. I always help ..... different things at home.
   a) for b) of c) with d) at
10. Adam ..... the rubbish when the bins are full. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
    a) puts away b) looks after c) takes out d) washes up
11. This building is very tall, but you can go to the top in the ..... . الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
    a) train b) lift c) left d) attic
12. My father goes to work by bus, so he ..... on the bus at seven o'clock.
    a) takes b) gets c) makes d) does
13. Mr Said gives us valuable ..... about how to answer the questions in the exam.
    a) lifts b) flats c) tips d) taps

Time to Practise



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In my opinion, ... random acts of kindness is fantastic. نموذج ٢٠٢٣
   a) taking b) making c) doing d) having
2. Does Hala ..... up her bedroom once a week? السويس ٢٠٢٣
   a) make b) tidy c) take d) wake
3. Did you read the ..... about the new job in the magazine?
   a) rubbish b) advertisement c) address d) test
4. A/An ..... is a boy or girl aged 13 - 19. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) teenager b) elderly c) baby d) child
5. Ali has to ..... his toys away when he's finished playing with them. الجيزة ٢٠٢٢
   a) look b) shut c) cut d) put
6. My mother isn't happy ..... how messy I am.
   a) at b) to c) about d) for
7. We ..... turns to answer the questions in the class.
   a) take b) make c) do d) get
8. My sister helps my mother to ..... the cooking.
   a) make b) do c) take d) get
9. We live in a big ..... on the fifth floor.
   a) advertisement b) boat c) house d) apartment
10. Nader helps his brother ..... his school bag ready. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
    a) leave b) get c) stay d) spend
11. A ..... is the shape of your mouth that shows you are happy.
    a) bin b) flat c) smile d) stranger
12. I asked my friend about his ..... to visit him tomorrow.
    a) sunglasses b) address c) tips d) floor
13. They should try to ..... friends with her. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
    a) take b) talk c) make d) give



لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

1 HAS TO/ HAVE TO يضطر أن

1. We use (has to/ have to) when it's necessary to do something: you have no choice.

• نستخدم (has to/ have to) (يضطر أن) عندما يكون من الضروري فعل أمر ما: ليس لديك اختيار.

Affirmative الإثبات

اسم مفرد		اسم جمع
He She It		I You We They
⟩ has to + inf.		⟩ have to + inf.
My father has to **get up** at six o'clock every day to go to work.		I have to **wear** the school uniform.

2. We use (doesn't/don't have to) to talk about things that are not necessary.

• نستخدم (doesn't/don't have to) عندما يكون فعل شيء غير ضروري.

Negative النفي

اسم مفرد		اسم جمع
He She It		I You We They
⟩ doesn't have to + inf.		⟩ don't have to + inf.
My mother doesn't have to **go** to work today because it's a holiday.		We don't have to **get up** early. It's Friday.

Question السؤال

① Yes/No questions

Do/Does + subj. + have to + **inf.?**

- Do you have to **go** to school?
  - Yes, I do./ No, I don't.
- Does Ola have to **go** to work?
  - Yes, she does./ No, she doesn't.

② Wh- questions:

Question word (أداة الاستفهام) + do/does + subj. + have to + **inf.?**

- What do you have to **do** after school?
  - I have to **do** my homework.

تمكنك هذه الخرتية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال
تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 You ..... (have to) drive so fast. We have a lot of time.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (don't have to) لأنه غير ضرورى أن يقود بسرعة لوجود وقت كاف لديهم.

2 He ..... (have to) have a ticket or he can't travel.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (has to) لأنه ضرورى أن يملك تذكرة للسفر. والفاعل هنا He.

2 Giving advice using (SHOULD & SHOULDN'T) إعطاء النصح

- We use should/shouldn't to say that something is or is not a good idea.
- عند إعطاء النصح نستخدم should (ينبغى أن) أو shouldn't (لا ينبغى أن) ثم الفعل فى المصدر.

Subject + should + inf.	Subject + shouldn't + inf.
• You should **go** now. The bus leaves in ten minutes.	• You shouldn't **watch** too much television.
• Children should **sleep** early.	• She shouldn't **carry** all those things.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 You are ill. You ..... (should) go to school today.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (shouldn't) لأنها نصيحة بعدم بفعل شىء.

2 We ..... (shouldn't) use water carefully.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (should) لأنها نصيحة بفعل شىء.

3 This film is fantastic, you should ..... (watching) it.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (watch) لأن (should) يأتى بعدها الفعل فى المصدر.



PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You ..... eat a lot of sweets. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

a) should b) shouldn't c) has to d) doesn't have to

2. You ..... pass your exams to go to university. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

a) shouldn't b) should

c) have to d) don't have to

3. Does he ..... arrive early? سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

a) has to b) had to c) have to d) must

4. My father ..... to wake up early to go to work. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a) have b) should c) must d) has

5. It's cold. You should ..... your jacket.

a) wear b) wearing c) wore d) to wear

6. He isn't late, he doesn't ..... take a taxi. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣

a) has to b) have to c) has d) had

7. Bido ..... to go to school on Friday as it's a holiday. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

a) don't have b) doesn't have c) have d) has

8. We have ..... our students to go to school libraries.

a) to encourage b) to encouraging c) encourage d) encouraging

9. What ..... people do before going to the market?

a) must to b) are c) have d) should

10. What do teachers and parents ..... to teach children?

a) can b) must c) have d) should

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You ..... (should) spend too much time on social media. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
2. You ..... (has to) show your passport when you leave the country. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
3. Heba ..... (not/have to) hurry as it's still early. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
4. You ..... (shouldn't) study for the exam tomorrow. السويس ٢٠٢٣
5. Does your mother ..... (has) to cook today?
6. Children shouldn't ..... (playing) in the street.

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

A discussion about jobs in the house

مناقشة عن المهام المنزلية

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد

online

- What sort of jobs do you have to do at home?
ما نوع المهام التى تضطر أن تؤديها بالمنزل؟

I have to tidy up my bedroom. أضطر أن أرتب غرفة نومى.

- Does your best friend have to walk to school?
هل يضطر صديقك المفضل للمشى إلى المدرسة؟

Yes, he does. نعم.

- How much homework do you have to do this evening?
كم كمية الواجب المنزلى التى ينبغى عليك فعلها الليلة؟

I have to do the English homework.
أضطر إلى عمل واجب اللغة الإنجليزية.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

▶ **Nasser and Omar are talking at school.** الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

Nasser : Do you have to study this evening, Omar?

Omar : (1)..... .

Nasser : (2).....?

Omar : Because I have a geography test tomorrow.

Nasser : What about your brother?

Omar : (3)..... .

Nasser : Why does he have to tidy up his room?

Omar : (4)..... .

Nasser : (5).....?

Omar : I am going to my uncle's farm with my family.

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about random acts of kindness

كيفية الكتابة عن أفعال اللطف العشوائية/التلقائية

- It's important for us all to do random acts of kindness.
- When you do something kind to someone, they will take that act of kindness and move it to other people.
- We should help strangers.
- We should do random acts of kindness every day.
- Random acts of kindness can make the world better.

Writing tips

A paragraph has:
- a topic sentence.
- supporting sentences.
- a concluding sentence.

يجب أن تحتوى الفقرة على:
- جملة رئيسية.
- جمل مساعدة وموضحة للموضوع.
- جملة تلخيصية (تلخص الفكرة الرئيسية للفقرة).

Example

Random acts of kindness

It's important to do random acts of kindness. The smallest things can make others smile. I think that if you do something kind to someone, they will take that act of kindness and move it to people they come across during their day. The smallest things always make the biggest differences. For example, holding the door for someone who has hands full or smiling at strangers as they pass by, these little things let people know that someone cares about them. A random act of kindness can be to someone you know or someone who is a complete stranger, but it has to be random. Someday you will receive a random act of kindness in return.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Kindness"

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 5 Lessons (1 & 2)

19.5

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. A random act of kindness is a ..... thing that you do for someone.
   a) kind b) bad c) clever d) long
2. Doing random acts of kindness is a ..... idea.
   a) terrible b) fantastic c) horrible d) short
3. A random act of kindness is on 17th ..... .
   a) March b) July c) October d) February
4. You can be kind to ..... .
   a) parents b) friends c) strangers d) all people

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Zeyad is asking Eyad about what jobs he has to do at home.

Zeyad : What sort of jobs do you have to do at home?
Eyad : (1)..... .
Zeyad : (2).....?
Eyad : Yes, I do. I have to study late at night.
Zeyad : How long do you have to study?
Eyad : (3)..... .
Zeyad : Does your best friend have to study with you?
Eyad : (4)..... . He prefers to study alone.
Zeyad : (5).....?
Eyad : I have to do the English homework.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She can't walk, so she uses a/an ..... . الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) umbrella b) carpet c) wheelchair d) chair
2. To be good at English, you need to ..... it every day.
   a) make b) start c) practise d) smile
3. People ran ..... the man who took my bag.
   a) after b) away c) before d) under
4. My brother always writes ..... his ideas because he usually forgets.
   a) around b) away c) down d) up
5. Random acts of ..... make the poor feel happy. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) sadness b) sad c) angry d) kindness

6. You should ..... your seat to old people on a bus.
a) make b) help c) take d) give
7. We're going ..... a boat today.
a) on b) at c) in d) of
8. When you get on the bus, you ..... buy a ticket. التلفيصة ٢٠٢٣
a) don't have to b) has to c) have to d) doesn't have to
9. You should ..... running short distances. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
a) start b) starts c) started d) starting
10. At the weekends, I ..... get up early; I can stay in bed until 9 o'clock. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
a) have to b) didn't have to c) had to d) don't have to

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You ..... (not/have) to take out the rubbish, I did it this morning. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
2. You shouldn't ..... (running) if your legs hurt.
3. Do you ..... (must) to wear the uniform on the school trip?
4. You ..... (not/have) shout. I can hear you.

5 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Random acts of kindness" الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

(1) I borrowed my friend's book and I have to give it ..... him.
a) back b) back to c) up d) away
(2) Some friends in California wanted to ..... the world better.
a) protect b) improve c) make d) get
(3) We should ..... random acts of kindness.
a) practise b) make c) get d) go

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 3 & 4



SB pages 48 - 50 | WB pages 104 & 105

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

act (ed) (v)	يمثل	donate (d) (v)	يتبرع
beggar (n)	متسول/شحاذ	extracts (n)	مقتطفات
behave (d) (v)	يتصرف	feed (v) (fed/fed)	يطعم
boarding school (n)	مدرسة داخلية	pick (ed) up (v)	يلتقط
community (n)	مجتمع/جماعة/جالية	servant (n)	خادم
disabled (adj)	معاق	surprised (adj)	مندهش

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

babysitting (n)	مجالسة الأطفال	reach (ed) (v)	يصل إلى
baker's (n)	مخبز	recycle (d) (v)	يعيد تدوير/تصنيع
chemist (n)	صيدلى	ring (n)	خاتم
headteacher (n)	مدير المدرسة	secondary (adj)	ثانوى
medicine (n)	دواء	sports person (n)	شخص رياضى
neighbour (n)	جار	trainers (n)	حذاء رياضى

Check Point

Choose and complete: pick - recycle - disabled - ring

1. His uncle became ..... after the accident; he lost his arm.
2. The Japanese ..... more than half of their waste paper.
3. Can you ..... up the pen for me?

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

behave > like a princess	تتصرف كأميرة	pass > exams	ينجح فى الامتحانات
give > directions	يعطى الاتجاهات	get/be > lost	يضل الطريق
do > charity work	يؤدى عملًا خيريًا	pick up > rubbish	يلتقط القمامة

Prepositions

حروف الجر

a home for	دار/موطن لـ	polite to	مؤدب مع
cruel to	قاسٍ على	throw away	يلقى بعيدا
difficult for	صعب لـ	work as	يعمل كـ
for the first time	للمرة الأولى	work for	يعمل لدى

Check Point

Choose and complete: pass - do - got - for

1. We ..... lost and forgot our way.
2. My grandfather was very kind. He used to ..... charity work.
3. My father always encourages me to ..... my exams.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
cruel	قاسٍ	kind	طيب/عطوف
delicious	لذيذ	horrible	فظيع/كريه
rich	غنى	poor	فقير
win	يفوز/يكسب	lose	يخسر/يفقد

Vocabulary Builder

حزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

(1) مفر (2) محدد (3) منطقة (4) مضد (5) امة

Definitions التعريفات

beggar	متسول/شحاذ	a poor(1) person who asks others for money, etc.
behave	يتصرف	do something in a certain(2) way
boarding school	مدرسة داخلية	a school where students live all the time
community	مجتمع/جماعة/جالية	a small area(3) and the people who live in it
cruel	قاسٍ	not kind
disabled	معاق	when you cannot use part of the body in the way most people can
donate	يتبرع	give something useful(4) to a person or charity that needs help
feed	يطعم	give food to a person or animal
pick up	يلتقط	lift someone or something
servant	خادم	a person who works in a house, cooking, cleaning, etc.
princess	أميرة	the daughter(5) of a king or queen

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
rich	غنى	wealthy	ثرى
delicious	لذيذ	tasty	لذيذ

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
direct (v)	يوجه	-ion		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم		direction (n)	اتجاه

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My English teacher is very cruel. The antonym of "cruel" is "……".
   a) kind **b)** unkind **c)** tasty **d)** nasty
2. "Direct" is a verb, but the noun is formed by adding the suffix "……".
   a) -er **b)** -ly **c)** -ion **d)** -ness

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-listening question:

- Mention one person who helped you. How did he/she help you?

Listen to Amal, check your answers to Exercise 1 and complete the sentences.

SB page 48







Amal Our neighbour, Mr Osman, is the person who helped me pass my maths exams. He's 70 and doesn't work now, but he was a maths teacher before. The books which he used to help me were his old schoolbooks from when he was teaching at secondary school.

My aunt Dalia is a person who's always very kind to me. She bought me the trainers that I wore when I played in the school volleyball team for the first time. We won the match!

My little cousin Rana helped me last week when I lost my watch. I was sad because it was the watch that my father gave me for my birthday. The place where I lost it was the garden. I took it off when I was playing and it fell. Rana found it under a plant. Because her hand is so small, she could put it under the plant and reach the watch.

Post-listening question:

- Why do you think Rana found the watch?

Pre-reading question: - Have you ever done voluntary work?

Read the extracts from the blogs of three teenagers and complete the sentences.

SB page 49



I work as a volunteer[1] for a charity[2] which helps to clean our local[3] beach. At the weekend, we go to the beach and pick up the rubbish[4] that people left behind. We always pick up lots of plastic bottles!

Samir



It is good to help people in the community[5]. I visit a home for old people who are disabled[6], so it's difficult for their families to look after them. I go there after school on Thursdays. The volunteers have a special person who we visit and talk to. The woman who I visit is called Mrs Nahla. She worked as a nurse when she was young and she is a fantastic[7] person. I love talking to her.

Fatma



I work for a charity which looks after animals that are old or sick and cannot work any more. People donate[8] money to the charity to buy food for the animals such as horses and camels. We help to feed[9] the animals and look after them. This camel is very old and she is my favourite animal.

Ahmed

(1) منحوم
(2) جمعية خيرية
(3) محلك
(4) قمامة
(5) مجتمع
(6) معاق
(7) رائع
(8) يتبرع
(9) يطعم

Note: تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

volunteer /vɒlənˈtɪə/
community /kəmjuːnɪti/

Post-reading question:

- It is good to help people in the community. Explain.

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 4

- What's your favourite story?

Read part of *A Little Princess* and check your answers to Exercise 1.

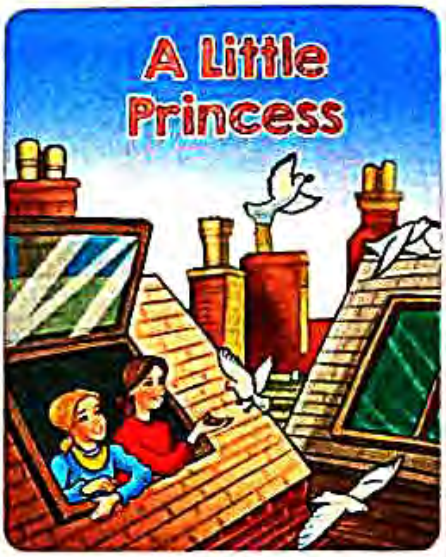
SB page 50

A Little Princess

by Frances Hodgson Burnett

Everyone at Sara Crewe's boarding school(1) calls her a little princess because her father is very rich. After Sara's father dies, the headteacher(2), Miss Minchin starts being cruel(3) to Sara because she has no money. She makes Sara work as a servant(4). Sara has to work very hard and does not get much food. However, Sara decides to behave(5) like a real princess(6), so she is always kind and polite(7) to everyone.

One day, Sara finds a coin in the street. She can't find the owner. She goes to the baker's to buy some cakes. When she comes out, she sees a beggar(8) and gives the girl most of her cakes. Sara can see that this girl is cold and hungry. Sara thinks that a real princess should always be kind and generous(9) like this. When the baker sees this, she is surprised. "This girl is very strange. She is very poor, but she is kind to beggars," she thinks.



(1) مدرسة داخلية

(2) مديرة المدرسة

(3) قاسٍ

(4) خادمة

(5) تتصرف

(6) أميرة

(7) مهذب

(8) متسول/شحاذ

(9) كريم

Note: تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

cruel /ˈkruːəl/
generous /ˈdʒenərəs/

Post-reading question:

- Summarise the short story of little princess in four points.

Pre-reading question:

- What does a baker do?

Lesson 4

Read what the baker said about Sara Crewe and answer the questions.

WB page 105

I think that the girl who came into my baker's shop today was a servant because she didn't have very new clothes. The money that she had was enough to buy a few cakes. I often see a beggar in the street where I work. She usually asks for money, but when the young girl left my shop, she gave her most of her cakes! I was very surprised[1]. I feel that this servant girl behaved like a princess[2]!



(1) مندهش

(2) اميرة

Post-reading question:

- What do you think of this little girl?

Project

People who are volunteers for a charity help their communities. What are some other ways we can help in the community?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ..... is a poor person who asks others for money. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) mechanic b) beggar c) doctor d) worker
2. A kind person always ..... well. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) behaves b) plays c) sleeps d) travels
3. This boy is at a ..... school. He goes home once a week. قنا ٢٠٢٣
   a) border b) boarding c) skating d) ordering
4. Kind people always ..... to charities to help the poor. الصوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) donate b) feed c) begin d) share
5. I like to ..... the chickens. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) feel b) drink c) feed d) eat
6. To ..... up means to lift someone or something.
   a) look b) give c) pick d) take
7. The teacher helped me ..... my maths exams. السويس ٢٠٢٣
   a) cross b) guess c) succeed d) pass
8. I like to wear my new ..... when I play volleyball.
   a) sofas b) trainers c) charities d) volunteers
9. The desert was the place where I ..... lost last month.
   a) got b) made c) took d) ran
10. My brother is a ..... person. He likes to play football.
    a) player b) goal c) sports d) team
11. People mustn't take ..... without asking the doctor.
    a) juice b) fruit c) food d) medicine
12. We always give money to a charity that helps poor and ..... people.
    a) rich b) disabled c) brave d) valuable
13. In his article, he wrote some ..... from famous books.
    a) extracts b) sports c) trainers d) medicines

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ..... is a small area and the people who live in it. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) hospital b) school
   c) community d) bank
2. A ..... is a person who works in someone's home. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) beggar b) servant c) volunteer d) prince
3. Our next door ..... is very kind. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) neighbour b) cafe c) ring d) community
4. No country ..... as much rubbish than Germany. الصومعة ٢٠٢٣
   a) cycles b) recycles c) rewrites d) rearranges
5. The ..... is the daughter of a king or a queen. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) princess b) prince c) waiter d) waitress
6. Students go to university after they finish ..... school.
   a) nursery b) primary c) preparatory d) secondary
7. Mr Mohammed is the teacher who's always very kind ..... me.
   a) on b) of c) to d) for
8. My grandmother was ..... when we visited her because it wasn't a holiday.
   a) surprised b) poor c) rich d) brave
9. ..... is good for the environment.
   a) Throwing b) Damaging c) Polluting d) Recycling
10. I can't forget going to the cinema ..... the first time.
    a) at b) for c) of d) on
11. Hamdi went to the ..... where he could get bread.
    a) doctor's b) dentist's c) baker's d) chemist's
12. A ..... helps people or animals that need help. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
    a) sports coach b) charity worker c) scientist d) police officer
13. My school took us to a home ..... old people who are disabled.
    a) for b) of c) off d) at

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

RELATIVE CLAUSES ضمائر الوصل

- We use defining relative clauses/pronouns to help identify a person, thing or place.
- نستخدم ضمائر الوصل لتساعدنا على التعرف على شخص، شيء أو مكان.

We use the relative pronoun (who/that) for people.

who = that
الذى/التى
للعاقل

- نستخدم (who/that) بمعنى (الذى/التى) مع العاقل ويأتى قبلها إنسان:
- Mr Zaki is the **teacher** (who/that) helped me the most when I started at this school.

We use the relative pronoun (which/that) for things and animals.

which = that
الذى/التى
لغير العاقل

- نستخدم (which/that) بمعنى (الذى/التى) مع غير العاقل (أشياء أو حيوانات) ويأتى قبلها اسم غير عاقل:
- The **present** (which/that) I bought for my grandmother is in my bag.

We use the relative pronoun (where) for places.

where
حيث
للمكان

- نستخدم (where) بمعنى (حيث) مع الأماكن بشرطين (أن تعبر عن مكان أو ما بداخله ولا يوجد حرف جر لهذا المكان):
- Alexandria is the **city** where both my sisters are studying.

لاحظ

١- يمكننا استخدام ضمير الوصل (that) بدلًا من (who/which) مع العاقل وغير العاقل.

- This is the man (who/that) lives next door to Samy.
- This is the cat (which/that) ate the fish.

٢- نستخدم (which) مع المكان إذا كنا نريد وصفه أو إعطاء معلومة عنه مثل:

- We bought a flat (which) is near the school.

٣- يمكن استخدام (which) بدلًا من (where) فى حالة وجود حرف جر يعود على المكان.

- Alexandria is the city (which) both my sisters are studying in.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

(1) The mountain ..... (where) we climbed yesterday is very high.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (which) لأننا نتحدث عن الجبل كشيء غير عاقل وليس كمكان.

(2) The man ..... (which) lives next to me is nearly eighty.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (who) لأن الرجل اسم عاقل.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The new book ..... I bought is very interesting. الصنومية ٢٠٢٣
   a) which b) where c) who d) when
2. This is the place ..... I met Hany yesterday. قنا ٢٠٢٣
   a) which b) where c) that d) who
3. A waiter is a man ..... serves drinks and food in a restaurant.
   a) who b) who's c) whose d) which
4. This is the factory ..... makes clothes for children. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) which b) where c) who d) when
5. Hamdi went to the baker's ..... he could get bread. الصنومية ٢٠٢٢
   a) who b) where c) which d) when
6. What is the name of the charity ..... you would like to donate money to? القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) who b) which c) where d) what
7. That is the runner ..... won the race. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) which b) who c) whose d) where
8. Tanta is the city ..... I was born in. الصنومية ٢٠٢٣
   a) where b) who c) which d) when
9. This is the statue ..... I bought yesterday. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) who b) where c) which d) when
10. This is the doctor ..... examined my brother. الصنوم ٢٠٢٣
    a) where b) who c) which d) when

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This is the school ..... (which) we learn. بني سويف ٢٠٢٣
2. Science is the subject ..... (who) Ali likes most. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
3. I gave the shoes ..... (what) are too small for me to my cousin. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
4. This is the boy ..... (which) took my pen yesterday. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
5. Airports are places ..... (who) we can see planes. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
6. A good friend is someone ..... (which) helps others. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



Write it right

How to write about your favourite story

كيفية الكتابة عن قصتك المفضلة

- I like reading (نوع) stories.
- My favourite story is (اسم القصة).
- It's by (اسم الكاتب).
- It's about (فكرة القصة).
- It teaches us to (الدروس المستفادة).
- It's fantastic.

Writing tips

Use joining words to connect ideas:
and/ but/ because/ so/ however
استخدم كلمات الوصل للربط بين الأفكار.

Example

To : basmala@student.com
From : rahma@student.com
Subject : A story I read

Dear Basmala,

Greetings! How are you and your family? I hope you all are in good health. I'm very happy to write this email to you. I like reading very much. I read a story by Frances Hodgson Burnett. It's called *A Little Princess*. It's about a small girl whose father died and she became poor. She was in a boarding school. The headteacher made her a servant, but she behaved well like a princess. I recommend this story to you. It's really fantastic. I look forward to hearing from you.

Write soon.

Yours,
Rahma

Check Point

Write an email to your friend Nesma to tell her about your favourite story. Your name is Donia and your email address is donia@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is nesma@hotmail.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 5 Lessons (3 & 4)

175

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

New schools are interested in teaching students to help the environment. They give students some projects to learn how to help their community. Also, teachers have to teach students to be useful and help their local communities. Last weekend, ten students from Class 7 helped clean up the part of the riverbank near the city centre. The students picked up 15 bags of rubbish. Their teacher, Mr Hassan, said the students were sad to find so much rubbish. "There were lots of plastic bags and bottles," he said. One of the students said, "It was great to clean the riverbank, but we need to teach people to be more careful with their rubbish. Rubbish in the river damages the wildlife."

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the text? .....
2. What does rubbish do to wildlife? .....
3. What does the underlined pronoun "their" refer to? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. ..... students cleaned up a part of the riverbank.
   a) Ten b) Eleven c) Twelve d) Thirteen
5. The students were not _____ to find so much rubbish.
   a) sad b) happy c) worried d) frightened
6. The underlined word "picked up" means "_____".
   a) recycled b) saved c) damaged d) collected

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My cousin works as a volunteer _____ a charity.
   a) of b) to c) for d) with
2. We shouldn't be ..... to animals.
   a) kind b) polite c) tidy d) cruel
3. They give students some projects to learn how to help their ..... .
   a) electricity b) community c) advertisement d) apartment
4. Do you know the name of this house .....?
   a) baker b) volunteer c) owner d) beggar
5. Everyone calls Basmala a little ..... because her father is very rich.
   a) flat b) beggar c) princess d) patient

6. The ..... of the school has a meeting with all the teachers.
a) dentist b) officer c) worker d) headteacher
7. Kady is always kind and polite ..... everyone.
a) to b) with c) for d) on
8. That is the house ..... my grandmother was born. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
a) which b) where c) when d) who
9. This is the school ..... won the final. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
a) what b) who c) which d) where
10. Mr Othman is the person ..... helped me pass my maths exam. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
a) who b) which c) where d) what

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The books ..... (whose) he used to help me were his old school books. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
2. Cairo is the city ..... (who) is very crowded.
3. The market is a place ..... (which) I often get lost. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
4. This is my school ..... (who) is far from my house. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"How could you help people in your community?" القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1. Because she is so small, she can't ..... the high book.
a) reach b) get c) arrive d) go
2. My mother always puts away the books I leave ..... .
a) front b) behind c) under d) back
3. This is the house ..... we live in.
a) who b) that c) where d) which

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 51 & 52 | WB pages 106 & 107

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

bridge (n)	كوبرى/جسر	give away (v)	يتبرع
businesswoman (n)	سيدة أعمال	laboratory (n)	معمل
canteen (n)	مقصف/كانتين	messy (adj)	فوضوى
donation (n)	تبرع	snow (ed) (v)	تمطر ثلجًا
geography (n)	جغرافيا	sunny (adj)	مشمس

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

firefighter (n)	رجل الإطفاء	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
fisherman (n)	صياد سمك	soft (adj)	ناعم/طرى/لين
newspaper (n)	جريدة	title (n)	عنوان (موضوع)
share (v)	يشارك/يتقاسم	wide (adj)	واسع

Check Point

Choose and complete: canteen - sunny - snowing

1. We need an umbrella. It's ..... today.
2. We can buy sweets from the school ..... .

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do	> jobs	يؤدى وظائف	fight	> fire	يحارب (يخمد) النار
give	> a big smile	يعطى ابتسامة كبيرة	make	> a decision	يتخذ قرارًا
	an opinion	يعطى رأيًا		suggestions	يقدم اقتراحات

Prepositions — حروف الجر

think about/of	يعتقد/يفكر فى	on a project	فى مشروع
decided to	يقرر أن	on the street corner	على ناصية الشارع
in my opinion	فى رأيى	on the way home from	فى الطريق إلى البيت من

Check Point

Choose and complete: in - of - make

1 The teacher asked us to ..... suggestions.

2 What do you think ..... this book?

بهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word — الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) — عكسها
agree — يوافق	disagree — لا يوافق
helpful — معاون/مساعد/مفيد	unhelpful — غير مفيد

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

(1) قمامة (2) قمة (3) بدون

Definitions — التعريفات

bins — سلات القمامة	you put rubbish[1] in these
lift — مِصْعد	this takes you to the top[2] of a building, without[3] using the stairs
messy — فوضوى	not tidy

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word — الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) — مرادفها
agree — يوافق	accept — يقبل
helpful — معاون/مساعد/مفيد	useful — مفيد

Suffix اللاحقة

Word — الكلمة	Suffix — اللاحقة	Function — الوظيفة	The new word — الكلمة الجديدة
donate (v) — يتبرع	-ion	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	donation (n) — تبرع
help (v) — يساعد	-ful	تحويل الفعل إلى صفة	helpful (adj) — معاون/مساعد/مفيد

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 To get the opposite of "agree", we add the prefix "....."

a) un- b) dis- c) in- d) im-

2 Thank you for your advice. It's very helpful. The synonym of "helpful" is "....."

a) pleased b) glad c) useful d) useless

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

Pre-listening question: - What do you think of charities?

Listen to Leila and Amal talking about the article and answer the questions.

SB page 51



Amal I think that the charities should share[1] the money between them and help lots of different people.

Leila I'm not sure, Amal ... I think it would be better if one charity gets all the money and can do something big and important.

Amal OK, but which charity then?

Leila What about a charity that helps children ... or old people?

Amal I agree that it's very important to help children, but I also think it's important to look after old people. That's why I suggest[2] that they share the money.

Leila I see what you mean. OK, they should share the money between two or three important charities.

(1) يشارك

(2) يقترح

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

suggest /səˈdʒest/

Post-listening question: - Who do you agree with, Leila or Amal? Why?

Read and complete the newspaper article about another kind person.

SB page 51

Large charity donation

Fareeda Rashwan, age 32, has donated[1] two million pounds to charities in the city.

The businesswoman[2] says that she wants the charities to use the money to help people who need it. The charities can decide to share the money between them or give all the money to one charity. The important thing is to help as many people as possible[3].

(1) يتبرع (2) سيدة اعمال (3) بقدر الإمكان



Pre-listening question: - How can famous people help their community?

Listen and check your answers to Exercise 3, then role-play the dialogue.

WB page 106



Malak I feel that famous people should work for a charity at the weekend.

Rawia I'm not sure. Some of them work very hard. I think it would be better if they gave some money to a charity. They don't need to work for a charity.

Malak I agree that it's important for them to donate money, but I also think it's important to work for the charity, too.

Rawia OK, but when? They don't have much time. Some of them work every day.

Malak I see what you mean. Perhaps they can help for a day or two in their holidays.

Rawia Good idea.

Lesson 6

Read Hassan's blog and answer the questions.

SB page 52

Hassan's Blog

Random Acts of Kindness Project

Our class decided to try to do one act of kindness every day for three days. This is what I did.

(1) أولاً (2) بعد ذلك (3) مقصف المدرسة (الكانتين) (4) في النهاية



First[1], on Monday, I bought my grandmother some of her favourite cakes at the baker's on the way home from school. She was surprised, but very happy! After that[2], on Tuesday, I let some younger students go into the canteen[3] in front of me. Finally[4], on Wednesday, I took a sandwich and a cold drink to the old man who often sits on our street corner. He gave me a big smile. In my opinion, doing random acts of kindness is fantastic. I don't want to stop!

Post-reading question: - Do you think we should do acts of kindness?

Pre-reading question: - What jobs did you do at home today?

Put Fady's blog into the correct order. *WB page 107*

My helpful day

On Saturday, I decided that I wanted to help everyone in my family.



b. First, I made my mother breakfast.
She was surprised because she usually makes it!

e. Secondly, I helped my sister with her homework.
She always does it after breakfast!

a. After that, I took my grandfather a cup of tea in bed. He likes to get up late on a Saturday.

c. Then I played football in the park with my little brother. He loves football.

d. Finally, I helped my dad with the jobs that he likes to do in the house. I feel that I made all my family happy!

Post-reading question:

- Do you think Samy is a helpful boy? Why/Why not?

Lesson 7

Complete the text with the words in the box. *SB page 53*

I share a bedroom with my sister and we are sometimes quite messy(1), so we usually tidy up(2) every evening before we go to bed. We put away(3) all our clothes and books. Twice a week, my brother and I take out(4) the rubbish. We do it together because the bins are quite heavy. My parents donate(5) money to a charity which helps a local school for disabled(6) people.



We think it is important to help people in the community(7).

(1) موضوع (2) يرتب (3) يضع الأشياء فى مكانها (4) يخرج (5) يتبرع (6) معاق (7) مجتمع

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We took the ..... down to the ground floor.

a) left b) slide c) lift d) distance

2. Thank you for your advice. It's very ..... .

a) useless b) polite c) tidy d) helpful

3. I'm happy that you ..... to come with me.

a) disagreed b) agreed c) saved d) picked

4. She is a great ..... . She has three companies.

a) doctor b) nurse

c) headteacher d) businesswoman

5. Our class ..... to try to do one act of kindness every day for three days.

a) donated b) collected c) decided d) gave

6. I let my friends go into the ..... in front of me when we buy our sandwiches.

a) canteen b) laboratory c) blog d) lift

7. When I gave him the sandwich, he ..... me a big smile.

a) had b) did c) made d) gave

8. We always use the ..... to cross over the river.

a) canteen b) bridge c) laboratory d) lift

9. He likes ..... . He knows a lot about the weather in many countries.

a) music b) science c) geography d) maths

10. We usually go to the ..... in the science class.

a) laboratory b) lift c) canteen d) playground

11. It ..... yesterday. It was too cold.

a) watered b) snowed c) shared d) dried

12. A ..... is a person who catches fish.

a) worker b) nurse c) firefighter d) fisherman

13. We should ..... fires because they are very dangerous.

a) protect b) carry c) fight d) agree

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

Speaking

Making suggestions — تقديم اقتراحات

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد

online

I feel that we should do an act of kindness every day.
أشعر بأنه يجب علينا أن نعمل عملًا لطيفًا يوميًا.

I see what you mean. — أفهم ما تعنيه.

I think it would be better if we donate money to charities.
أعتقد أنه من الأفضل أن نتبرع بالمال للجمعيات الخيرية.

- Good idea. — فكرة جيدة.

I agree that it's important to give the money to one charity.
أتفق أنه من المهم أن نعطى المال لجمعية خيرية واحدة فقط.

- I'm not sure. — لست متأكدًا من ذلك.
- Perhaps we should visit them every week.
ربما يجب زيارتهم كل أسبوع.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Rodina and Toka are talking about charities.

Rodina : What are you going to do the next mid-year holiday?
Toka : (1)..... .
Rodina : Working for a charity is a good way to help our community.
Toka : (2)..... . We can do many things to help other people.
Rodina : (3).....?
Toka : I feel that we should help disabled people.
Rodina : (4).....?
Toka : Yes, you can work for a charity with me.
Rodina : I think it would be better if we donate money to charities.
Toka : (5)..... . Donation can help poor people.

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 5 Lessons (5 & 6)

15.5

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Dina and Elham are talking about the Red Crescent charity. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

Dina : Have you heard about the Red Crescent?

Elham : (1) _____ . It is one of the most important charities in the world.

Dina : Who helps in this charity?

Elham : (2) _____ .

Dina : (3) _____ ?

Elham : Volunteers help ill and injured people when there is a natural disaster.

Dina : (4) _____ ?

Elham : Yes, many people donate money and clothes.

Dina : Thank you for this information.

Elham : (5) _____ .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hassan forgot his food, but we can ..... our food with him. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a) shake b) shade c) share d) save

2. My sister's ..... to visit the zoo is good.

a) suggest b) suggestion c) donate d) donation

3. There is a businesswoman donating two million pounds. She is very ..... .

a) sad b) unkind c) helpful d) ugly

4. We take out the rubbish together because the ..... are quite heavy.

a) bins b) lifts c) bridges d) beds

5. My father likes to read the ..... to know the news before going out.

a) newspaper b) title c) article d) book

6. We always ask our parents to ..... us their opinions about many things.

a) borrow b) give c) donate d) make

7. Most young people like to check the ..... media all the time.

a) global b) smart c) local d) social

8. Teachers ..... go to school at 7 o'clock.

a) have to b) doesn't have to c) don't have to d) has to

9. I usually tidy up the desk ..... I study.

a) where b) which c) who d) whose

10. We ..... be helpful to each other.

a) shouldn't b) should c) have d) don't have

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I don't know what I should ..... (doing) with my old clothes.
2. **A:** ..... (have/you) to wear special clothes for your sports class?
   B: Yes, we do.
3. Those are the boys ..... (when) broke the window.
4. That's the bird ..... (where) sings in the morning.

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"How to help people"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: محاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1. What is the ..... of the article you wrote?

a) title b) address c) name d) surname

2. If you don't have a place to sleep, we can ..... a room.

a) divide b) share c) sleep d) sit

3. We need your ..... to help poor people.

a) donate b) to donate c) donated d) donation

Review On Unit 5

Vocabulary

acts	أفعال/أعمال
advertisement	إعلان
beggar	متسول/شحاذ
pick (ed) up	يلتقط
behave (d)	يتصرف
boarding school	مدرسة داخلية
princess	أميرة
care (d) about	يهتم/يعتنى بـ
community	مجتمع/جماعة/جالية
random	عشوائى
disabled	معاق
donation	تبرع
fantastic	رائع
generous	كريم
give a seat to	يعطى المقعد لـ
surprised	مندهش
thief	لص/حرامى
kindness	لطف/عطف
laboratory	معمل
lift	مصعد
look (ed) after	يعتنى بـ
wash (ed) up	يغسل الأطباق
messy	فوضوى/غير مرتب

Language

1 has to/ have to: يضطر أن

Subject + has to/ have to + inf.

- Mona has to **tidy** up her room.
- We have to **do** our homework now.

Subject + don't/ doesn't + have to + inf.

- My mother doesn't have to **go** to work today because it's a holiday.
- We don't have to **get up** early. It's Friday.

Do/ Does + subject + have to + inf.?

- Do you have to **go** to school?
- Does Ola have to **go** to work?

2 should/shouldn't: يجب/لا يجب

Subject + should/shouldn't + inf.

- You should study hard.
- You shouldn't smoke.

3 Relative pronouns: ضمائر الوصل

(who/ which/ where)

- This is the **man** who helped me.
- That's the **tablet** which I bought.
- This is the **school** where I learn.

Skills

1 A discussion about jobs in the house:

مناقشة عن المهام المنزلية

- What sort of jobs do you have to do at home?

ما نوع المهام التى تضطر أن تؤديها بالمنزل؟

- I have to tidy up my bedroom.

أضطر أن أرتب غرفة النوم.

- How much homework do you have to do this evening?

كم كمية الواجب المنزلى التى ينبغى عليك فعلها الليلة؟

- I have to do the English homework.

أضطر إلى عمل واجب اللغة الإنجليزية.

2 Making suggestions:

- I feel that we should do an act of kindness every day.

- I see what you mean.

- I agree that it's important to give the money to one charity.

- I'm not sure.

Question Bank

Al-Adwaa Test On Unit 5

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. What is Fareeda's job?
   - a) A teacher.
   - b) A businessman.
   - c) A businesswoman.
   - d) A nurse.
2. How much money did she donate to the charity?
   - a) 2,000.
   - b) 20,000.
   - c) 200,000.
   - d) 2,000,000.
3. What kind of people did she want to help?
   - a) Rich people.
   - b) Poor people.
   - c) Strong people.
   - d) Old people.
4. How old is Fareeda?
   - a) Twenty-three.
   - b) Thirty-three.
   - c) Thirty-two.
   - d) Forty-three.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Boody is asking Roaa about the jobs she does at home.

Boody : Hello, Roaa. How are you?

Roaa : Hi, Boody. (1)..... .

Boody : (2).....?

Roaa : I have to make lunch.

Boody : Do you have to clean the floor?

Roaa : (3)..... . My sister has to do that.

Boody : What about the shopping?

Roaa : (4)..... .

Boody : (5).....?

Roaa : No, I have to go by bus.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: علوية ٢٠٢٣

Samir works as a volunteer for a charity which helps to clean our local beach. At the weekend, they go to the beach and pick up the rubbish that people left behind. Fatima visits a home for old people who are disabled so it's difficult for their families to look after them. The volunteers have a special person who they visit and talk to. The woman who they visit is called Mrs Buda. She worked as a nurse when she was young and she is a fantastic person. Fatima loves her. Ahmed works for a charity which looks after animals that are old or sick and can't work anymore. People donate money to the charity to buy food for the animals such as horses and camels. They help to feed the animals and look after them.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for this passage. .....
2. What is your opinion about charities? .....
3. Why do people donate money to the charity which Ahmed works for?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "her" refers to ..... .
   a) Fatima b) Aya c) Mrs Buda d) Sara
5. It isn't nice for people to ..... on the beach.
   a) pick up rubbish b) help to clean
   c) leave rubbish d) pick up plastic bottles
6. The underlined verb "pick up" means to ..... something from a place.
   a) leave b) collect c) donate d) lend

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I saw a ..... sitting on the street corner and I gave him some food.
   a) businesswoman b) beggar c) head teacher d) princess
2. We must care ..... our community.
   a) about b) at c) of d) with
3. My clothes were clean and dry. So, I put them all ..... . الصنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) up b) out c) away d) off
4. Players must do ..... tests to make sure they are healthy.
   a) sports b) healthy c) random d) strange

5. He was a ..... for a charity. He works for no money. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a) beggar b) patient c) student d) volunteer

6. You're very ..... . Your father will take you to the cinema.

a) busy b) free c) cruel d) lucky

7. Scientists do their experiments in ..... .

a) playgrounds b) laboratories c) libraries d) extracts

8. Mona ..... to tidy up her room every day.

a) has b) have c) must d) should

9. This is the tablet ..... my father bought last week. السويس ٢٠٢٣

a) which b) who c) where d) when

10. You should ..... hard to get high marks.

a) to studying b) to study c) studying d) study

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You ..... (not/have) take a bus, I'll drive you to school.
2. She ..... (have to) go to school on time every day. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
3. This is the station ..... (that) Eman met Emad.
4. You ..... (should) accept things from strangers!

E Writing

6 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Nesma to tell her about charity work. Your name is Rahma and your email address is rahma@student.com. Your friend's email address is nesma@gmail.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit 6

Different environments

Objectives of the unit

Reading	A presentation about climate change graphs; city profiles; a newspaper report
Writing	A profile of where you live; a paragraph on how to use less water; a short report for a school newspaper; a presentation about the climate
Listening	Radio news reports; a podcast about tourism
Speaking	Solving environmental problems; suggesting solutions to a problem
Language	(not) as + adjective + as; present simple passive
Life Skills	Negotiating; problem solving
Values	Coexistence values
Issues	Environmental and developmental issues

Tapescript

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 54 - 57 | WB pages 109 & 110

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

average (adj)	معدل/متوسط	polluted (adj)	ملوث
bar chart (n)	رسم بيانى شريطى	pollution (n)	تلوث
canal (n)	قناة	presentation (n)	عرض تقديمى
cause (d) (v)	يسبب	rainfall (n)	سقوط الأمطار
climate change (n)	التغير المناخى	recycling (n)	إعادة التدوير (التصنيع)
electric (adj)	كهربائى (يدار بالكهرباء)	temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة
electricity (n)	الكهرباء	warn (ed) (v)	يحذر
green energy (n)	الطاقة الخضراء/النظيفة	x-axis (n)	المحور السينى
line graph (n)	رسم بيانى خطى	y-axis (n)	المحور الصادى

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

area (n)	مساحة/منطقة	planet (n)	كوكب
ever before	من أى وقت مضى	recently (adv)	حديثًا
fire (n)	نار/حريق	the countryside (n)	الريف
fuel (n)	وقود	user (n)	مستخدم

Check Point

Choose and complete: Recycling – energy – Canal – shark

1. Young people usually have more ..... .
2. The Suez ..... was opened in 1869.
3. ..... is important to help protect our environment.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Prepositions — حروف الجر

careful about	حريص بشأن	on top of	على قمة
in English	باللغة الإنجليزية	report from ... for	يقدم تقريرًا من ... لـ
on a programme	فى برنامج	known for	معروف بـ

(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
drought	جفاف	flood	فيضان
melt	ينصهر	freeze	يتجمد

Language Notes

احرص الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية

climate (المناخ (على مدار العام / weather (الطقس (على مدار فترة قصيرة

- Egypt's climate is fine.
- This week's weather is good for sailing.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها
drought	جفاف	dryness	جفاف
melt	ينصهر	dissolve	يذوب

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
danger (n) خطر	-ous	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	dangerous (adj) خطير
electric (adj) كهربى	-ity	تحويل الصفة إلى اسم	electricity (n) الكهرباء
pollute (v) يلوث	-ion	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	pollution (n) تلوث

Places

أماكن

Australia	أستراليا	Mount Catherine	جبل سانت كاترين
Europe	أوروبا	Mount Kenya	جبل كينيا
Iraq	العراق	Mount Kilimanjaro	جبل كليمنجارو
Jabal Mousa	جبل موسى	Saudi Arabia	المملكة العربية السعودية

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The ..... is a bit warmer today.
   a) heat b) temperature c) climate d) weather
2. This city has a warm ..... all over the year.
   a) climate b) weather c) whether d) air

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس مهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-listening question:

- Would you like to help clean a polluted area around your school? Why?

Listen to two reports on a radio news programme for students. Which of the photos on page 54 are they talking about? *SB page 55*

Girl Hello, this is Jomana reporting[1] for Student Radio in Cairo. Recently, volunteers who were working to clean a canal[2] say they are finding more rubbish[3] in the water. They say the canal is dirtier and more polluted than ever before. They are warning[4] people who live in the city to be more careful about where they put their rubbish to try to help the canal become cleaner.

(1) يخبر
(2) قناة مائية
(3) قمامة
(4) يحذر
(5) كهربى
(6) تلوث الهواء





Boy This is Karim reporting from Alexandria for Student FM. Today our city started using new electric[5] buses. The buses will mean there is less air pollution[6] in the city, so they are greener and they are also cheaper to run. I spoke to some bus users who said that the new buses were quieter than the old buses and also the seats were more comfortable.

Note: تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

electric /ɪlektrɪk/ pollution /pə'lu:ʃən/

Post-listening question:

- Do you think electric buses are better than old buses? Why?

Pre-reading question:

- What do you know about climate change?

Lesson 2

Read the presentation. Does it talk about the problems you discussed in Exercise 1?

SB page 56

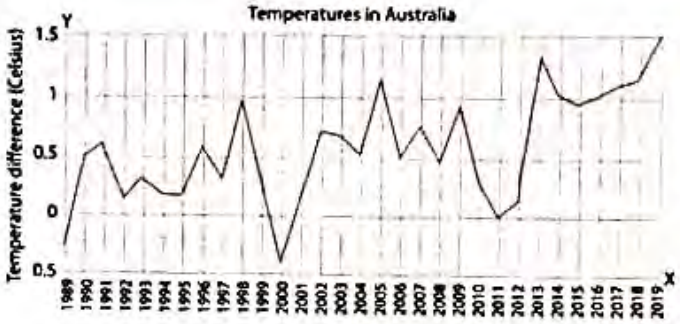
A changing world

Today's presentation[1] is about climate change[2]. This means our planet is changing. Here are two places that are different now.

(1) عرض تقديمي
(2) التغير المناخي
(3) رسم بياني خطي
(4) المحور السيني
(5) المحور الصادي
(6) درجة الحرارة
(7) جفاف
(8) رسم بياني شريطي
(9) ينصهر
(10) منطقة

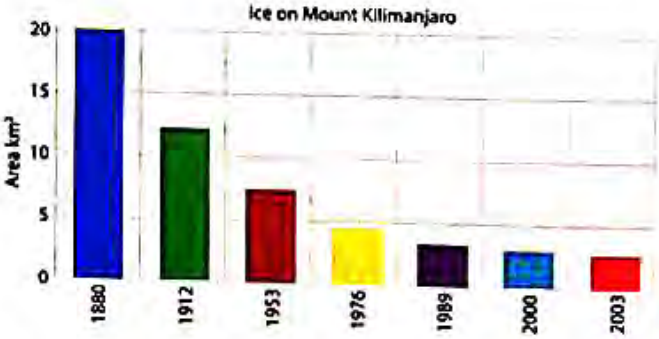
Australia

In this line graph[3], the x-axis[4] shows the year and the y-axis[5] shows the change in temperature[6]. You can see that the climate in Australia is becoming hotter and drier. More droughts[7] mean worse fires than ever before. Climate change means Australia is a more dangerous place to live.



Mount Kilimanjaro

This bar chart[8] shows that warmer and drier weather is melting[9] the ice on top of Africa's highest mountain, Mount Kilimanjaro. You can see that the area[10] of ice is much smaller than 140 years ago. The good news is that the ice is not melting as fast as before. However, the ice is continuing to get smaller.



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

drought /draʊt/ temperature /tempratʃər/

Post-reading question:

- What causes climate change?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There was no rain for four months this winter, so now there is a ..... . القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) flood b) storm c) pollution d) drought
2. The Nile used to ..... every year before the high Dam. العربية ٢٠٢٣
   a) feed b) rain c) finish d) flood
3. There's a fire in the city centre. Our friend, Tamer is there. He's ..... for our programme.
   a) melting b) reporting c) warning d) finding
4. They ..... him of the dangers of sailing alone.
   a) warned b) reported c) caused d) melted
5. There are many ..... buses in our city.
   a) careful b) warm c) electric d) dry
6. I had an interview with the bus ..... and they all were happy when they get on it.
   a) workers b) writers c) teachers d) users
7. My father advised me not to speak ..... bad friends.
   a) for b) to c) at d) on
8. ....., some students are cleaning the canal. They are there now.
   a) Formerly b) Later c) Recently d) Earlier
9. Climate ..... is a very dangerous problem. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) charge b) chair c) change d) chain
10. Today's ..... is 11°C. It will be very cold.
    a) weather b) temperature c) climate d) change
11. The teacher uses the line ..... to show us the change in temperature in Egypt.
    a) photo b) image c) picture d) graph
12. Warmer and drier weather is melting the ice ..... the top of Mount Kilimanjaro.
    a) with b) of c) on d) in
13. There are a lot of cars in the city that cause ..... pollution. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
    a) air b) water c) food d) wood

C Language

1 COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES صفات المقارنة (المقارنة بين شيئين)

We use comparative adjectives to compare two things, people or places.

• نستخدم صفات المقارنة للمقارنة بين شيئين، شخصين أو مكانين.

تنقسم الصفات إلى:

Short adjectives: صفات قصيرة		Long adjectives: صفات طويلة	
وهى صفات تنطق على مقطع واحد: (one syllable)		وهى صفات تنطق على مقطعين أو أكثر: (two or more syllables)	
cheap	رخيص	attractive	جذاب
dirty	متسخ/قذر	beautiful	جميل
fast	سريع	careful	حريص
high	مرتفع	comfortable	مريح
large	ضخم/كبير	dangerous	خطير
noisy	صاخب	important	هام
old	كبير السن/قديم	interesting	شيق
quiet	هادئ	polluted	ملوّث
safe	آمن	relaxing	مريح
warm	دافئ	serious	خطير/جاد

Comparative adjectives
مقارنة الصفات

لعمل مقارنة بين اثنين فى صفة

إذا كانت الصفة ذات مقطع واحد short adj. + er + **than** + ...

• Mount Everest is higher **than** Mount Kilimanjaro.
• The Nile is longer **than** the Amazon.

إذا كانت الصفة بها أكثر من مقطع

more أكثر /**less** أقل ... + long adj. + **than**

• Cairo is more crowded **than** Aswan.
• A dog is less dangerous **than** a lion.

لاحظ

١ الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (y) وقبلها حرف ساكن نقلب (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (er):
(noisy → noisier than)

٢ بعض الصفات القصيرة المنتهية بحرف ساكن وقبله حرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الأخير ثم نضيف (er):
(hot → hotter than)

Common exceptions: استثناءات شائعة:

➡ good ..... **better than** ➡ bad ..... **worse than** ➡ far ..... **further than**	• I'm better than Ali at maths. • Today's weather is worse than yesterday's. • Which Pyramid is further from the centre of Cairo?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 My jacket is ..... (expensive) than your jacket.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (more/less expensive) لوجود than الدالة على المقارنة بين شيئين والصفة expensive طويلة نضع قبلها more/less.

2 My car isn't very big. I want a ..... (big) one.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (bigger) لأن المعنى يعنى مقارنة بين اثنين والصفة big قصيرة يضاف لها er.

2 (not) as ..... as (ليس) تمامًا مثل.....

• We can use (as + **adj.** + as) to talk about things being the same:

• نستخدم(as + **adj.** + as) عند تساوى اثنين/شيئين فى صفة:

(not) as + adj. + as

- Droughts are as **serious** as floods.
- Australia is not as **dry** as Africa.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 The good news is that the ice is not melting as ..... (faster) as before.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (fast) لوجود as ... as التى يتبعها الصفة كما هى.

2 You're as ..... (tall) your brother.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (tall as) لوجود as قبل الصفة.



PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Which is ....., a lion or a horse? الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) bigger b) biggest c) big d) more big
2. Pollution in the countryside is not as ..... as pollution in cities. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) worse b) worst c) most d) bad
3. Maths is ..... than English. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) difficult b) difficult than c) as difficult d) more difficult
4. Australia is not as ..... Africa. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) hotter b) hot c) hot as d) hotter than
5. Is your cousin ..... than your brother? قنا ٢٠٢٣
   a) older b) more old c) as old d) oldest
6. We should be ..... about where we put our rubbish than before.
   a) careful b) careful than c) most careful d) more careful
7. The new buses were ..... the old buses.
   a) quieter b) quieter than c) quietest d) the quietest
8. Zeinab is as beautiful ..... Hassnaa. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) than b) as c) to d) more
9. This mobile phone is expensive. I want a ..... one.
   a) cheaper b) cheapest c) cheap d) the cheapest
10. Which is ....., the Eiffel Tower or the Cairo Tower?
    a) tallest b) the tallest c) taller than d) taller

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Lying on the beach is ..... (relaxing) than working in the city. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
2. Alex is not hotter ..... (then) Aswan. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
3. This train goes ..... (fast) than the last one. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
4. Bikes are ..... (expensive) than cars. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
5. Which is more ..... (far) to walk to, the park or the museum? الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
6. Ziad is playing as ..... (better) as Ali. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

D Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about the climate change

كيفية الكتابة عن تغير المناخ

- Climate change means the change in the world's temperature.
- There are many causes of climate change such as pollution and cutting down trees.
- Climate change causes (الآثار المترتبة عنه).
- We should (ما يجب فعله للحد من الظاهرة).
- We should stop (ما يجب أن نتوقف عن فعله).

Writing tips

Remember to check your writing for mistakes. Make sure that grammar, spelling and punctuation are correct.

تذكر مراجعة مقرتك لاكتشاف الأخطاء. تأكد من صحة القواعد اللغوية والهجاء وعلامات الترقيم.

Example

Climate change

Climate change means the change in the world's climate and temperature. Climate change is causing different kinds of unusual acts in the world's climate. It is the most discussed topic at the moment all over the world. There are many causes of climate change. Firstly, global warming is the main reason for it. Secondly, environmental pollution also causes climate change. Thirdly, cutting down trees is another cause of the problem. Climate change causes a rise in temperature, floods, droughts and ice melting which will seriously affect farming and all living things. We should reduce the bad results of climate change. Planting trees can reduce global warming. We should stop using bad chemicals which can reduce environmental pollution.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Changes of the climate"

It's very important to look after the environment. .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 6 Lessons (1&2)

19.5

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. At the weekend, we go to the ..... and pick up the rubbish. سى سوبف ٢٠٢٣
   a) coach b) rich c) beach d) search
2. I work as a ..... for a charity.
   a) volunteer b) voter c) farmer d) voice
3. We always pick up plastic ..... .
   a) pops b) bottles c) posts d) pants
4. The charity helps to ..... our local beach.
   a) play b) cut c) close d) clean

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Alaa and Sara are talking about climate change.

Alaa : Hello, Sara. How are you?
Sara : (1)..... .
Alaa : Did you have science yesterday?
Sara : (2)..... . It was interesting.
Alaa : (3).....?
Sara : The lesson was about climate change.
Alaa : (4).....?
Sara : Climate change means our planet is changing.
Alaa : Do you think we can stop climate change?
Sara : (5)..... .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There is less ..... this year. There isn't enough water for growing.
   a) recycling b) rainfall c) electricity d) graph
2. The ..... age in secondary school is 15-17 years.
   a) careful b) polluted c) average d) electric
3. I like to read stories ..... English.
   a) in b) at c) by d) with
4. The flood caused ..... damage to the village. Most people left the village.
   a) quiet b) green c) serious d) easy
5. Most ..... that cars use cause pollution.
   a) fires b) fuels c) temperatures d) climates

6. The teacher shows us a ..... of the population of Egypt during the last ten years.
a) chart b) fuel c) rainfall d) canal

7. The ..... energy is the cleanest one to the environment.
a) red b) yellow c) green d) brown

8. A train is not as ..... as a plane. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
a) fast b) faster c) fastest d) more fast

9. My son is ..... at maths than science.
a) the best b) good c) best d) better

10. I study as ..... as my sister. I want to be like her.
a) careful b) carefully c) more careful d) more carefully

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Which mountain is ..... (high), Kilimanjaro or Everest?
2. Playing sport is ..... (good) for you than playing computer games. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
3. I'm twelve years old, but my sister is ..... (old). She's 15.
4. The River Nile is ..... (polluted) than it was before. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

5 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Recycling things" المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

.....

.....

.....

.....

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

Challenging Questions

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The ..... of this bus are comfortable.
a) seats b) chairs c) armchairs d) wheelchair

2. The ..... in Australia is becoming hotter and drier.
a) environment b) air c) climate d) weather

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. People hope there will be ..... (fewer) air pollution in the city.
2. ..... (Less) people speak Arabic than Chinese.

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 3 & 4



SB pages 58 - 60 | WB pages 111 & 112

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

black honey (n)	عسل أسود	monuments (n)	آثار
canal (n)	قناة مائية	mosque (n)	مسجد
focus (n)	تركيز	podcast (n)	بث إذاعى
introduce (d) (v)	يقدم	position (n)	مكانة/موقع (جغرافى)
locate (d) (v)	يقع (جغرافيًا)	produce (d) (v)	ينتج
main (adj)	رئيسى/أساسى	respect (ed) (v)	يحترم
Ministry of Tourism	وزارة السياحة	wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

believe (d) (v)	يعتقد/يصدق	presenter (n)	مذيع/مقدم برنامج
coral reef (n)	شعب مرجانية	scuba diver (n)	غواص
cotton (n)	قطن	scuba diving (n)	رياضة الغطس
home city (n)	موطن	tourism company (n)	شركة سياحة
nature reserve (n)	محمية طبيعية	travel company (n)	شركة سفر
owner (n)	مالك/صاحب شىء	turtle (n)	سلحفاة بحرية
particular (adj)	معين/محدد	winner (n)	الفائز

Check Point

Choose and complete: mosque – diving – coral – diver

1. I'd like to try scuba ..... .
2. Water pollution could damage the ..... reefs.
3. We go to the ..... to pray.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

as usual	كالمعتاد	do > water sports	يمارس رياضات مائية
catch > fish	يصطاد سمكًا	go > scuba diving	يذهب للغطس

Prepositions — حروف الجر

along the river	على امتداد النهر	interested in	مهتم بـ
by the Suez Canal	عن طريق قناة السويس	on local farms	فى المزارع المحلية
closed to	مغلق أمام	on the Red Sea Coast	على ساحل البحر الأحمر
connected to	متصل/مرتبط بـ	rules for	قواعد لـ
famous/known for	مشهور بـ	stop from	يمنع من
important to/for	هام لـ		

Conjugations of irregular verbs — تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
catch يمسك/يصطاد	caught	caught	grow ينمو	grew	grown
choose يختار	chose	chosen	pay for يدفع ثمن	paid	paid

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
lovely	جميل	ugly	قبيح
positive	إيجابى	negative	سلبى

Check Point

Choose and complete: (catch – in – canal – for)

1. We took a boat to ..... fish.
2. Giza is known ..... its Pyramids.
3. I'm interested ..... collecting stamps.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

نحلل (3) موضح (2) ملاحظ (1)

Definitions التعريفات

canal	قناة مائية	a long area of water made for ships or boats
cotton	قطن	a plant used for making clothes[1]
locate	يقع (جغرافيًا)	find the position[2] of something
mosque	مسجد	a building where people can pray[3]

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها
funny	مضحك	amusing	مسلٍّ/ممتع
positive	إيجابي	hopeful	متفائل

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
introduce (v)	يقدم	-tion		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم		introduction (n)	مقدمة
work (v)	يعمل	-er				worker (n)	عامل

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
man	رجل	main	رئيسي/أساسي
rule	قانون/قاعدة	role	دور

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة في الهجاء ولكن مختلفة في المعنى.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The noun from "introduce" is formed by adding the suffix "_____".
   a) -ment b) -ness
   c) -tion d) -ist
2. It's a lovely dress. The antonym of "lovely" is "_____".
   a) ugly b) beautiful
   c) serious d) tasty
3. "_____" is to find the position of something.
   a) Introduce b) Work
   c) Locate d) Pray

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question: - Where's your home city located?

Lesson 3

Look at the photos and titles in the article below. Then ask and answer the questions in pairs. *SB page 58*

Spotlight on ... Port Said



- Port Said is located[1] in the north-east[2] of Egypt.
- The city is known for its ships, which come and go from around the world.
- Port Said is connected to[3] Suez by the Suez Canal.
- Many fish are caught in the sea near Port Said.

Spotlight on ... Tanta





- Tanta is located in the north of Egypt.
- Lots of cotton is grown in the area.
- The city is known for its delicious[4] sweets.
- Tanta's beautiful Al-Ahmadi mosque is visited by thousands of people every year.

(1) تقع (جغرافيًا)
(2) شمال شرق
(3) متصلة بـ
(4) لذيذ/شهي

Complete the sentences with the present simple passive form of the verbs in brackets. *SB page 59*

My home city[1] is Minya. It **is located** near the Nile. Lots of food **is grown** in the local area like potatoes, wheat and sugar. The city **is known** for its delicious "black honey[2]".



The honey **is made** from sugar. Many ancient monuments[3] and buildings **are found** in the city.

My city is very beautiful and interesting!

(1) موطن
(2) عسل أسود
(3) آثار

Post-reading question:

- What is your city famous for?

Pre-listening question:

- Mention three different popular places for tourists in Egypt.

Listen to the introduction to the podcast and choose the correct topic.

SB page 60



Podcast Presenter Today on Environment Matters, we're looking at tourism[1] on the Red Sea Coast[2]. Salma Fawzy from the Ministry of Tourism[3] is here to talk about how we can have tourism in Egypt that doesn't damage the environment[4]. Hello, Salma. You're interested in helping both tourism and the environment, is that right?

Salma Exactly. Tourism is very important to Egypt. Our beautiful coast is visited by people from around the world - which is great! But the coast also has coral reefs and lots of important wildlife[5]. The coral reefs are important for our sharks, dolphins and turtles.

(1) السياحة
(2) ساحل البحر الأحمر
(3) وزارة السياحة
(4) البيئة
(5) الحياة البرية
(6) محميات طبيعية

Podcast Presenter So, what are you doing to protect the environment?

Salma Well, the islands on the Red Sea Coast are all nature reserves[6]. We are also working with hotels and travel companies. We have rules for new buildings to make them greener. We also give prizes to companies that are the best at looking after the environment.

Podcast Presenter Good idea!

Salma We also think that it's important to teach tourists about how to look after our special environment when they are on the beaches or doing water sports like scuba diving.

Post-listening question:

- Tourism shouldn't damage the environment. Explain.

Pre-reading question: - What's meant by green energy?

Complete the text about three hotels with the correct form of these verbs:

WB page 112

The North Hotel







The North Hotel is located on a lovely beach and every year, the hotel is visited by more and more tourists. However, the hotel owner[1] said that last year, there were not as many turtles[2] on the beach as usual. As a result, the hotel is helping the turtles. Parts of the beach are closed to tourists so that turtles are safe. And at night, when the turtles leave their eggs in the sand, the hotel workers stop any tourists from visiting the beach.

The South Hotel

The South Hotel is near the coast, and every year, it takes tourists scuba diving[3]. However, workers on the boats believe that coral reefs[4] are often damaged by scuba divers.

The hotel is now working with a charity that helps the coral reefs. Now some of the money that tourists pay for the boat trips is used to help protect the coral reefs.

The East Hotel

The East Hotel is very new. Only green energy[5] from the sun and wind is used at the hotel. The hotel also produces[6] very little rubbish[7]; most of it is recycled. All the fruit and vegetables at the hotel restaurant are grown on local farms, and the people working at the hotel are all from the local villages.

(1) مالك
(2) سلاحف بحرية
(3) الغطس
(4) الشعاب المرجانية
(5) الطاقة الخضراء (النظيفة)
(6) ينتج
(7) قمامة

Post-reading question:

- Think well and then mention different ideas to help the environment.

Values

1. Why is it important to look after the planet?
2. What do you do to try to help the planet?
3. Do you think that there are more things you could do to help the environment? How could your family help? What about your school?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Practise more

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We use ..... for making clothes. البحيرة ٢٠٢٢

a) wheat b) cotton c) hummus d) rice

2. The hotel is located ..... the north of Egypt. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a) in b) out c) of d) for

3. My ..... city is Minya which is near the Nile.

a) flat b) park c) home d) house

4. Many ancient ..... and buildings are found in Egypt.

a) plants b) planets c) computers d) monuments

5. I'm interested ..... helping other people.

a) at b) in c) on d) with

6. Good children should ..... their parents and teachers. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

a) damage b) predict c) respect d) heart

7. "....." is the opposite of "negative".

a) Positive b) Useless c) Beautiful d) Ugly

8. We should use more ..... energy from the sun and the wind.

a) green b) red c) blue d) black

9. Port Said is ..... to Suez by the Suez Canal.

a) famous b) closed c) interested d) connected

10. Tourists should look after our environment when they are doing water sports like scuba ..... .

a) sinking b) drawing c) diving d) swimming

11. The ..... of this hotel is my aunt. She's a businesswoman.

a) owner b) worker c) officer d) shopkeeper

12. Parts of the beach are closed ..... tourists to make sure the turtles are safe.

a) with b) to c) by d) on

13. To protect the nature reserves, workers ..... any tourists from visiting the beach.

a) close b) connect c) stop d) protect

Time to Practise



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A lot of Muslims go to ..... to pray.
   a) entrances b) castles c) mosques d) markets
2. Port Said is known ..... its ships, which come and go from around the world.
   a) from b) for c) to d) by
3. Many fish are ..... in the sea near Port Said.
   a) caught b) made c) grown d) paid
4. ..... is important for Egypt.
   a) Damage b) Weather c) Pollution d) Tourism
5. Our beautiful ..... of the Red Sea is visited by people from around the world.
   a) lake b) coast c) river d) canal
6. Egypt has beautiful coral ..... on the Red Sea.
   a) reefs b) turtles c) reserves d) companies
7. The islands on the Red Sea Coast are all nature ..... .
   a) companies b) prizes c) reserves d) positions
8. We should have ..... for new buildings to make them greener.
   a) roles b) rules c) rolls d) rulers
9. Minya is known for its delicious black ..... .
   a) reef b) topic c) turtle d) honey
10. We decided to choose a hotel on a ..... beach. It's very beautiful.
    a) terrible b) sad c) lovely d) bad
11. I visit my grandmother on Fridays ..... usual.
    a) as b) such as c) like d) such
12. Some of the money that tourists ..... is used to help protect the coral reefs.
    a) cost b) pay c) grow d) take
13. We ..... much rubbish that damages the environment.
    a) pay b) borrow c) produce d) introduce



لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

THE PRESENT SIMPLE PASSIVE المضارع البسيط المبنى للمجهول

We use the passive form when we don't know who does something.

- نستخدم المبنى للمجهول عند عدم معرفة الفاعل.

Form التكوين

He, She, It (اسم مفرد) + inf. + s/es/ies	<	Active المبنى للمعلوم	>	I, You, We, They (اسم جمع) + inf.

- People grow lots of cotton in the area.

Passive المبنى للمجهول > Object (مفعول) + (am - is - are) + **(P.P.)** التصريف الثالث للفعل

- Lots of cotton is grown in the area.

Negative النفى

Object (مفعول) + (am/ is/ are) + not + P.P. (التصريف الثالث للفعل)

- In my home city, we don't grow rice. **(Active)**
- Rice isn't grown in my home city. **(Passive)**

Question السؤال

(Is/ Are) + object + P.P. (التصريف الثالث للفعل)?

- Do you grow much rice in your country? **(Active)**
- Is much rice grown in your country? **(Passive)**

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الخرية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 ..... (Do) Minya known for black honey?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Is) لأن السؤال فى صيغة المجهول فى المضارع البسيط.

2 Where is your home city ..... (locate)?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (located) لأن السؤال فى صيغة المجهول فى المضارع البسيط ولوجود is ويأتى بعدها التصريف الثالث.

3 We ..... (playing) football every day.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (play) لأنه معلوم فى المضارع البسيط والفاعل We.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The museum is ..... by many tourists. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) visiting b) visit c) visited d) visits
2. Doors ..... by the carpenter. الصومعة ٢٠٢٢
   a) makes b) are made c) made d) make
3. Where is Alexandria .....? الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
   a) locating b) locate c) locates d) located
4. Vegetables ..... to make our bodies healthy. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
   a) eat b) is eaten c) are eaten d) eats
5. Children always ..... a lot of water. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) drink b) drinks c) drinking d) are drinking
6. Port Said is connected to Suez ..... the Suez Canal.
   a) for b) at c) by d) with
7. Lots of cotton ..... in Tanta.
   a) are grown b) is grown c) are growing d) is growing
8. Many ancient monuments and buildings ..... in Minya.
   a) found b) find c) are finding d) are found
9. The walls aren't ..... by my mother.
   a) painted b) painting c) paint d) paints
10. Prizes ..... to companies that are the best at looking after the environment.
    a) gives b) give c) are given d) are giving

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Giza ..... (know) for its ancient Pyramids. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
2. Cars ..... (make) in Japan. الصومعة ٢٠٢٣
3. Many fish ..... (catch) by fishermen every month. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
4. Cheese ..... (made) from milk. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
5. A lot of crops are (grow) ..... along the river. الصومعة ٢٠٢٣
6. English is ..... (speaking) all over the world. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

D Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about your home city

كيفية الكتابة عن مدينتك

- I come from a beautiful city called (اسم المدينة).
- It has a lot of (ما بها من أماكن جميلة).
- People in my city are very (صفة).
- It is located in ... (موقعها الجغرافى).
- It's (صفة) in summer.
- Many tourists visit it because (السبب).

Writing tips

Try reading your written task out loud to make sure it makes sense.

حاول قراءة مهمتك الكتابية بصوت عالٍ لتتأكد أن لها معنى.

Example

To : paul@gmail.com
From : nader@gmail.com
Subject : My home city

Hello Paul,

How are you? I'd like to tell you about my home city. I come from a beautiful city called Hurghada on the Red Sea. First of all, it's very green and has many beaches and mountains. My home city is not polluted and the people are very friendly. It also has a small city centre area and you can find many shops and restaurants, for example, seafood restaurants and supermarkets. My home city is on the coast, so there are many boats and ships. You can see turtles there. There are many fishermen around, so you can eat many kinds of cheap fish. It's very hot in the summer and warm in the winter. There are many parks and museums in my home city. Many tourists visit my home city in the winter time because it has lovely weather. You should come and visit it one day.

Write soon.
Nader

Check Point

Write an email to your friend Jack to tell him about Egypt. Your name is Ahmed and your email address is (ahmed@hotmail.com). Your friend's email address is (jack@yahoo.com).

TEST YOURSELF

Take a test

Unit 6 Lessons (3 & 4)

17.5

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

A nature reserve is an area of land in which animals and plants are protected. Nature reserves may be built by the government in some countries, or by private landowners. There are 30 nature reserves in Egypt which cover 12% of Egyptian land. Those nature reserves were built to protect the Egyptian nature. Egypt announced a plan to build 40 nature reserves to help protect the natural resources and the culture and history of those areas.

The largest nature reserve in Egypt is Gebel Elba (35,600 square kilometres) in the southeast, on the Red Sea Coast. The islands on the Red Sea Coast are all nature reserves. The government is working with hotels and travel companies. We have rules for new buildings to make them greener.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the passage about? .....
2. What is a nature reserve? .....
3. Why do you think Egypt planned to build more nature reserves? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Who can build nature reserves around the world? - ..... .
   a) Governments b) Private landowners
   c) Universities d) Both a and b
5. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ..... .
   a) travel companies b) hotels
   c) new buildings d) islands
6. The opposite of the underlined word "protected" is ..... .
   a) saved b) damaged c) locked d) mended

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Many tourists come to Egypt to see its ..... .
   a) environments b) monuments
   c) advertisements d) governments
2. To "....." is to find the position of something.
   a) introduce b) produce c) locate d) respect
3. A ..... is a building where people can pray.
   a) mosque b) stadium c) museum d) cinema
4. A ..... is a long area of water made for ships or boats.
   a) title b) position c) mosque d) canal

5. The ..... is having an interview with a famous sports star tonight.
a) ruler b) presenter c) worker d) waiter
6. Tourists come to the Red Sea Coast to ..... many water sports.
a) go b) catch c) do d) make
7. Al Ahly will be the ..... of the cup this year.
a) podcast b) focus c) diver d) winner
8. My homework is usually ..... in the evening.
a) done b) doing c) does d) do
9. Volleyball ..... on Fridays.
a) playing b) plays c) is played d) play
10. Glass ..... from sand.
a) makes b) is making c) made d) is made

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. A lot of money is paid ..... (with) tourists.
2. I'm not ..... (help) by anyone with my homework.
3. ..... (Do) you driven to your school by anyone?
4. Tanta ..... (know) for its delicious sweets.

4 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Hisham to tell him about a famous city you visited. Your name is Samy and your email address is (samy@gmail.com). Your friend's email address is (hisham@hotmail.com).

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We can produce ..... energy from the sun and wind.
a) fuel b) green c) oil d) gas
2. Fish ..... on Fridays. We eat it on holidays.
a) are cooked b) cook c) is cooked d) cooks

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Meat is cut ..... (in) a sharp knife.
2. My grandparents ..... (visited) every Friday.

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 61 - 62 | WB pages 113 & 114

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

aim (ed) (to) (v)	يهدف (إلى)	including (prep)	مشتملًا على/متضمنًا
air pollution (n)	تلوث الهواء	lead to (led) (v)	يؤدى إلى
burn (burnt) (v)	يحرق	melt (ed) (v)	ينصهر/ يذوب
climate change (n)	تغير المناخ	remind (ed) (v)	يذكّر
diagram (n)	رسم توضيحى/بيانى	reuse (d) (v)	يعيد استخدام
event (n)	حدث	riverbank (n)	ضفة النهر
global (adj)	عالمى	vote (d) (v)	يدلى بصوته/يصوّت
importance (of) (n)	أهمية (لـ)	water (ed) (v)	يروى/يسقى

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

billion	مليار	gas (n)	غاز
city centre (n)	وسط البلد	solution (n)	حل
coloured (adj)	ملون	ton (n)	طن
expressions (n)	تعبيرات	washing (n)	الغسيل

Check Point

Choose and complete: reuse – vote – coloured – water

1. Try to ..... old paper.
2. Farmers should ..... their plants every day.
3. We have two days to ..... on the best idea.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

get > warmer	يصبح أكثر دفئًا	solve > a problem	يحل مشكلة

Prepositions — حروف الجر

check for mistakes	يتحقق من الأخطاء	lie/lying on a beach	يستلقى على الشاطئ
clean up	ينظف	vote on	يصوت على

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word — الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) — عكسها
interesting — شيق	boring — ممل
true — صحيح/حقيقى	untrue — غير حقيقى

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

يحدث عندما (1) مصانع (2) مطر (3) يدفء (4)

Definitions — التعريفات

air pollution — تلوث الهواء	It happens when[1] there is too much smoke from factories[2].
climate change — تغير المناخ	It happens when the planet gets warmer.
drought — جفاف	It happens when there is not enough rain[3].
flood — فيضان	It happens when there is too much rain.
melt — ينصهر/ يذوب	It happens when ice warms[4].

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word — الكلمة	Synonym (meaning) — مرادفها
interesting — شيق	amazing — مدهش
true — صحيح/حقيقى	real — حقيقى

Suffix اللاحقة

Word — الكلمة	Suffix — اللاحقة	Function — الوظيفة	The new word — الكلمة الجديدة
colour (n) — لون	-ed	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	coloured (adj) — ملون
express (v) — يعبر	-ion	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	expression (n) — تعبير

Prefix البادئة

Prefix — البادئة	Function — الوظيفة	Word — الكلمة	The new word — الكلمة الجديدة
re-	بمعنى يعيد عمل شىء	use (v) — يستخدم	reuse (v) — يعيد استخدام

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listen and check your answers.

Lesson 5

SB page 61



Aya The problem is that we all use too much water.

Reem That's true. So, how can we use less water?

Aya Well, why don't we try recycling water?

Reem How could we do that?

Aya For example, we could use the water from washing to water the plants.

Reem That's an interesting idea! The plants would like that!

Pre-listening question:

- How is house rubbish different from school rubbish?

Listen to Dina talking about her school and answer the questions.

WB page 113



Dina Our school project this week is to think about rubbish at school. In our school, we have a rubbish bin in every room. The students are very good and they always put their rubbish in the bins. At the moment, the rubbish is collected every week and goes to a special place in the city. But when we look inside the bins, we can see that most of the rubbish is made of paper or plastic. We can recycle a lot of this rubbish. So now, before students put things in the rubbish bin, we ask them to think: Can I recycle that? If the answer is yes, they can now put it in a special bin so it can be used again.

Note :

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

special /ˈspeʃəl/

Post-listening question:

- Do you think Dina's school is clean? Give reasons.

Pre-listening question:

- Does your school produce plastic rubbish? Where does it come from?

Listen and check your answers to Exercise 2, then role-play the dialogue.

WB page 113



Dina Look at all the plastic water bottles in the rubbish bin. The problem is that we use too many of them.

Leila How can we stop people using them?

Dina Why don't we ask people to use them again?

Leila How could we do that?

Dina People could take home the bottles, wash them, and bring them to school the next day.

Leila That's an interesting idea. We can see what the teacher thinks.

Read the article and answer the questions:

Lesson 6

SB page 62

Students help to clean river

By Khadeeja El-Maghrabi



(1) ضفة النهر

(2) قمامة

(3) الحياة البرية

(4) المتطوعون

Last weekend, ten students from Class 7 helped clean up the part of the riverbank[1] near the city centre. The students collected 15 bags of rubbish[2]. Their teacher, Mr. Hassan, said the students were sad to find so much rubbish.

"There were lots of plastic bags and bottles," he said. "We even found an old shoe!"

One of the students said, "It was great to clean the riverbank, but we need to teach people to be more careful with their rubbish. Rubbish in the river damages the wildlife[3].

Well done to the volunteers[4]!

Post-reading question:

- Why do you think we need to teach people to be more careful with their rubbish?

Pre-reading question: - What's meant by green energy?

Read the article again and match the paragraphs 1-3 with the headings a-c.

WB page 114

1. What's Global Recycling Day?

Global Recycling Day[1] is an event[2] in March. It aims to[3] remind people of the importance of recycling things including paper, plastic, metal, water and even gas[4] and oil[5]. It was started in 2018 and there are now recycling events in many different countries.

(1) اليوم العالمي للتدوير

(2) حدث

(3) يهدف لـ

(4) الغاز

(5) البترول

(6) مليار

2. So why is recycling so important?

In 2018, people produced about 11 billion[6] tonnes of rubbish around the world. At the moment, a lot of our rubbish is burnt and this can lead to climate change.



3. What are countries doing about the problem?

No country recycles as much rubbish as Germany: It recycles more than 56% of it. In 1991, it recycled about 3%. South Korea recycles more than 53% of its rubbish. Coloured plastic bottles and some plastic cups are not used anymore, because you can recycle them. Most countries hope to recycle more in the future.

Post-reading question:

- Global Recycling Day is an important day all over the world. Discuss.

Life Skills

When talking about a problem, you need to ask others for their ideas about how to solve it. Try also to give your own suggestions.



PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The smoke of old cars and factories causes ..... pollution. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) air b) water c) soil d) plant
2. To recycle is to ..... things again.
   a) rewrite b) renew c) reuse d) review
3. A ..... happens when there is not enough rain.
   a) pollution b) rainfall c) drought d) flood
4. Some people ..... rubbish every week and take it to a special place in the city.
   a) throw b) collect c) burn d) feed
5. This charity ..... to help disabled people.
   a) aims b) makes c) burns d) causes
6. The teacher uses a ..... to show us the function of the heart.
   a) cart b) blog c) diagram d) stamp
7. When the planet gets warmer, it is called ..... change. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) pilot b) climate c) plate d) global
8. Drier weather is ..... the ice on top of the mountains. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) sinking b) trying c) leaving d) melting
9. The head teacher asked us to ..... on the best teacher in the class.
   a) vote b) shout c) call d) burn
10. They have many pets, ... three cats.
    a) taking b) including c) making d) saving
11. After doing your exams, you should check ..... mistakes.
    a) by b) with c) to d) for
12. You should think carefully when you try to ..... a problem.
    a) remind b) solve c) reuse d) collect
13. Some people throw rubbish into the river, so students clean up this part of the ..... .
    a) riverbank b) beach c) shore d) coast

C Skills



Speaking

Making suggestions

تقديم اقتراحات

online

The problem is that we use too much water.
المشكلة أننا نستخدم كميات كبيرة جداً من المياه.

That's true. هذا حقيقي.

Why don't we try recycling water? لم لا نجرب إعادة تدوير المياه؟

That's an interesting idea! إنها فكرة شيقة!

We could use the water from washing to water plants.
يمكننا استخدام مياه الغسيل لنروى بها النباتات.

How can/could we do that? كيف يمكننا فعل ذلك؟

We can see what the teacher thinks. يمكننا رؤية ما يفكر به المعلم.

Speaking Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

▶ **Aya and Reem are talking about how to save water.** SB

Aya : The problem is that we all use too much water.
Reem : (1)..... . We should do something about that.
Aya : Certainly. We could use less water.
Reem : That's great. So, (2).....?
Aya : Well, why don't we try recycling water?
Reem : (3)..... .
Aya : I mean we could use water twice.
Reem : (4).....?
Aya : We could use the water from washing to water plants.
Reem : (5)..... ! Plants would like that.

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 6 Lessons (5 & 6)

15.5

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Dina sees that plastic bottles cause a lot of problems. WB

Dina : Look at all the plastic water bottles in the rubbish bin.

Leila : (1).....?

Dina : (2)..... .

Leila : What can we do with that problem?

Dina : (3)..... .

Leila : How can we stop people using them?

Dina : We can ask people to use them again.

Leila : (4).....?

Dina : People could take home the bottles, wash them, and bring them to school the next day.

Leila : (5)..... . We can see what the teacher thinks.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Global Recycling Day is an ..... in March.
   a) email b) event c) orphan d) opera
2. We always put our rubbish in the ..... .
   a) diagrams b) droughts c) bins d) floods
3. The teacher always tells us about the ..... of water in our life.
   a) importance b) riverbank c) solution d) gas
4. It's an ..... idea to take home the plastic bottles, wash them, and use them again.
   a) busy b) untrue c) boring d) interesting
5. Germany ..... more than 56% of its rubbish.
   a) aims b) leads c) recycles d) damages
6. If you are tired, why don't you ..... a rest? القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) have b) be c) become d) do
7. The teacher asked us to vote ..... the best topic of this week.
   a) for b) on c) at d) by

8. This writer's articles ..... by many people.
a) are reading b) is reading c) is read d) are read

9. The rules are ..... by everyone.
a) follow b) followed c) following d) follows

10. Who is ....., your father or your mother?
a) older b) older than c) oldest d) the oldest

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Fruits are ..... (good) for you than sweets. سوهاج ٢٠٢٢
2. My father told me that Cairo is ..... (noisy) than Assiut. اسيوط ٢٠٢٢
3. Saudi Arabia is not ..... (wet) as Jordan. دمياط ٢٠٢٢
4. Clothes aren't ..... (sell) in that shop.

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"The problem of pollution"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Rubbish is collected every week and goes to a ..... place in the city.
a) international b) global c) private d) special

2. We should stop people ..... too many of plastic water bottles.
a) to use b) using c) to using d) use

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. No country recycles ..... (much) rubbish as Germany.
2. Coloured plastic bottles and some plastic cups ..... (are used) anymore.

Review On Unit 6

Skills

Making suggestions: تقديم اقتراحات

- The problem is that we use too much water.

المشكلة أننا نستخدم كميات كبيرة جدًا من المياه.

- That's true. هذا حقيقي.

- Why don't we try recycling water?

لم لا نجرب إعادة تدوير المياه؟

- That's an interesting idea!

إنها فكرة شيقة!

- How can/could we do that?

كيف يمكننا فعل ذلك؟

- We can see what the teacher thinks.

يمكننا رؤية ما يفكر به المعلم.

Language

1 Comparative adjectives

صفات المقارنة (المقارنة بين شيئين)

- We use comparative adjectives to compare two things, people or places.

نستخدم صفات المقارنة للمقارنة بين شيئين، شخصين أو مكانين.

adj. + er + **than** + ... إذا كانت الصفة ذات مقطع واحد

- Mount Everest is higher **than** Mount Kilimanjaro.

more أكثر / less أقل + adj. + **than** ...

إذا كانت الصفة بها أكثر من مقطع

- Cairo is more crowded **than** Aswan.

2 The present simple passive

المضارع البسيط المبنى للمجهول

(Object) مفعول + (am - is - are) + (P.P.)

- Lots of cotton is grown in the area.

- Rice isn't grown in my home city.

Vocabulary

air pollution	تلوث الهواء
bar chart	رسم بيانى شريطى
black honey	عسل أسود
line graph	رسم بيانى خطى
melt (ed)	ينصهر
climate change	التغير المناخى
monuments	آثار
mountain	جبل
damage (d)	يدمر/يتلف
podcast	بث إذاعى
diagram	رسم توضيحى/بيانى
drought	جفاف
environment	البيئة
flood	فيضان
recycling	إعادة التدوير/التصنيع
green energy	الطاقة الخضراء/النظيفة
reuse (d)	يعيد استخدام
riverbank	ضفة النهر
temperature	درجة الحرارة
water pollution	تلوث المياه
wildlife	الحياة البرية
x-axis	المحور السينى
y-axis	المحور الصادى

Question Bank

Al-Adwaa Test On Unit 6

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Where is Port Said located? - It is in the ..... of Egypt.
   a) north-east b) south-east
   c) west-east d) south
2. What is it known for? - Its ..... .
   a) cars b) ships
   c) boats d) rockets
3. Many fish are caught in the sea near ..... .
   a) Alexandria b) Luxor
   c) the Suez Canal d) Matrouh
4. Ships come and go from around ..... .
   a) Cairo b) the world
   c) the coast d) Alexandria

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Hatem and Hussein are talking about the school project about rubbish at school.

Hatem : What are you thinking of?
Hussein : (1)..... .
Hatem : A school project! What is the school project about?
Hussein : (2)..... .
Hatem : Why don't we recycle this rubbish?
Hussein : (3)..... .
Hatem : We could collect rubbish every week.
Hussein : (4).....?
Hatem : We can put it in a special place in the city. (5).....?
Hussein : Yes, I agree with you.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

Global Recycling Day started in 2018 to show the importance of recycling. It is a day for the world to come together and put the planet first. It is an event in March to remind people of the importance of recycling things including paper, plastic, metal, water and even gas and oil. There are now recycling events in many different countries. In 2018, people produced about 11 billion tons of rubbish around the world. At the moment, a lot of our rubbish is burnt and this can lead to climate change. No country recycles as much rubbish as Germany: It recycles more than 56% of it. In 1991, it recycled about 3%. South Korea recycles more than 53% of its rubbish. Coloured plastic bottles and some plastic cups are not used anymore, because you can recycle them. Most countries hope to recycle more in the future.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the best title for this passage? .....
2. Which country recycles the most? .....
3. Why do you think it is important to recycle rubbish? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Global Recycling Day is an event in ..... .
   a) April b) October c) March d) May
5. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ..... .
   a) Global Recycling Day b) Germany
   c) rubbish d) South Korea
6. The underlined verb "lead to" is similar to ..... .
   a) recycle b) protect c) damage d) cause

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Pollution can ..... much damage to the environment.
   a) lead b) cause c) aim d) burn
2. ..... is used in making many clothes.
   a) Cotton b) Dessert c) Honey d) Wood
3. When there is too much rain, there is often a ..... . شرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) sea b) river c) drought d) flood
4. The sun and wind can give us green ..... .
   a) station b) gas c) energy d) fuel

5. Our house is ..... in a beautiful and quiet area.
a) lied b) located c) damaged d) protected

6. We paid for the flat to the ..... of the house.
a) event b) collector c) chart d) owner

7. We should ..... damaging the environment. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
a) collect b) help c) protect d) stop

8. I'm ..... at English than Arabic.
a) better b) best c) good d) as good

9. Egypt ..... in the north-east of Africa.
a) is lied b) lies c) lie d) lied

10. More lions ..... in Africa.
a) finds b) find c) are finding d) are found

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Droughts are as serious ..... (than) floods.
2. Rubbish ..... (takes) out every day.
3. Our delicious food is ..... (cooking) by our mother.
4. ..... (Does) much rice grown in your country?

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Helping the environment" القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

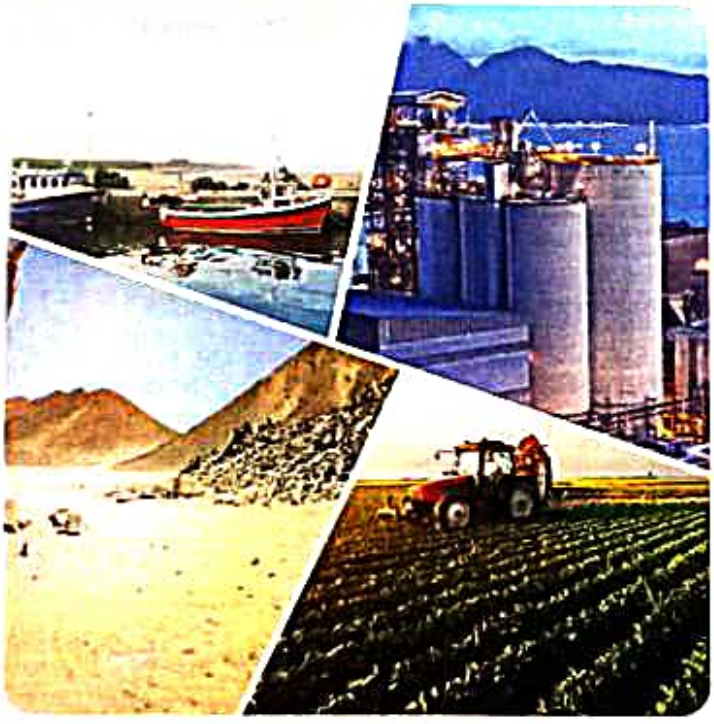


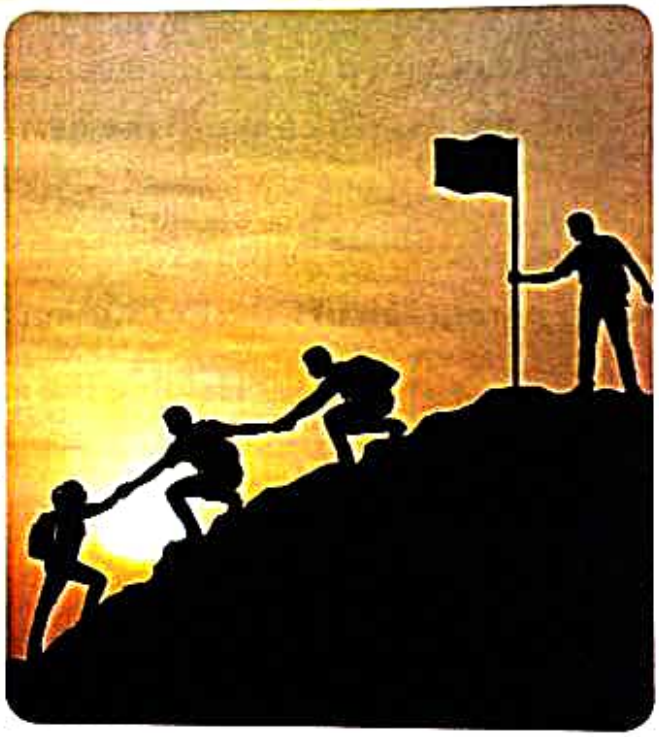
Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Review B







Units 4, 5 & 6

Review B

Pre-listening question:

Lesson 1

- Do you like visiting historic places? Why?

Listen to the telephone conversation. What place is the teacher calling and why?

SB page 64



Mrs. Saki Good afternoon, Luxor Museum, how can I help you?

Mr. El-Baz Hello, I'm a teacher and I want to bring my class to visit the museum next week. Can you tell me what time you are open, please?

Mrs. Saki Of course. We're open every day from 9 a.m. to 2 p.m. and then 5 p.m. to 9 p.m.

Mr. El-Baz Can I buy tickets at the museum?

Mrs. Saki Yes, certainly. Or you can buy them online before your visit.

Mr. El-Baz How much are the tickets?

Mrs. Saki They're 120 pounds for adults and 60 pounds for children and students.

Mr. El-Baz OK, thank you. Can you tell me where the museum is exactly?

Mrs. Saki It's located in the north of Luxor on Corniche El Nil.

Mr. El-Baz Thank you so much for your help!

Mrs. Saki You're welcome. Bye!

Post-listening question:

- How much are the tickets?

Pre-listening question:

- What do you think of online shopping?

Listen and match the three telephone conversations 1–3 with the places the callers want to visit a–c. *WB page 116*

1 **Woman** Good morning, how can I help you?

Man Hello, I'd like to know some of the things I can see and do if I visit today.



Woman Yes, you can usually see lots of wildlife, or you could go scuba diving.

2 **Man 1** Hello, how can I help you today?

Man 2 Good morning. Can you tell me how much a ticket costs?

Man 1 Of course. Adults are 160 pounds and children are 80 pounds.

Man 2 Can I buy the tickets online?

Man 1 Yes, and the tickets are cheaper on the museum website, too.

3 **Woman 1** Good afternoon, how can I help?

Woman 2 I'd like to know what time you close today.

Woman 1 Certainly. We close at 3 p.m., so if you want to visit the castle today, you'll have to get here soon.

Woman 2 Thank you for your help.

Post-listening question:

- Which one of the three places would you like to visit?

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 2

- Do you like visiting ancient places?

Read the text quickly. Which objects did Hamid see at the museum?

SB page 64

A trip to Luxor Museum

By Hamid



Last week, I went to Luxor Museum with my class. The museum is further from my home than our school. We were travelling for a long time! We arrived at 10.30 a.m. As we were walking into the museum, we saw some big statues. My favourite was the statue of Ramses II. There were also rings and necklaces that once belonged to rich Egyptian families. There were a lot of small coins from the same time, too.

The museum has some very old objects. My favourite objects were the metal bowls from the fourteenth century. The oldest objects in the museum were the tools. Some were made of metal and some were made of stone. While I was reading the information, my friend found a tool that was 10,000 years old.

Post-reading question:

- What were the tools made of?

Pre-reading question: - What's the most famous temple in Luxor?

Read and complete the article.

WB page 116



The city of Edfu, which is **located** to the west of the River Nile, is **known** for the famous Temple of Horus. For hundreds of years, people forgot about the temple until 1860, when a French man, Auguste Mariette, found part of an **arch** in the sand. He realised that there were 12 metres of sand on top of the ancient building. People carefully took the sand off the temple and today, it is one of the **biggest** temples in Egypt. Tourists **have to** buy a ticket to look around the temple, **which** is more than 2,000 years old. Tourists **who** go to the temple always remember this **awesome** building.

Post-reading question: - Who discovered the Temple of Horus?

Question Bank

End of Term Practice

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. What is Aya's father's job?
   a) A shop worker.
   b) A teacher.
   c) A street-food seller.
   d) It doesn't say.
2. Why must Aya stay at home every day?
   a) To work.
   b) To study.
   c) To look after her brothers and sisters.
   d) To plant trees.
3. Where does Aya have to go in the evenings?
   a) To school.
   b) To the shops.
   c) To a park.
   d) To her teacher's house.
4. How does Aya feel when she gets home?
   a) Tired but grateful.
   b) Angry.
   c) Hungry.
   d) Sad.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Manal : I can't come to your family party next weekend because my grandfather is in hospital.

Leila : (1)..... to hear that, Manal. I'll get something.

Manal : (2)....., Leila?

Leila : I mean I'll buy him something that you can take to the hospital.

Manal : (3)..... don't we buy him something together?

Leila : That's an interesting (4)..... . What can we get him?

Manal : We (5)..... buy him a magazine to read.

Leila : Good idea!

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In 1925, a British adventurer called Leonard Woolley was exploring a palace in ancient Babylon (which is located in Iraq today), when he discovered a strange collection of objects. The objects all had labels on them and Woolley realised that this was probably the world's first ever museum! Woolley knew that rich people in the past used to collect special objects in their houses.

In Babylon, the palace was the home of Princess Ennigaldi in the year 530 BCE. Some of the objects, however, were about 1,500 years older. Woolley did not know much about Princess Ennigaldi, but he learned that people were interested in history in the past as much as they are interested in it today. Isn't that fantastic?

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What was Leonard Woolley exploring in 1925? .....
2. Why did he think the objects were from a museum? .....
3. What does the underlined word "them" refer to? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Some of the objects in the museum were .....
   a) about 2,000 years old
   b) the same age as the palace
   c) newer than the palace
   d) a lot older than the palace
5. What do you think the word "collection" means?
   a) A palace.
   b) An innovation.
   c) Things without names.
   d) Things you keep together.
6. What did Leonard Woolley learn about people in the past?
   a) They all had museums.
   b) They were interested in history.
   c) They were all very rich.
   d) They were all fantastic.

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ..... work in the street. They sell food.
   a) Call-centre workers
   b) Nurses
   c) Engineers
   d) Street-food sellers
2. Many people in the city live in a ..... of flats.
   a) black
   b) block
   c) chest
   d) house
3. The mountain was very high and we all felt ..... at the top because we thought we might fall!
   a) scare
   b) scared
   c) happy
   d) tall

4. Kareem's cousin is ..... and never puts his books away.
   a) messy b) cruel c) serious d) tidy
5. Eyad works as a ..... for a charity that helps to clean the local beach.
   a) patient b) figure c) model d) volunteer
6. Where did your grandparents .....?
   a) lived b) used to live c) use to live d) living
7. The nurse is a ..... . She saved a lot of people.
   a) hero b) beggar c) manager d) servant
8. While Hassan ..... to school, he saw a famous squash player.
   a) was walking b) is walking c) walked d) walks
9. You must not ..... the objects in the museum.
   a) touch b) belong to c) relax d) see
10. The new book ..... I bought is very interesting.
   a) who b) where c) that d) when

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The Egyptian handball team ..... (win) the competition last year.
2. Karim ..... (take) a photo of the museum at the moment.
3. Cotton clothes ..... (sell) all over the world.
4. Mona ..... (have) to wear the uniform at school.

E Writing

6 Choose one of the following:

1. Write an email of 80-90 words to a penfriend telling him or her about your daily routine.
2. Write a blog of 80-95 words about a historic place you visited.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Listening Texts

Unit 1

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
My name is Ali. I always get up early at 6:30. I have my breakfast, get dressed and go to school. I return home at three o'clock. I do my homework in the afternoon. After finishing my homework, I watch TV at about 7:30.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 1

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
My name's Li Shang. I'm from China. I live with my parents. I share a room with my sister. We all get up early. I have my dinner at 10 p.m. After dinner, I go to bed.

Unit 2

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
That's a photo of my last school trip to the mountains. We're sitting carefully on the rocks because they are very sharp! You can't see me because I'm sitting under a tree.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
My name is Omar. I have a very kind neighbour. He is called Mr. Othman. He is a teacher of English at a primary school so he helped me pass my exams. He used his old books to help me and his students.

Unit 3

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
Princess Fatma Ismail was the daughter of Khedive Ismail and was born in 1853. She became a patron of Egypt's first national university after she gave a lot of money and land to help it to open in 1908.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 3

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
My father is my hero. He is a famous doctor. He was born in a small village in 1980. He is interested in helping poor people. He works as a volunteer in a charity.

Unit 4

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
Last week, my father bought tickets to visit the Grand Egyptian Museum. When we went there, there were a lot of things to see there. The place was fantastic. I recommended the place to my friends and advised them not to touch any objects there.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 4

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
The Ancient Egyptians used pots and bowls for making food. These objects were made of clay, which came from the River Nile. Using pots and bowls which are made of clay is healthy. The Ancient Egyptians were very clever.

Unit 5

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
A random act of kindness is a kind thing that you do for someone, for no reason. You can do random acts of kindness for all people. Now, February 17th is Random Acts of Kindness Day all over the world. It's a fantastic idea.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 5

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
My neighbour Fareeda is very kind. She is a businesswoman. She is 43 years old. She is interested in helping old people. Yesterday, she went to a charity for old people and donated twenty thousand pounds.

Unit 6

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
At the weekend, my friends and I work as volunteers for a charity. We go to the beach every weekend to pick up the rubbish. We always find a lot of plastic bottles. The charity's aim is to clean our local beach.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 6

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
Port Said is located in the north-east of Egypt. The city is famous for its ships, which come and go from around the world. Port Said is connected to Suez by the Suez Canal. Many fish are caught in the sea near the Suez Canal.

End of Term Practice

Aya is 13 and lives in a village in India. Her father is a street-food seller and her mother is a shop worker. They have to work every day, so Aya must stay at home to look after her younger brothers and sisters. Aya goes to school in the evening. Aya always feels very tired when she gets home, but she is grateful for being able to learn.

Challenging Questions Answers

Unit 1

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. 1. b) starts 2. b) are

2. 1. are 2. is

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. 1. a) minute 2. b) verb

2. 1. never 2. Who

Lessons (5 & 6)

1. c) open 2. d) out of 3. a) with

Unit 2

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. 1. c) tiring 2. c) make

2. 1. is knocking 2. having

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. 1. b) to 2. b) middle

2. 1. really 2. happy

Lessons (5 & 6)

1. 1. b) Maybe 2. a) going

2. 1. some 2. to meeting

Unit 3

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. b) to win 2. d) later 3. d) was

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. 1. b) health 2. a) healthy

2. 1. be 2. Isn't

Lessons (5 & 6)

1. 1. a) as 2. d) for

2. 1. cooking 2. doesn't

Unit 4

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. d) away 2. b) historic

3. c) recommend 4. d) we must

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. b) with 2. d) like

3. c) were eating

Lessons (5 & 6)

1. b) around 2. d) later

3. a) follow 4. c) special

Unit 5

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. b) back to 2. c) make 3. a) practise

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. a) reach 2. b) behind 3. d) which

Lessons (5 & 6)

1. a) title 2. b) share 3. d) donation

Unit 6

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. 1. a) seats 2. c) climate

2. 1. Few 2. More

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. 1. b) green 2. c) is cooked

2. 1. with 2. are visited

Lessons (5 & 6)

1. 1. d) special 2. b) using

2. 1. as much 2. aren't used

NEW HELLO

Ongoing Assessment & Exams Booklet

2nd PREP

FIRST TERM

ALAWAA Gem

2024

Part 1 Ongoing Assessment



1 **Check Your Vocabulary**
إملاء خاص بكل درسين

2 **Lessons Quiz**
نموذج اختبار قصير خاص بكل درسين

Unit 1
Lessons 1&2

Check Your Vocabulary

25

Vocabulary

مفضل	.....	هواية	.....
مادة دراسية	.....	يوميًا	.....
وقت فراغ	.....	روتين/نظام يومى	.....
مقابلة/حوار	.....	مخبز	.....
مدونة إلكترونية	.....	شقة	.....
عمارة سكنية	.....	اهتمام	.....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يشارك مع	.....	يتناول الغداء	.....
يؤدى تمارين	.....	فى الطريق إلى	.....
مختلف عن	.....	يقضى وقتًا فى	.....
يعد الإفطار	.....	يساعد فى	.....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	.....	.....	يتعلم
.....	.....	.....	يترك/يغادر
.....	.....	.....	يشرب

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
late	.....
start	.....

Unit 1 Lessons 1 & 2 — Quiz

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. I usually ..... my breakfast at home.
   a) give b) drink c) have d) do
2. People ..... sports to stay fit.
   a) have b) do c) make d) take
3. I usually ..... my friends in my free time.
   a) listen b) have c) make d) text
4. My daily ..... is the same in the holidays.
   a) routine b) topic c) subject d) hobby
5. Reading is the most important and famous ..... that people can enjoy a lot.
   a) flat b) blog c) hobby d) topic
6. He has a/an ..... for a new job today.
   a) blog b) hobby c) view d) interview
7. My father ..... home before we get up.
   a) starts b) leaves c) finishes d) texts

Language

8. When does he ..... to work?
   a) go b) goes c) going d) went
9. My father and uncle ..... the train to go to Alexandria.
   a) usually takes b) usually take c) takes usually d) take usually
10. Does your mother ..... the house every day?
    a) to clean b) cleans c) cleaning d) clean

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

5

1. Hany sometimes ..... (repair) his car.
2. What time ..... (does) you get up on a school day?
3. He ..... (tells / always) us funny stories.
4. ..... (be /you) ready?
5. Boys often ..... (prefers) playing football.

Unit 1
Lessons 3 & 4

Check Your Vocabulary

25

Vocabulary

جذاب	_____	قرية	_____
كبير/ضخم	_____	معتاد/نموذجى/مثالى	_____
فظيع/سيئ جدًا	_____	رسالة نصية	_____
مغامرة	_____	بطيخة	_____
سجن	_____	نزهة خلوية	_____
سكينة	_____	يتزوج	_____

Language Expressions & Prepositions

فى التلفاز	_____	يؤدى وظيفة	_____
يبعد عن	_____	يتبادل الأدوار	_____
ملىء بـ	_____	حريص على	_____

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

_____	يحضر	_____	_____
_____	يطعم	_____	_____

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
borrow	_____
near	_____
remember	_____

Definitions

_____: people without enough money

_____: the road that a train travels on

Unit 1
Lessons 3 & 4

Quiz

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

5

Speaking

Father is helping mother to cook lunch.

Father : Is lunch ready?
Mother: (1) _____ .
Father : (2) _____ ?
Mother: We'll have chicken with rice.
Father : I don't like eating rice.
Mother: (3) _____ ?
Father : Yes, pasta is delicious.
Mother: Can you help me make the salad?
Father : (4) _____ .
Mother: (5) _____ .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. The farmer doesn't need to _____ his goats as they can find their food in the mountains.
   a) eat b) feed c) play d) drink
2. Samir did something wrong, so he went to the _____ .
   a) clinic b) workshop c) prison d) hospital
3. My mum gets water from the outside _____ every morning.
   a) sofa b) tab c) tape d) tap
4. Living in the desert has a lot of _____ .
   a) houses b) adventures c) rooms d) shops
5. On a _____ school day, I get up at seven and go to school on foot.
   a) terrible b) typical c) empty d) bad
6. I have two jobs to _____ when I get home from school.
   a) have b) take c) make d) do
7. You should be careful _____ the knife.
   a) for b) on c) with d) at

Language

8. They _____ late for their lessons.
   a) are never b) never are c) never is d) is never
9. I always _____ hard for exams.
   a) studying b) studied c) studies d) study
10. Will you _____ me tomorrow?
    a) visited b) visits c) visit d) visiting

Unit 1
Lessons 5 & 6

Check Your Vocabulary

25

Vocabulary

صديق بالمراسلة	.....	يطابق/يتماشى مع	.....
محمية طبيعية	.....	كرسى ذو مساند	.....
مجاور/بالقرب من	.....	رف الكتب	.....
ضوء الشمس	.....	سجادة	.....
حمام	.....	وسائد	.....
حجره نوم	.....	خزانة ذات أدراج	.....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يرتدى ملابسه	.....	ينظر من	.....
يبحث عن	.....	على مسافة قصيرة من	.....
يلتقط صورًا فوتوغرافية	.....	تخص/ تنتمى لـ	.....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	.....	يحفظ/يحتفظ بـ	.....
.....	.....	يبيع	.....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
enjoy	.....
comfortable	.....

Definitions

.....: something you can wash your face in

.....: it is a big cupboard where you can put your clothes

.....: they are next to your windows and you close them at night

Unit 1 Lessons 5 & 6 — Quiz

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

5

Speaking

Mohammed meets Mahmoud for the first time.

Mohammed : Hello, my name's Mohammed. What's your name?
Mahmoud : (1) ..... . Nice to meet you.
Mohammed : (2) ..... ?
Mahmoud : I live with my family.
Mohammed : Do your grandparents live with you?
Mahmoud : (3) ..... . They live in the countryside.
Mohammed : (4) ..... ?
Mahmoud : There are five people in my family.
Mohammed : Have you got a penfriend?
Mahmoud : (5) ..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. My mother doesn't put many ..... on the floor.
   a) drawers b) cushions c) curtains d) carpets
2. I sometimes sleep ..... the curtains open.
   a) at b) to c) of d) with
3. I have a/an ..... in my room, where I can wash my face.
   a) armchair b) sofa c) lamp d) basin
4. My teacher advised me to ..... English to get better.
   a) practise b) exercise c) play d) listen
5. We have a big and ..... flat. It is very beautiful.
   a) attractive b) terrible c) bad d) strong
6. My mother ..... her clothes in a big wardrobe.
   a) makes b) keeps c) stays d) does
7. Why did you decide to look ..... a new job?
   a) up b) at c) after d) for

Language

8. Does your sister ..... up her bedroom every weekend?
   a) tidies b) tidy c) tidying d) tidied
9. He has a small shop. He ..... food and drinks.
   a) sell b) sells c) to sell d) selling
10. **A:** Do you watch videos every day? **B:** No, I ..... .
    a) don't b) didn't c) am not d) haven't

Unit 2
Lessons 1 & 2

Check Your Vocabulary

25

Vocabulary

جار	.....	جناح/قسم	_____
لغة الإشارة	.....	كشك الطعام	_____
فن الخط	.....	عامل مركز الاتصال	_____
الخياطة/الحياكة	.....	مهندس كمبيوتر	_____
فنان	.....	عامل فى محل	_____
أصم	.....	بائع طعام بالشارع	_____
المرضى	.....	ضابط شرطة	_____

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يصطاد سمكًا	.....	يعتنى بـ	_____
يتواصل مع	.....	يتأكد	_____
متحمس بخصوص	.....	يتطلع إلى	_____

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	.....	يسبح/يعوم	_____
.....	.....	يُعلم/يُدرس	_____
.....	.....	يتحدث	_____

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
hungry	.....
lovely	.....

Unit 2 Lessons 1 & 2 — Quiz

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. We usually ..... with our friends by emails.
   a) communicate b) temple c) say d) stay
2. Street-food sellers put their food ..... in the best places in the city.
   a) still b) stall c) stale d) sale
3. ..... are people whose job is to put out fires.
   a) Firefighters b) Nurses c) Police officers d) Dentists
4. The ..... use sign language to communicate with other people.
   a) blind b) deaf c) disabled d) fat
5. Patients with the same illness stay together in a hospital ..... .
   a) ward b) word c) war d) warm
6. Police officers make ..... that people are safe in the streets.
   a) shore b) ashore c) short d) sure
7. She worked as a/an ..... in a big hospital when she was young.
   a) seller b) worker c) nurse d) officer

Language

8. Look! Nancy ..... to school.
   a) cycling b) is cycling c) cycles d) cycle
9. The child ..... flowers to his mother at the moment.
   a) is giving b) gives c) gave d) give
10. They are having a rest. They ..... exercises now.
    a) aren't doing b) don't do c) haven't done d) are doing

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

5

1. My sister is ..... (shop) at the moment.
2. Why ..... (be) you laughing?
3. I ..... (read) a book now.
4. What ..... (you are) doing?
5. Mum is in the kitchen. She ..... (prepare) dinner.

Unit 2
Lessons 3 & 4

Check Your Vocabulary

25

Vocabulary

مخطط/مقلم	.....	صحراء	.....
الطبيعة	.....	حاد	.....
إنسان	.....	حفل زفاف	.....
عادى	.....	مطار	.....
السعادة	.....	حقيبة سفر	.....
ضيف	.....	حشد/جمهور	.....
بمفرده	.....	يعالج/يعامل	.....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يحصل على راحة	.....	يكوّن صداقات	.....
فى رحلة إلى	.....	يلحق بالطائرة	.....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	يفوز	.....	.....
.....	يخيط	.....	.....
.....	يختار	.....	.....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
dark	.....
friendly	.....

Definitions

..... : a boy or girl aged 13 - 19

..... : feeling happy about the good things in your life

Unit 2 Lessons 3 & 4 — Quiz

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. When you invite some friends to your house, they are your ..... .
   a) homes b) guests c) guesses d) glasses
2. To be honest with you, I'm very ..... for the good things you've done to me.
   a) lonely b) worried c) grateful d) greedy
3. You can eat and drink anything ..... the plane.
   a) for b) in c) on d) at
4. He looks after sick people and makes them ..... better.
   a) feel b) catch c) take d) have
5. Spend time with your family and also try to ..... new friends.
   a) do b) make c) spend d) stay
6. It's normal for teenagers to get ..... or to feel sad sometimes.
   a) worry b) worries c) worried d) worrying
7. She is getting married. Her ..... will be next week.
   a) desert b) wedding c) suitcase d) weeding

Language

8. We're sitting ..... on the rocks because they are very sharp!
   a) most careful b) more careful c) careful d) carefully
9. Always speak ..... to your parents.
   a) quietly b) quieter c) quietest d) quiet
10. Why are you running ....., Hani?
    a) quick b) quickly c) quicker d) quickest

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

5

1. They are singing ..... (beautiful).
2. Drive ..... (slow) when it is rainy.
3. The girls are playing ..... (happy) in the club.
4. They left ..... (sad) before we arrived.
5. Omar works ..... (hardly).

Unit 2
Lessons 5 & 6

Check Your Vocabulary

24

Vocabulary

مدرب	.....	يقلق	.....
ينجح فى	.....	شفقة/حزن	.....
يعد/يجهز	.....	أحسنت	.....
يتخيل	.....	تحيات	.....
مذهل	.....	يتحسن	.....
صعب	.....	تدريب كرة القدم	.....
تهانينا	.....	يفتقد	.....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يعتنى بـ	.....	بمرور الوقت	.....
مبروك على	.....	يرد على	.....
يتحدث إلى	.....	آسف لـ	.....
يجتاز امتحانا	.....	يقوم بساعات من الواجبات المنزلية	.....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
pass	.....
difficult	.....

Unit 2 Lessons 5 & 6 — Quiz

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

5

Speaking

Dalida's mother got a new job.

Dalida : My mother didn't go to work.
Heba : (1) _____?
Dalida : Because she is ill.
Heba : (2) _____.
Dalida : She had an interview at the bank for a new job, but she couldn't go.
Heba : (3) _____?
Dalida : She did the interview online from her bed.
Heba : (4) _____?
Dalida : Yes, she passed it and got the job!
Heba : (5) _____! I'm so happy for her.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. I'm _____ to be late again.
   a) fun b) happy c) good d) sorry
2. It's a _____ that you can't stay with us.
   a) pity b) fun c) wonder d) joy
3. I hope you _____ better soon.
   a) stay b) make c) take d) get
4. The bank didn't respond _____ our email.
   a) in b) at c) to d) for
5. We should _____ well for the next exams.
   a) guess b) prepare c) pass d) succeed
6. The _____ made the team train hard to win the next match.
   a) engineer b) nurse c) coach d) teacher
7. I'm pleased to hear good _____ about you.
   a) news b) shame c) pity d) equipment

Language

8. You _____ very hard today. Are you tired?
   a) aren't working b) are working c) working d) work
9. You can turn off the television. I am not _____ it.
   a) watch b) watches c) watched d) watching
10. **A:** Are you having a good time? **B:** No, _____ not.
    a) they are b) I are c) we are d) you are

Unit 3
Lessons 1 & 2

Check Your Vocabulary

25

Vocabulary

أميرة	_____	_____	وطنى/قومى
شجاع	_____	_____	علاج
يحسن/يطور	_____	_____	عامل فى جمعية خيرية
المباراة النهائية	_____	_____	دواء
ضد	_____	_____	عمل جماعى
جراح قلب	_____	_____	نووى

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يحصل على جائزة	_____	_____	يصنع بطُلا
يرمى فى داخل	_____	_____	يساعد فى
يجرى تجارب معملية	_____	_____	يفقد ساقًا

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

_____	_____	_____	بصبح
_____	_____	_____	يخسر
_____	_____	_____	يعنى/يقصد

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
dangerous	_____
junior	_____

Definitions

_____: an event when people try to get a prize by being the best at something

_____: a person who gives money to people or places

Unit 3 Lessons 1 & 2 — Quiz

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. While Omar was swimming, a ..... attacked him and he lost a leg.
   a) goat b) rabbit c) cat d) shark
2. My grandfather worked for a/an ..... which helped poor people.
   a) uniform b) charity c) competition d) heart
3. Magdy Yacoub stopped most of his work as a ..... a long time ago.
   a) surgeon b) coach c) junior d) senior
4. A doctor takes care of sick people and gives them ..... to be better.
   a) competition b) charity c) medicine d) cup
5. A ..... is the daughter of a king or a queen.
   a) princess b) prince c) maid d) ruler
6. Students go to a preparatory school after they finish a ..... school.
   a) nursery b) primary c) prep d) secondary
7. When did your favourite team last win a ..... ?
   a) coach b) charity c) uniform d) competition

Language

8. When did you ..... this beautiful dress, Laila?
   a) buy b) buying c) buys d) bought
9. ..... happy when he got a lot of presents on his birthday?
   a) He did b) Did he c) Was he d) He was
10. The film ..... at 08:30 last night.
    a) started b) starts c) start d) is starting

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

5

1. We ..... (play) football last weekend.
2. They ..... (be) at home yesterday afternoon.
3. The meeting didn't ..... (began) at eight o'clock in the morning.
4. Where ..... (were) you see your friends last holiday?
5. She ..... (make) breakfast yesterday.

Unit 3
Lessons 3 & 4

Check Your Vocabulary

25

Vocabulary

يتنفس	_____	طوارئ	_____
حرف/يحرف	_____	الرئتان	_____
يضخ/مضخة	_____	زلزال	_____
يعدى/يصيب	_____	ريف	_____
مكسور	_____	كارثة	_____
المخ	_____	متطوع	_____

Language Expressions & Prepositions

جرح فى	_____	يوقف العدوى/الالتهابات	_____
بدون ملاحظة	_____	مسرور من	_____
يقطع إلى أجزاء	_____	يقوم بعمل مشروع عن	_____

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

_____	_____	_____	يقع من
_____	_____	_____	يدفع ثمن

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
terrible	_____
ancient	_____
natural	_____

Definitions

_____ : feeling pleased with someone because you think they are or have done something very good

_____ : an organisation that helps people who need them

Unit 3 Lessons 3 & 4 — Quiz

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. Egyptians should be ..... of their country.
   a) ugly b) proud c) crazy d) polite
2. While Hany was cycling to school, he fell ..... his bike.
   a) with b) at c) to d) off
3. Ancient Egyptian doctors used plants to help people with burns and to ..... infections.
   a) suffer b) mean c) stop d) save
4. A volunteer is someone who works ..... no money to help people.
   a) by b) for c) at d) to
5. Can you tell me the ..... of the brain?
   a) infection b) history c) function d) charity
6. The heart ..... blood around the body.
   a) pumps b) collects c) makes d) does
7. Doctors help their ..... to get better.
   a) infections b) bones c) pumps d) patients

Language

8. I used to ..... short hair when I was a teenager.
   a) has b) had c) having d) have
9. She ..... to love playing tennis.
   a) won't use b) isn't using c) didn't use d) doesn't use
10. ..... your father use to have a car when he was young?
    a) Did b) Does c) Are d) Have

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

5

1. My family ..... (use/go) to the countryside for the weekend.
2. What music did you ..... (used) to like when you were a child?
3. We ..... (not/use) go to the cinema at weekends.
4. ..... (you/use) to eat fish when you were young?
5. She didn't ..... (used) be very tall when she was in school.

Unit 3
Lessons 5 & 6

Check Your Vocabulary

25

Vocabulary

بطولى	.....	مناقشة	.....
سبب	.....	جامع القمامة	.....
منظمة	.....	مجتمع	.....
يتحير/يرتبك	.....	لوحة/التلوين	.....
اختلاف	.....	عامل نظافة الشارع	.....
التعليم	.....	يشرح	.....
مدير التمريض	.....	تمثال	.....
مبنى	.....	رجل إطفاء	.....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يجمع القمامة	.....	مفيد لـ	.....
يعد ملصقًا إعلانيًا	.....	يضع فى المقام الأول	.....
يعطى معلومات	.....	خائف من	.....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
useful	.....
continue	.....
scared	.....

Unit 3
Lessons 5 & 6

Quiz

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

5

Speaking

Nader is asking Yasser about his family history.

Nader : When did your parents get married?
Yasser : (1) ..... .
Nader : Where did your parents use to live when they were children?
Yasser : (2) ..... .
Nader : (3) .....?
Yasser : My favourite toy was the car.
Nader : (4) .....?
Yasser : I like eating fish. What about you?
Nader : (5) ..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. Don't be scared ..... anything. You should be brave.
   a) from b) about c) at d) of
2. Everybody should speak in this ..... .
   a) difference b) organisation c) discussion d) education
3. What's the ..... between the two pictures?
   a) different b) difference c) differ d) differently
4. She is interested in art. She has wonderful ..... .
   a) books b) statues c) paintings d) bottles
5. We visited the Egyptian Museum and saw many ..... there.
   a) reasons b) organisations c) statues d) islands
6. A/An ..... is the person who has the job of keeping our streets clean.
   a) engineer b) street cleaner c) nurse d) manager
7. When my mother was younger, she worked at a hospital and ..... her studies.
   a) continued b) explained c) saved d) kept

Language

8. I didn't ..... get up late when I was a pupil.
   a) used b) used to c) use to d) use
9. We ..... some nice presents for our mother last Mother's Day.
   a) bought b) buy c) to buy d) buying
10. We played in a junior competition, but we ..... .
    a) win b) weren't win c) didn't win d) won

Unit 4
Lessons 1 & 2

Check Your Vocabulary

25

Vocabulary

مرشد	_____	قوس/قنطرة	_____
تذكرة	_____	أطلال	_____
سباق	_____	مسجد	_____
غداء النزهة	_____	معبد	_____
أثرى/قديم جدًا	_____	مسرح	_____
يتصرف	_____	ثقافة	_____
عصر/عهد	_____	تمثال	_____

Language Expressions & Prepositions

مهتم بـ	_____	بعيدًا عن	_____
متحمس بخصوص	_____	مدخل لـ	_____
يعود/يرجع إلى	_____	يلقى القصامة	_____

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
national	_____
protect	_____

Definitions

_____: what you can see from the top of something

_____: a place that has very strong walls

_____: important in history

Unit 4 Lessons 1 & 2 — Quiz

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. We went to the ..... to watch an important match.
   a) stadium b) hospital c) statue d) arch
2. This building is ..... . A lot of people like visiting it.
   a) frightening b) terrible c) unimportant d) awesome
3. Dropping rubbish ..... the environment.
   a) behaves b) collects c) damages d) cleans
4. A kind person always ..... well.
   a) sleeps b) plays c) travels d) behaves
5. You mustn't ..... the objects in the museum.
   a) touch b) behave c) protect d) save
6. We're going to be away for the whole day, so you must bring a ..... lunch.
   a) backed b) packed c) booked d) peaked
7. The tour ..... explained how old the temples are.
   a) teacher b) sailor c) guide d) driver

Language

8. You ..... listen to your teachers carefully.
   a) shouldn't b) can't c) mustn't d) must
9. You ..... use a mobile phone in class.
   a) mustn't b) must c) could d) should
10. You must ..... your ticket before you enter the theatre.
    a) bought b) buy c) buying d) to buy

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

5

1. Students must ..... (arrived) at school on time.
2. What ..... (we must) do in the museum?
3. You ..... (must) climb the Pyramids or sit on them.
4. I mustn't ..... (am) late. It's the most important meeting of the year.
5. You ..... (mustn't) stay in bed when you are ill.

Unit 4
Lessons 3 & 4

Check Your Vocabulary

25

Vocabulary

مرآة	.....	عقد/قلادة	.....
موظف التذاكر	.....	سلطانية	.....
يصمم/تصميم	.....	شكل (بشرى)	.....
الطين/الصلصال	.....	خاتم	.....
مكونات/مقادير	.....	معدات	.....
كيميائى/مادة كيميائية	.....	محطة	.....
ورق/نبات البردى	.....	زبون	.....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يبدو جيدًا	.....	يعد خبزًا/ طعامنا	.....
يُبعد	.....	تذكرة لـ	.....
يخلع ملابسه/حذاءه	.....	ماذا يعرض؟	.....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يكلف	.....	.....	.....
يرسم	.....	.....	.....

Definitions

..... : pieces of money made of metal

..... : a piece of equipment you can use to make or repair things

..... : a pot used for holding flowers

Unit 4
Lessons 3 & 4

Quiz

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

5

Speaking

Ahmed is phoning the theatre to book a ticket.

Assistant: How can I help you?
Ahmed : Can you tell me what times the theatre is open?
Assistant: (1)..... .
Ahmed : (2).....?
Assistant: It's 100 pounds.
Ahmed : (3).....?
Assistant: Children under five are free.
Ahmed : Can I buy the tickets online?
Assistant: (4)..... . Anything else?
Ahmed : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. People usually boil water in ..... .
   a) bins b) pots c) tabs d) lambs
2. The pharaohs were the first to write on ..... .
   a) papyrus b) figure c) clay d) metal
3. A ..... is something people wear to cover or protect their faces.
   a) gloves b) helmet c) sock d) mask
4. If you look at a ....., you will see yourself.
   a) tap b) carpet c) mirror d) curtain
5. In the museum, we saw tall doors with amazing ..... on them.
   a) pots b) vases c) tools d) designs
6. We must take ..... our shoes before we enter the mosque.
   a) off b) of c) on d) with
7. A ..... is a pot used for holding flowers.
   a) vase b) necklace c) mask d) tool

Language

8. While ..... the match, I fell asleep.
   a) was watching b) were watching c) watching d) watch
9. As we ..... a football match, it started to rain.
   a) play b) were playing c) played d) plays
10. Mazen was watching TV when he ..... a loud noise.
    a) hear b) hears c) heard d) was hearing

Unit 4
Lessons 5 & 6

Check Your Vocabulary

24

Vocabulary

فرعون	.....	.....	السياحة
حاكم	.....	.....	شركة لتنظيم الإجازات
قيّم	.....	.....	أتوبيس كهربائى
قرن (١٠٠ عام)	.....	.....	البيئة
خاص/مميز	.....	.....	السكان المحليون
آثار	.....	.....	تقرير
إبرة/مسلة	.....	.....	يدمر/يضر/يتلف
مناقشة/مناظرة	.....	.....	يسبب

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يحترس من	.....	.....	يسبّب تلوثًا
يحدث لـ	.....	.....	يتبع القواعد/لافتات
يصعد	.....	.....	أشكال/أنواع النقل

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
agree	.....
war	.....

Unit 4 Lessons 5 & 6 — Quiz

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

5

Speaking

Nawal and Salem are talking about watching TV.

Nawal : What do you think, Salem? Is watching TV useful?
Salem : (1) .....
Nawal : I don't think so.
Salem : (2) .....?
Nawal : Because watching TV is bad for our brains.
Salem : (3) ..... . We can get information from TV.
Nawal : I see what you mean. But some people spend too much time watching TV.
Salem : (4) .....?
Nawal : We should spend little time watching TV.
Salem : (5) ..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. Egypt has many ..... that tourists like to see.
   a) debates b) reports c) rulers d) monuments
2. ..... can bring more money to the country.
   a) Tourism b) A debate c) Pollution d) A company
3. Tourists ..... litter and damage historic places.
   a) cause b) collect c) follow d) drop
4. The ..... is the places where we live.
   a) war b) fact c) environment d) ruler
5. We had a ..... in our class about helping the environment.
   a) debate b) report c) ruler d) plan
6. The 21st ..... is the age of technology and internet.
   a) week b) year c) century d) month
7. ..... people are people who live in one area.
   a) Electric b) Strange c) Special d) Local

Language

8. While I ..... my room, my friends came.
   a) clean b) cleaned c) cleaning d) was cleaning
9. When children speak to adults, they ..... say Mr or Miss and the name.
   a) must b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) can't
10. When I ..... up this morning, it was raining heavily.
    a) get b) getting c) got d) was getting

Unit 5
Lessons 1 & 2

Check Your Vocabulary

25

Vocabulary

يمارس	.....	.....	عنوان (منزل)
أفعال/أعمال	.....	.....	شقة
مسافة قصيرة	.....	.....	رائع
كرسى متحرك	.....	.....	مراهق
يفحص/يتحقق/يراجع	.....	.....	البائع
نصائح	.....	.....	إعلان

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يصنع نموذجًا	.....	.....	يركب الأتوبيس
يهتم/يعتنى بـ	.....	.....	يؤدى وظيفة
ينفق مالًا على	.....	.....	يرتب
يضع شيئًا فى مكانه	.....	.....	يخرج/يزيل شيئًا

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
right	.....
surprised	.....

Definitions

..... : when you do things to help others and show you care about them

..... : happening without a plan

..... : people you don't know

Unit 5 Lessons 1 & 2 — Quiz

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. We should ..... random acts of kindness for the people we know or we don't know.
   a) get b) put c) make d) do
2. The film is ..... . You should watch it.
   a) terrible b) bad c) boring d) fantastic
3. I usually look ..... my baby brother when my parents are away.
   a) after b) for c) up d) at
4. Kareem's cousin is ..... and never puts his book away.
   a) cruel b) messy c) serious d) tidy
5. He always has a big ..... on his face.
   a) car b) smile c) smell d) house
6. Random means happening without a ..... .
   a) plane b) plant c) plan d) panel
7. She uses a/an ..... because she can't walk.
   a) seat b) armchair c) wheelchair d) sofa

Language

8. You ..... pass your exams to go to university.
   a) should b) don't have to c) have to d) doesn't have to
9. Does he ..... get up early on Fridays?
   a) has b) have c) has to d) have to
10. We ..... eat unhealthy food.
    a) shouldn't b) should c) must d) don't have

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

5

1. Children ..... (should) eat too many sweets.
2. My father ..... (have to) go to the supermarket every week.
3. ..... (he/have) to wear his school uniform?
4. We should ..... (are) kind to poor people.
5. My mother ..... (not/have) to cook today. There's lots of food in the fridge.

Unit 5
Lessons 3 & 4

Check Your Vocabulary

25

Vocabulary

يطعم	.....	يعيد تدوير/تصنيع	.....
مدير المدرسة	.....	حذاء رياضى	.....
خادم	.....	مقتطفات	.....
مخبز	.....	معاق	.....
صيدلى	.....	يتبرع	.....
يمثل	.....	جار	.....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

مؤدب مع	.....	يضل الطريق	.....
صعب لـ	.....	ينجح فى الامتحانات	.....
يعمل لدى	.....	يؤدى عملًا خيريًا	.....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
delicious	.....
cruel	.....
rich	.....

Definitions

..... : a small area and the people who live in it

..... : the daughter of a king or queen

..... : a poor person who asks others for money, etc.

..... : a school where students live all the time

Unit 5 Lessons 3 & 4 — Quiz

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. Don't be ..... to animals. They feel like us.
   a) friendly b) gentle c) kind d) cruel
2. People who can't use one of their body parts are ..... .
   a) disabled b) brave c) strong d) dangerous
3. My parents ..... money to a charity which helps disabled people.
   a) donate b) earn c) win d) gain
4. I often see a ..... in the street asking people for money.
   a) worker b) manager c) cleaner d) beggar
5. ..... is good for the environment.
   a) Throwing b) Damaging c) Driving d) Recycling
6. Heba helps her mother ..... the chickens.
   a) go b) feed c) work d) play
7. He will go to a/an ..... school where he will live all the time.
   a) outside b) boarding c) national d) government

Language

8. Hurghada is the place ..... I spend my holiday.
   a) that b) who c) where d) when
9. A baker is a person ..... sells bread.
   a) who b) when c) whose d) where
10. This is the house ..... I bought.
    a) who b) which c) when d) where

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

5

1. This is the museum ..... (who) the school visited last year.
2. The market is a place ..... (which) I often get lost!
3. This is the girl ..... (which) can sing well.
4. I gave the shoes ..... (who) are too small for me to my cousin.
5. Is this the player ..... (which) won the cup?

Unit 5
Lessons 5 & 6

Check Your Vocabulary

25

Vocabulary

تمطر ثلجًا	.....	تبرع	.....
مشمس	.....	سيدة أعمال	.....
معمل	.....	يتبرع	.....
جغرافيًا	.....	رجل الإطفاء	.....
عنوان (موضوع)	.....	صياد سمك	.....
كوبرى/جسر	.....	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	.....
مقصف/كانتين	.....	جريدة	.....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

على ناصية الشارع	.....	يقدم اقتراحات	.....
يعتقد/يفكر فى	.....	يتخذ قرارًا	.....
يحارب (يخمد) النار	.....	يعطى رأيًا	.....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
agree	.....
helpful	.....

Definitions

..... : not tidy

..... : this takes you to the top of a building, without using the stairs

..... : you put rubbish in these

Unit 5
Lessons 5 & 6

Quiz

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

5

Speaking

Yara is phoning Sara to spend the weekend together.

Yara : Hi Sara, would you like to do something with me this weekend?
Sara : Sure. (1)..... .
Yara : OK, but which film then?
Sara : (2)..... .
Yara : I'm not sure. I don't like action films.
Sara : (3).....?
Yara : Perhaps we should watch the funny film "Mad Doctor Brown".
Sara : Good idea. (4).....?
Yara : It's on at 8 p.m.
Sara : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. We think it is important to help people in the ..... .
   a) straight b) environment c) electricity d) community
2. A ..... is the person who saves people from fires.
   a) headteacher b) firefighter c) scientist d) nurse
3. All people in Egypt are talking about Salah's ..... to a charity in his village.
   a) station b) suggestion c) donation d) education
4. She's kind and ..... . She helps me with my homework.
   a) helpful b) helpless c) unkind d) busy
5. A scientist does experiments in the ..... .
   a) playground b) hall c) library d) laboratory
6. Don't cross that ..... . It's broken in the middle.
   a) fridge b) street c) bridge d) road
7. This building is very tall, but we can go to the top in the ..... .
   a) lift b) left c) attic d) stairs

Language

8. We have lost the bag ..... we put all our presents in.
   a) who b) where c) which d) no word
9. You ..... remember to close the windows when you leave the house.
   a) mustn't b) don't have to c) have to d) has to
10. You ..... take a bus, I'll drive you to school.
    a) don't have to b) must c) should d) can

Unit 6
Lessons 1&2

Check Your Vocabulary

24

Vocabulary

رسم بيانى خطى	_____	تلوث	_____
رسم بيانى شريطى	_____	الطاقة الخضراء النظيفة	_____
إعادة التدوير/التصنيع	_____	كهربائى/يدار بالكهرباء	_____
المحور الصادى	_____	قناة	_____
سقوط الأمطار	_____	وقود	_____
مساحة/منطقة	_____	يحذر	_____
كوكب	_____	التغير المناخى	_____
مستخدم	_____	عرض تقديمى	_____
يسبب	_____	درجة الحرارة	_____

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يقدم تقريرًا من ... لـ	_____	فى برنامج	_____
على قمة	_____	يتحدث إلى	_____
باللغة الإنجليزية	_____	حريص بشأن	_____

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
drought	_____
melt	_____

Unit 6 Lessons 1 & 2 — Quiz

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. There was no rain for 4 months this winter, so now there is a ..... .
   a) figure b) flood c) wind d) drought
2. People should use ..... cars that don't pollute the environment.
   a) coal b) oil c) petrol d) electric
3. Pollution can ..... climate change.
   a) cause b) stop c) damage d) save
4. In hot weather, the ..... gets very high.
   a) culture b) temperature c) heat d) climate
5. There are so many cars in big cities and this causes much air ..... .
   a) pollute b) pollutes c) polluted d) pollution
6. Modern cars have comfortable ..... than old ones.
   a) drawers b) sofas c) seats d) chairs
7. Egypt has a warm ..... all over the year.
   a) climate b) weather c) air d) wind

Language

8. Which is ....., the train or the plane?
   a) fastest b) faster c) fast d) as fast as
9. He writes in English as ..... as he speaks it.
   a) most careful b) more careful c) careful d) carefully
10. I do not earn as ..... money as you do.
    a) much b) more c) less d) little

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The canal is ..... (polluted) than it was before.
2. The hotel is ..... (comfortable) than the holiday flat.
3. Europe is not ..... (as large) Asia.
4. Shams is ..... (tall) than Hoda.
5. Is your cousin ..... (old) than your brother?

Unit 6
Lessons 3 & 4

Check Your Vocabulary

25

Vocabulary

يقدم	.....	.....	محمية طبيعية
موطن	.....	.....	مذيع/مقدم برنامج
بث إذاعى	.....	.....	عسل أسود
ينتج	.....	.....	شركة سياحة
يحترم	.....	.....	شعب مرجانية
الحياة البرية	.....	.....	تركيز
رئيسى/أساسى	.....	.....	مكانة/موقع

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يذهب للغطس	.....	.....	على امتداد النهر
مهتم بـ	.....	.....	متصل/مرتبط بـ
يمارس رياضات مائية	.....	.....	مشهور بـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	ينمو	.....	.....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
lovely	.....
positive	.....

Definitions

..... : find the position of something

..... : a long area of water made for ships or boats

Unit 6 Lessons 3 & 4 — Quiz

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. Sidi Bou Said is ..... in north Tunisia.
   a) located b) caught c) infected d) stayed
2. My uncle has a factory that ..... children's toys.
   a) damages b) produces c) introduces d) saves
3. Rubbish in the river damages the ..... .
   a) temperature b) climate c) weather d) wildlife
4. Many ancient ..... and buildings are found in Egypt.
   a) apartments b) advertisements c) monuments d) equipment
5. Minya is known for its delicious black ..... .
   a) honey b) energy c) fuel d) gas
6. Nowadays, summer has high ..... because climate is changing.
   a) environment b) marks c) temperature d) numbers
7. In a ....., there are x-axis and y-axis.
   a) bar chart b) line graph c) histogram d) pie chart

Language

8. My favourite city ..... in the mountains.
   a) located b) locates c) is located d) is locating
9. The furniture ..... by Ahmed.
   a) is bought b) buy c) bought d) are bought
10. Sugarcane is ..... in Upper Egypt.
    a) grow b) grown c) grew d) grows

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

5

1. Cotton clothes ..... (sell) all over the world.
2. English ..... (speak) all over the world.
3. Tanta ..... (know) for its delicious sweets.
4. Honey ..... (make) from sugar.
5. Who ..... (does) your food cooked by?

Unit 6
Lessons 5&6

Check Your Vocabulary

25

Vocabulary

رسم توضيحى/بيانى	.....	يهدف إلى	.....
وسط البلد	.....	حل	.....
ينصهر/يذوب	.....	يحرق	.....
حدث	.....	يعيد استخدام	.....
عالمى	.....	أهمية	.....
غاز	.....	ضفة النهر	.....
مشتملًا على/متضمنا	.....	تعبيرات	.....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يستلقى على الشاطئ	.....	يحل مشكلة	.....
يصبح أكثر دفئًا	.....	يتحقق من الأخطاء	.....
ينظف	.....	يصوت على	.....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
true	.....
interesting	.....

Definitions

_____: it happens when there is too much rain

_____: it happens when the planet gets warmer

_____: It happens when there is too much smoke from factories

Unit 6 Lessons 5 & 6 — Quiz

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

5

Speaking

Ramy suggests going to the Citadel.

Ramy : Hello, Samy. What about going to the Citadel?
Samy : (1) ..... .
Ramy : (2) .....?
Samy : We can go there by taxi.
Ramy : (3) .....?
Samy : Salah El-Din Al-Ayouby built it.
Ramy : Why did he build it?
Samy : (4) ..... .
Ramy : Is it a historic building?
Samy : (5) ..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

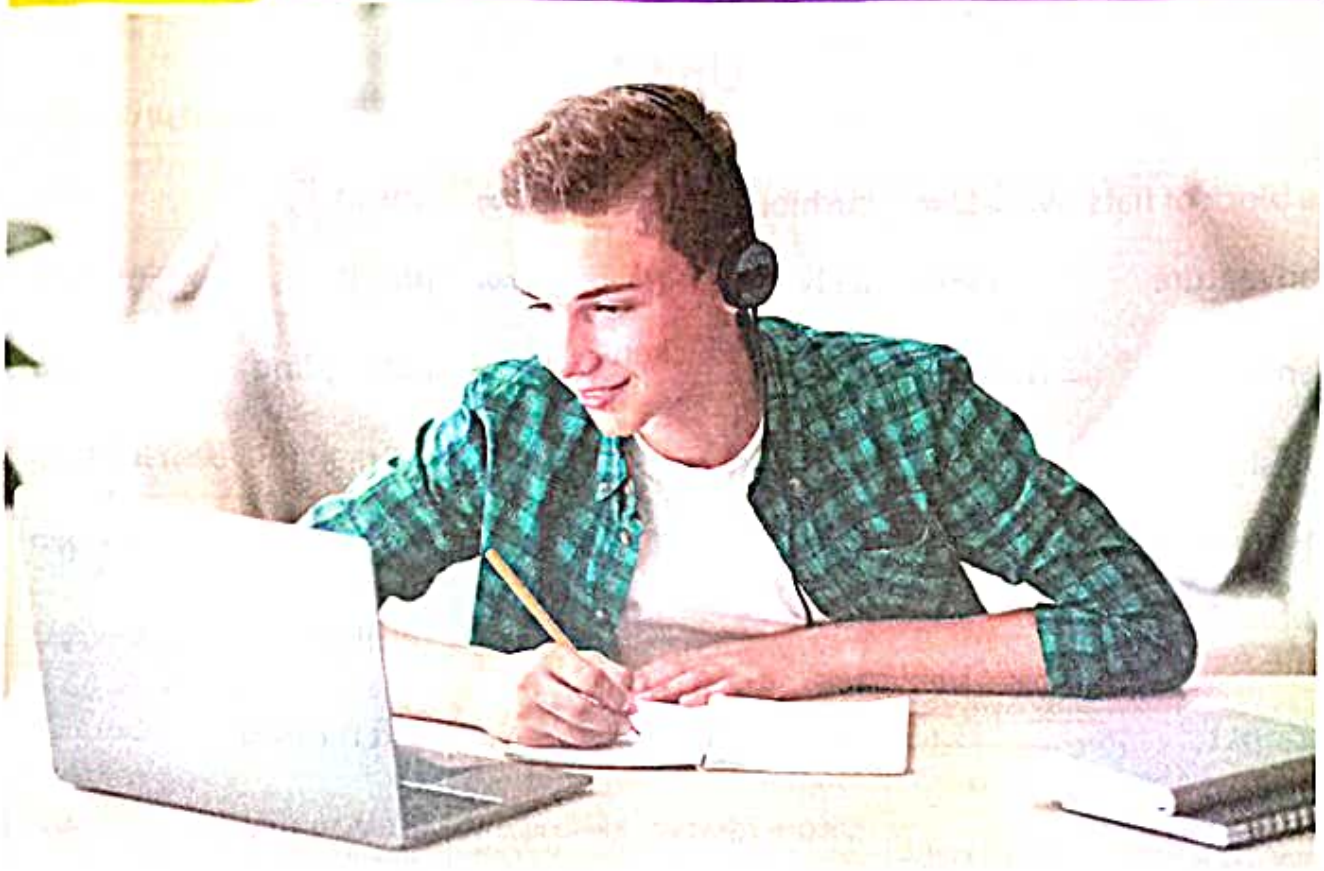
Vocabulary

1. Climate change can cause ice on tops of mountains to ..... .
   a) dry b) melt c) snow d) rain
2. A terrible ....., such as an earthquake, is a disaster.
   a) riverbank b) solution c) diagram d) event
3. Adults are the people who are able to ..... and choose the person they want.
   a) vote b) vet c) vat d) veal
4. A lot of our rubbish is ..... and this can lead to climate change.
   a) burnt b) cleaned c) collected d) solved
5. People in my local area decided to clean up the ..... to reduce water pollution.
   a) garden b) park c) riverbank d) street
6. Our project aims to ..... people of the importance of tourism.
   a) remind b) remember c) forget d) warn
7. My mother always tells me how to ..... my problem alone.
   a) attack b) kill c) solve d) collect

Language

8. A holiday by the sea is ..... than a holiday in the mountains.
   a) the better b) good c) best d) better
9. The hotel rooms ..... daily.
   a) are clean b) are cleaned c) is cleaned d) clean
10. Where ..... computers made nowadays?
    a) do b) did c) can d) are

Part 2 Final Revision



1	Vocabulary Revision on Each 2 Units	مراجعة عامة على أهم الكلمات الخاصة بكل وحدتين
2	Language Revision on Each 2 Units	مراجعة عامة على أهم القواعد الخاصة بكل وحدتين
3	Speaking Revision on Each 2 Units	مراجعة عامة على أهم المحادثات الخاصة بكل وحدتين
4	Writing Revision on Each 2 Units	مراجعة عامة على أهم الموضوعات الكتابية الخاصة بكل وحدتين
5	Al-Adwaa Monthly Test	اختبار الأضواء الشهرى

Units 1 & 2 **October Revision**

A Vocabulary

Unit 1

Key Vocabulary — لمفردات الرئيسية

a block of flats	عمارة سكنية	cushions	وسائد	prison	سجن
adventure	مغامرة	daily	يومى	profile	الملف الشخصى
armchair	كرسى ذو ذراعين	feed the chickens	يطعم الدجاج	railway line	خط سكة حديد
basin	حوض	interview	مقابلة/حوار	routine	روتين/نظام يومى
bookshelf	رف الكتب	lamp	مصباح	tap	صنبور/حنفية
breakfast break	استراحة الإفطار	marry (~~y~~ied)	يتزوج	terrible	فظيع/سيئ جدًا
carpet	سجادة	mirror	مرآة	text message	رسالة نصية
chest of drawers	خزانة ذات أدراج	nature reserve	محمية طبيعية	the country	الريف
cupboard	دولاب	penfriend	صديق بالمراسلة	typical	نموذجى/مثالى
curtains	ستائر	picnic	نزهة خلوية	wardrobe	دولاب ملابس

Language Expressions and Prepositions — لتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

at the end of	فى نهاية	have a routine	لديه روتين/نظام يومى
belong to	تخص/تنتمى لـ	help with	يساعد فى
careful with	حريص على	look for	يبحث عن
different for	مختلف بالنسبة لـ	on the front	فى المقدمة
do a job	يؤدى وظيفة	share with	يشارك مع
find out about	يكتشف عن	take turns	يتبادل الأدوار
full of	ملىء بـ	a reply to	ردًا على

Unit 2

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

airport	مطار	friendly	ودود	sewing	الخياطة
wave	يلوح بيده	grateful	ممتن/شاكر	sign language	لغة الإشارة
call-centre worker	عامل مركز الاتصال	greetings	تحيات	skill	مهارة
calligraphy	فن الخط	guest	ضيف	skin	جلد
coach	مدرب	happiness	السعادة	street-food seller	بائع طعام بالشارع
computer engineer	مهندس كمبيوتر	neighbour	جار	striped	مقلم/مخطط
congratulations	تهانينا	normal	عادى	suitcase	حقيبة سفر
crowds	الحشد/الجمهور	park (ed)	يركن السيارة	teenager	مراهق
deaf	أصم	patients	المرضى	treat (ed)	يعامل/يعالج
desert	صحراء	prepare (d)	يعد/يجهز	ward	جناح (فى مستشفى)
food stall	كشك الطعام	repair (ed)	يصلح	wedding	حفل زفاف

Language Expressions and Prepositions — التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

give a surprise	يفاجئ	make friends	يكون صداقات
by the fountain	بجوار النافورة	make sure	يتأكد
catch a plane	يلحق بالطائرة	get married	يتزوج
communicate with	يتواصل مع	on a boat	فى قارب
congratulations on	مبروك على	pass an exam	يجتاز امتحانا
feel better	يشعر بتحسن	pleased about	مسرور بخصوص
have/take/get a rest	يأخذ/يحصل على راحة	smile at	يبتسم أمام
look (ed) after	يعتنى بـ	speak to	يتحدث إلى
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	take a selfie	يلتقط صورة شخصية

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mother always ..... dinner at seven o'clock.
   a) gives b) takes c) makes d) does
2. My father likes to read ..... the sofa in the evening.
   a) to b) at c) in d) on
3. I want to ..... my friend to tell him the good news.
   a) text b) make c) have d) give
4. She doesn't like sending text ..... .
   a) emails b) messages c) photos d) addresses
5. My English teacher asked us to ..... many different projects.
   a) make b) have c) do d) spend
6. There isn't enough light. I have to change this ..... .
   a) lamp b) lamb c) lip d) lab
7. Well ....., Yasser! The coach says that you will be in the football team.
   a) made b) done c) taken d) said
8. A ..... prepare food for people to eat in the street.
   a) nurse b) doctor c) police officer d) street-food seller
9. Samira is ....., so she can't see.
   a) patient b) blind c) dear d) deaf
10. You mustn't ..... your car here. It's not allowed.
    a) catch b) hold c) park d) carry
11. Boys and girls who are from 13 to 19 are ..... .
    a) teenagers b) babies c) old people d) children
12. When two young people get married, they give a ..... party.
    a) pudding b) wedding c) weeding d) budding
13. My father is driving ..... because it's raining heavily.
    a) carefully b) loudly c) quick d) hungrily
14. The ..... made the team train hard to win the next match.
    a) engineer b) nurse c) coach d) teacher
15. I can't ..... life without the internet. It's everything in my life.
    a) prefer b) win c) carry d) imagine

B Language

Unit 1

1 The present simple tense

Form

I, We, They, You + inf.
He, She, It + inf. + (s, es, ies)

Ex: - **I** play football at the club. - **She** cooks fish every week.

Usage

It's used to express facts and habits.
- We write English from left to right. (Fact)
- My father usually goes to work by car. (Habit)

Negative

I, We, They, You + don't + **inf.**
He, She, It + doesn't + **inf.**

Ex: - **I** don't **walk** to school.
- **Habiba** doesn't **like** cake.

Question

Do/Does + subject + **inf.**?

Ex: - Do you **play** football? - Does Hadeer **like** music?

Q. word + do/does + subject + **inf.**?

Ex: - Where does Ali **live**? - How often do they **walk** to school?

Key words

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

always دائمًا – usually عادةً – often غالبًا – sometimes أحيانًا – never أبدًا

Ex: - I always **get up** at 11 o'clock.

2 How to form a question

Sentence الجملة	Question السؤال
- No, **I** haven't got a laptop.	- Have **you** got a laptop?
- Yes, **they** like fish.	- Do **they** like fish?
- Yes, **Ahmed** plays a sport.	- Does **Ahmed** play a sport?
- Yes, **Aya** made lunch.	- Did **Aya** make lunch?
- **I'd** like to have fish.	- What would **you** like to have?
- **Ola** goes to school on foot.	- How does **Ola** go to school?
- **Salma** bought a new dress last week.	- What did **Salma** buy last week?

Unit 2

1 The present continuous tense

Form

Subject + (am/is/are) + **v.ing**

Ex: - I am **playing** chess. - He is **having** lunch.

- They are **sleeping**.

Usage

It's used to express things that are happening now.

- I can't go out with you because I'm doing my homework.

Negative

Subject + (am/is/are) + not + **v.ing**

- I am not **playing** chess. - She is not (isn't) **watching** TV.

- They are not (aren't) **studying** English.

Question

(Am/Is/Are) + subject + **v.ing**?

Ex: - Are you **learning** sign language? - Is Sara **cooking** lunch?

Q. word + (am/is/are) + subject + **v.ing**?

Ex: - What are you **doing**? - Where is Marawan **going**?

Key words

at the moment فى هذه اللحظة – Look! انظر! – Listen! انصت! – Watch out! احترس! –

now الآن – at present فى الوقت الحاضر

- My grandfather **is repairing** his laptop now.
- My uncle **is watching** TV at the moment.

2 Adverbs of manner

- نستخدم الصفة لوصف الاسم بينما نستخدم الظرف أو الحال لوصف الفعل.
- يمكن تحويل الصفة إلى ظرف بإضافة (ly) للصفة.

- Mr **Said** is kind. He **treats** his children kindly.
- Mr Adel **speaks** loudly.
- I can **climb** this tree easily.
- I'm sitting under a tree and hungrily **eating** my lunch.

هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة (تحفظ كما هى):

fast	سريع	fast	بسرعة	hard	جاد	hard	بجدية	good	جيد	well	جيدًا
late	متأخر	late	متأخرًا	early	مبكر	early	مبكرًا				

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My sister ..... good at English.
   a) always is b) is always c) never is d) does always
2. How often ..... she eat fish a month?
   a) can b) has c) is d) does
3. Sometimes, my cousins ..... and stay with us.
   a) coming b) come c) are coming d) comes
4. Sameer lives next to our house, so we ..... see him.
   a) often b) never c) hardly d) don't
5. **A:** ..... do you do karate? **B:** Twice a week.
   a) How long b) How often c) When d) Where
6. ..... Sally and Nancy go shopping every month?
   a) Do b) Have c) Are d) Were
7. My brothers ..... the car. They aren't watching TV.
   a) washes b) are washing c) washing d) washed
8. What ..... you doing now?
   a) will b) do c) have d) are
9. Mahy is writing a letter at the moment. She ..... her homework.
   a) doesn't do b) is doing c) does d) isn't doing
10. Listen! She ..... beautifully.
    a) is singing b) sings c) singing d) sing
11. She decided to leave the party ..... .
    a) slow b) slower c) slowly d) slowest
12. He can speak ..... English.
    a) good b) well c) better d) best

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What time ..... (does) your first lesson?
2. My brother ..... (always is) a clever tennis player.
3. What ..... (you/eat/usually) for dinner?
4. I can't help you now. I ..... (do) a school project.
5. She ..... (read) a book at the moment.
6. Please, speak ..... (quiet). The baby is sleeping.

C Skills

1. Speaking

Unit 1

Discussing daily routines

مناقشة الروتين اليومى

What time do you get up? — متى تستيقظ؟

I always get up at six a.m. — أستيقظ دائمًا فى السادسة صباحًا.

How do you get to school? — كيف تصل للمدرسة؟

I usually get to school by bike. — عادة أصل بالدراجة.

Where do you live? — أين تعيش؟

I live in Alexandria. — أعيش فى الإسكندرية.

What do you do in your free time? — ماذا تفعل فى وقت فراغك؟

I usually read a book. — عادة أقرأ كتابًا.

Unit 2

Responding to news

الرد على الأخبار

Good news — الأخبار الجيدة	Bad news — الأخبار السيئة
Well done! — أحسنت!	I'm sorry to hear that. — حزين لسماع ذلك.
That's great news! — إنها أخبار عظيمة!	I hope he gets better soon. — أتمنى أن يتحسن قريبًا (تقال فى المرض).
Congratulations! — مبروك/تهانينا!	It's a pity that you ... . — من المحزن-الشفقة أنك ... .
I'm so happy for you. — أنا سعيد جدًا من أجلك.	That must be difficult. But don't worry. — من المؤكد أن هذا صعب، ولكن لاتقلق.
	Don't worry. I'm sure things will get better with time. — لا تقلق. أنا متأكد أن الأمور سوف تتحسن بمرور الوقت.

2. Write it right

Unit 1

How to write about a daily routine

My family's daily routine

My name's Basmala. I live on the second floor of the new block of flats with my dad, mum, grandma and two brothers. I always get up at 6 o'clock on a school day. My mother always makes my breakfast. I walk to school with my two brothers. My father goes to work at 7:30 a.m. He works in a school. Sometimes, I walk to school with my father. I never go to school late. We usually have lunch at five together. In the evenings, I do my homework. I often play chess with my grandma before I go to bed. I sometimes listen to music. We often go to the park at the weekends. I like to play on the grass there. I really enjoy my routine.

Unit 2

How to write about the job you like

The job I like

There are many interesting jobs. I think the doctor's job is the most important one. He/She helps us get better after being sick. I look forward to becoming a doctor one day to look after the sick and to try to find out the reason for that. He/She always looks after ill people and tries to find out why they are ill or what hurts them. If a doctor understands their illness, he/she gives them the right medicines to feel better. A good doctor usually makes sure that all people feel healthy. The nurse's job is important as she helps doctors and patients. They are truly angels. We have to work hard to have the jobs of our dreams.

Tapescript

Al-Adwaa October Test on Units 1 & 2

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. When does Sally get up?
   a) At 6:30 a.m. b) At 6:30 p.m. c) At 6:15 a.m. d) At 6:15 p.m.
2. Who is a teacher?
   a) Father. b) Mother. c) Sister. d) a & b
3. Who makes breakfast?
   a) Father. b) Mother. c) Sister. d) Sally
4. How does Sally go to school?
   a) On a bike. b) By car. c) On foot. d) By bus.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Nahed is asking Reham about her daily routine.

Nahed :Where do you live?
Reham :(1)..... .
Nahed :(2).....?
Reham :I live with my family.
Nahed :Do you usually have dinner with your family?
Reham :(3)..... .
Nahed :How often do you do exercise?
Reham :(4)..... .
Nahed :(5).....?
Reham :I like to go to parks on holiday.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Every morning, I wake up at 6 a.m. I brush my teeth. Then, I go to the kitchen and make breakfast. I usually have eggs and some toast. At the weekend, I have cheese and milk. I usually read the news while having breakfast. After I finish breakfast, I wash the dishes. I leave the house at 7:30. I usually take the train to work.

It takes about 40 minutes. I arrive at work at around 8:10. I have lunch there. I usually finish work at 6:00. I arrive home at about 7:00. I cook dinner. I usually listen to music while eating dinner. After dinner, I read for about an hour on the sofa. I watch TV before I go to bed at 10:00.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the best title for this text?

.....

2. When does the writer like to read the news?

.....

3. Do you think the writer works in a school? Why/Why not?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "there" refers to ..... .
   a) work b) home c) train d) nothing
5. The writer reads on the ..... before watching TV.
   a) table b) bed c) sofa d) armchair
6. The underlined word "around" means ..... .
   a) by b) exactly c) about d) near

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He went to the ..... to catch his plane.
   a) port b) station c) airport d) metro
2. He lives next to my uncle. He is his ..... .
   a) neighbour b) tourist c) guest d) worker
3. He asks me to ..... at the camera to take a photo.
   a) speak b) shout c) smell d) smile
4. After the game, ... of fans went to the players to take photos with them.
   a) skills b) crowds c) skins d) ports
5. I can't answer this question. It's very ..... .
   a) large b) easy c) simple d) difficult
6. More girls ..... sports now than when I was younger.
   a) pay b) do c) make d) take

7. I like to sit on the ..... and watch TV.

a) poster b) baker c) blog d) sofa

8. Could you speak more ....., please?

a) slowly b) slower c) slowest d) slow

9. When ..... you have science?

a) does b) have c) are d) do

10. Malak ..... a picture at the moment.

a) paint b) paints c) is painting d) painting

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My dad works ..... (hardly).
2. It ..... (usually/is) very hot in summer.
3. He sometimes ..... (meet) his friends in front of the cinema.
4. It's too late. Why are you ..... (clean) the house at this time?

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Your dream job"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Units 3 & 4 **November Revision**

A Vocabulary

Unit 3

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

successful	ناجح	education	التعليم	organisation	منظمة
attack (ed)	يهاجم	emergency	حالة طوارئ	painting	لوحة
blood	دم	firefighter	رجل إطفاء	pump (ed)	مضخة/يضخ
bone	عظمة	heart	القلب	rubbish collector	جامع القمامة
brave	شجاع	heroic	بطولى	scientist	عالم
broken	مكسور	treatment	علاج	serious	خطير/جاد
patron	راع/كفيل	improve (d)	يحسن	shark	سمكة القرش
charity worker	عامل فى جمعية خيرية	infect (ed)	يعدى/يصيب	society	مجتمع
charity	جمعية خيرية	infections	عدوى/التهابات	sports coach	مدرب رياضى
confuse (d)	يتحير/يرتبك	jewellery	مجوهرات	statue	تمثال
countryside	الريف	Khedive	الخديوى	stomach	معدة
date of birth	تاريخ الميلاد	lungs	الرئتان	street cleaner	منظف الشارع
difference	اختلاف	medicine	دواء	surgeon	جراح
discussion	مناقشة	natural disaster	كارثة طبيعية	the Red Crescent	الهلال الأحمر
earthquake	زلزال	nursing manager	مدير التمريض	volunteer	متطوع

Language Expressions and Prepositions — التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

do experiments	يجرى تجارب معملية	pay for	يدفع ثمنا
do a project on	يقوم بعمل مشروع فى	pleased with	مسرور من
get a job	يحصل على وظيفة	give information	يعطى معلومات
take in air	يستنشق هواء	put first	يضع فى المقام الأول
sew cuts	يخيط الجروح	useful for	مفيد لـ
make a hero	يصنع بطلًا	with heart problems	ذو مشاكل فى القلب
make a poster	يعد ملصقًا إعلانيًا	write down	يدون

Unit 4

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

ancient	أثرى/قديم جدًا	mask	قناع	ruler	حاكم
arch	قوس/قنطرة	monuments	آثار	special	خاص/مميز
awesome	رهيب/رائع	mosque	مسجد	stadium	استاد
behave (d)	يتصرف	mosquitos	ناموس/بعوض	statue	تمثال
bowl	سلطانية	national	قومى/وطنى	stone circles	الدوائر الحجرية
castle	قلعة	necklace	عقد/قلادة	temple	معبد
century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	needle	إبرة/ مسلة	theatre	مسرح
clay	طين صلصال	papyrus	ورق/نبات البردى	ticket	تذكرة
coin	عملة معدنية	pharaoh	فرعون	time	عصر/عهد
damage (d)	يدمر/يضر/يتلف	pot	إناء/وعاء	tool	أداة
debate	مناقشة/مناظرة	pray (ed)	يصلى	tourism	السياحة
environment	البيئة	protect (ed)	يحمى	valuable	قيم
historic	تاريخى	race	سباق	vase	فازة/زهرية
ingredients	مكونات/مقادير	recommend (ed)	يرشح/يوصى بـ	view	منظر
injure	يصيب/يؤذى	ring	خاتم	war	حرب
local people	السكان المحليون	ruins	أطلال		

Language Expressions and Prepositions — التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

date to	يرجع تاريخه إلى	interested in	مهتم بـ
drop litter	يلقى القمامة	keep away	يبعد
entrance to	مدخل لـ	make pollution	يسبب تلوثاً
excited about	متحمس بخصوص	plan properly	يخطط بشكل مناسب
get a guide	يحصل على مرشد	protect from	يحمى من
go back to	يعود/يرجع إلى	walk up	يصعد
happen to	يحدث لـ	watch out	يحترس من

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I always give money to a ..... that helps poor people.
   a) company b) building c) factory d) charity
2. A ..... is an event when people try to get a prize.
   a) scientist b) competition c) scientist d) surgeon
3. The heart ..... blood around the body.
   a) cooks b) pumps c) takes d) gives
4. Anas is a ..... in this hospital. He works for no money.
   a) volunteer b) pioneer c) charity d) teacher
5. Life in the city is more difficult than life in the ..... .
   a) side b) earth c) continent d) countryside
6. She is interested in ..... . She has wonderful paintings.
   a) religion b) maths c) art d) music
7. The good weather ..... for several days so we were able to go out a lot.
   a) continued b) explained c) saved d) kept
8. You mustn't touch the ..... in the museum.
   a) facts b) articles c) statues d) debates
9. I should arrive ..... London tomorrow morning.
   a) of b) in c) to d) at
10. Children must learn how to ..... politely all the time.
    a) treat b) behave c) do d) make
11. We can call something that is ..... when it is very old.
    a) ancient b) awesome c) patient d) amazing
12. You should show your ..... at the entrance.
    a) guide b) temple c) ticket d) rubbish
13. A ..... is a piece of metal used as money.
    a) pot b) bowl c) can d) coin
14. Ancient Egyptians made pots and bowls of ..... from the Nile.
    a) metal b) clay c) wool d) chemical
15. Bread is made ..... flour.
    a) at b) into c) from d) of

B Language

Unit 3

1 The past simple tense

Form

Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل

Ex: - They played football yesterday. - He bought a new car last year.

Usage

- **It's used to talk about actions that ended in the past.**
تستخدم للتعبير عن حدث فى الماضى وانتهى.

- I visited my uncle yesterday.

Negative

Subject + did not (didn't) + **inf.**

Ex: - I did not **arrive** late yesterday.
- He didn't **buy** a shirt last week.

Question

Did + subject + **inf.**? - Did you **watch** TV last night?

Q. word + did + subject + **inf.**? - What time did you **go** to bed?

Key words

yesterday أمس - last ... الماضى - ... ago منذ - in the past فى الماضى - in + سنة فى الماضى (in 2010)

- My father **was born** in 1980. - We **visited** Luxor 2 years ago.

استخدام (when) بمعنى «عندما» مع زمن الماضى البسيط:

- My parents **lived** in Tanta when they **were** young.

2 (used to) for regular past habits and routines

Form

Subject + used to + **inf.**

- He used to **live** in Tanta. - My grandmother used to **work** in a hospital.

Negative

Subject + didn't + use to + **inf.**

Ex: - I didn't use to **drive** a car.
- She didn't use to **play** tennis.

Question

Did + subject + use to + **inf.**?

- Did she use to **live** in Cairo?

Q. word + did + subject + use to + **inf.**?

- What did Sami use to **do** when he was six?

Unit 4

1 must/mustn't

Subject + must + inf.	Subject + mustn't + inf.
- They must **arrive** on time. - You must **listen** to the teacher.	- You mustn't **be** late. - In a museum, you mustn't **touch** the objects.

Question

Must + subject + **inf.**? - Must we **put** rubbish in the bin?

Q. word + must + subject + **inf.**? - What must you **do** at school?

2 The past continuous tense

Form

Subject + was/were + **v.ing**

Ex: - He was **reading** a book. - They were **swimming**.

Usage

- **It's used to talk about an action that was in progress in a certain time in the past.**
يعبر عن شيء كان مستمرًا في وقت محدد في الماضي

- Dina and Hossam were playing tennis at 10:30 yesterday.

Negative

Subject + wasn't/weren't + **v.ing**

Ex: - I wasn't **playing** football.
- They weren't **swimming**.

Question

Was/Were + subject + **v.ing**?

- Was Kamal **doing** homework? - Were you **watching** TV?

Q. word + was/were + subject + **v.ing**?

- When were you **playing** football?
- What was mum **doing** at 3 o'clock yesterday?

Key words

While/As بينما/ **When** عندما

While/As + past continuous, past simple
Past simple + while/as + past continuous

- While/As I was reading my book, the phone rang.

When + past simple, past continuous
Past continuous + when + past simple

- When grandfather arrived, mum was cooking.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲Remembering ▲Understanding ▲Applying ▲Analysing ▲Evaluating ▲Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We ..... the game last Sunday.
   a) enjoy b) enjoying c) enjoys d) enjoyed
2. ..... your brother win the last competition?
   a) Did b) Does c) Is d) Has
3. They ..... very well yesterday. They lost the match.
   a) playing b) play c) didn't play d) played
4. How many goals did your team ..... last match?
   a) scored b) score c) scoring d) scores
5. I ..... a new laptop last week.
   a) buy b) buys c) buying d) bought
6. ..... you at school last week?
   a) Do b) Are c) Were d) Did
7. You ..... forget to do your homework regularly.
   a) must to b) must c) mustn't to d) mustn't
8. We ..... follow the road signs to be safe.
   a) have b) must c) mustn't d) has to
9. I ..... in a café when you called me.
   a) was sitting b) sitting c) sit d) sat
10. Sally ..... a cake when I arrived.
    a) make b) is making c) made d) was making
11. You ..... eat or drink at the library.
    a) must b) mustn't c) have to d) haven't
12. When I was younger, I ..... pizza almost every day.
    a) eaten b) eat c) ate d) was eating

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I ..... (do) my maths homework yesterday.
2. Did Basmala ..... (went) to England last year?
3. The children ..... (didn't) at home last weekend.
4. You ..... (mustn't) study hard if you want to pass your exams.
5. The phone rang while I ..... (to have) dinner.
6. Were they drinking coffee when you ..... (to arrive)?

C Skills

1. Speaking

Unit 3

1. Discussing family history

مناقشة تاريخ العائلة

Where did your parents use to live when they were young?
أين اعتاد والداك أن يعيشا فى الماضى؟

They lived in Tanta. اعتادا أن يعيشا فى طنطا.

Did you use to walk to school? هل اعتدت أن تمشى للمدرسة؟

No. I used to cycle to school. لا. اعتدت أن أذهب بالدراجة.

2. Checking understanding

التأكد من الفهم

Asking for clarification		Clarification	
What do you mean?	ماذا تعنى؟	I mean, ...	أنا أعنى ...
I'm not sure what you mean.	لست متأكدًا مما تعنيه.	In other words, ...	بمعنى آخر ...
Sorry, I don't understand.	آسف، لا أفهم.		

Unit 4

Asking for information on the phone

طلب معلومات عبر الهاتف

How can I help you? كيف يمكننى مساعدتك؟

I'd like to know what time the museum is open.
أود معرفة موعد فتح المتحف.

Hello, can you tell me if the museum is open on Fridays?
هل يمكنك أن تخبرنى إن كان المتحف مفتوحًا أيام الجمعة؟

Certainly./Of course. It's open daily.
بالتأكيد/نعم بالطبع. إنه مفتوح يوميًا.

2. Write it right

Unit 3

How to write about someone you are proud of

To : mona@gmail.com
From : sara@gmail.com
Subject : Someone I'm proud of

Hello Mona,

Of all the members in my family, my mother is the person I am proud of. She is 40 years old. She looks much younger than her age with short hair and a beautiful face. She works hard. At work, she is respected by all of her friends. She is a useful person in society. My mother always does the housework well. She is a very good cook. I really admire her for her wonderful dishes. She often spends her free time cooking delicious dishes for us, which makes everyone in my family happy. What's more, my mother is an excellent adviser. I always love her and I will always be proud of her.

Write soon.

Sara

Unit 4

How to write about a historic place you visited

A historic place I visited

I visited one of the greatest historic places in India, the Taj Mahal in Agra. I went there with my mum and dad. It is very huge in size. I studied about the Taj Mahal at school, I also saw its pictures. But watching it with my eyes was like a dream that came true. It was built by Shah Jahan around the 1630s. He built it as a gift to his wife, Mumtaz Mahal. This history made it more interesting. It took around 22 years to build. People think that Shah Jahan cut off the hands of the workers who built it so that no similar building could be built. Therefore, this is one of the most awesome historic places.

Tapescript

Al-Adwaa November Test on Units 3 & 4

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. What did the Egyptian handball team win?
   a) The Arab Cup. b) The English Cup.
   c) The Word Cup. d) The Africa Cup.
2. Where was it?
   a) In Sudan. b) In Egypt.
   c) In Tunisia. d) In the USA.
3. When was it?
   a) In 2005. b) In 2010.
   c) In 2020. d) In 2000.
4. What was the result?
   a) 27-23. b) 25-20.
   c) 15-20. d) 17-13.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

A customer is phoning the Egyptian Museum to book a ticket.

Ticket officer: Good morning, the Egyptian Museum. How can I help you?
Customer : Good morning. (1)..... ?
Ticket officer: Of course. We're open daily from 9:30 to 6:30.
Customer : (2)..... .
Ticket officer: Adults are 150 pounds and children under 12 are 75 pounds.
Customer : (3)..... ?
Ticket officer: Yes, you can buy them at the museum. Also, you can buy them online.
Customer : I'd like to know if I could bring my camera with me.
Ticket officer: (4)..... . But you mustn't take photos inside the museum.
Customer : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last year, I had a trip to Petra. The ancient city of Petra is a famous historic place in Jordan. Petra is famous for its tombs, temples and houses which are all pink sandstone. It's called the "Rose City". It was built around 300 BC and was only discovered by the western world in 1812. Petra became a UNESCO World Heritage Site in 1985. It has many high mountains. You can walk for a long way through the old city and the view from some of the higher places is awesome, but you must be careful!

Our guide explained how old the temples are; they are really interesting. I really enjoyed our day there and recommend a visit!

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage? .....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to? .....
3. What other historic places do you recommend visiting in Egypt?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Petra was discovered in ..... .

a) 1881 b) 1218 c) 1812 d) 1821

5. The view from the high mountains is ..... .

a) nasty b) fantastic c) terrible d) not good

6. The word "Rose" refers to the ..... .

a) temples b) desert
c) high mountains d) pink colour

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I went to the ..... to ask him to leave early today.

a) collector b) officer c) worker d) manager

2. In swimming pools, water is continuously ..... through a filter.

a) paid b) mended c) pumped d) breathed

3. ..... is the most important thing that our children should be interested in.

a) Education b) Countryside c) Disease d) Blood

4. Trees can protect us ..... the hot sun.
a) at b) from c) for d) to

5. There is a front and a back ..... to the house.
a) castle b) temple c) entrance d) ruler

6. This old castle ..... to the Romans times.
a) gets b) dates c) arrives d) jumps

7. We must move this ..... very carefully.
a) statue b) view c) castle d) review

8. Did you ..... the window?
a) cleaned b) cleans c) clean d) cleaning

9. You ..... be so unkind to your sister.
a) mustn't b) must c) mustn't to d) must to

10. We ..... English yesterday at 4:00 p.m.
a) study b) studied
c) are studying d) were studying

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I finished my work and ..... (go) to the beach.
2. I ..... (not/use) wear glasses when I was at university.
3. What ..... (you/do) yesterday evening?
4. The boys were playing in the garden when it suddenly ..... (begin) to rain.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"A historic place you visited"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Units 5 & 6

December Revision

A Vocabulary

Unit 5

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

acts	أفعال/أعمال	donate (d)	يتبرع بـ	practise (d)	يمارس
advertisement	إعلان	donation	تبرع	princess	أميرة
apartment = flat	شقة	extracts	مقتطفات	random	عشوائى
baker's	مخبز	fantastic	رائع	servant	خادم
beggar	متسول/شحاذ	geography	جغرافيا	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
boarding school	مدرسة داخلية	give away	يتبرع	stranger	غريب
businesswoman	سيدة أعمال	head teacher	مدير المدرسة	sunny	مشمس
chemist	صيدلى	helpful	معاون/مساعد/مفيد	surprised	مندهش
canteen	مقصف/كانتين	kindness	لطف/عطف	teenager	مراهق
community	مجتمع/جماعة/جالية	laboratory	معمل	tips	نصائح/بقشيش
cruel (to)	قاسٍ (لـ)	messy	فوضوى/غير مرتب	trainers	حذاء رياضى
disabled	معاق	pick (ed) up	يلتقط	wheelchair	كرسى متحرك

Language Expressions and Prepositions — التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

a home for	موطن لـ	give back	يرجع/يعيد
care about	يهتم/يعتنى بـ	make the bed	يرتب الفراش
difficult for	صعب لـ	put away	يضع شيئًا فى مكانه
do charity work	يؤدى عملاً خيريًا	run after	يجرى وراء/خلف
fight fires	يحارب (يخمد) النيران	take the lift/stairs	يأخذ المصعد/السلالم
get his bag ready for	يجهز حقيبته لـ	tidy up	يرتب
get lost	يضل الطريق	wash up	يغسل الأطباق
give a seat to	يعطى المقعد لـ	work for	يعمل لدى

Unit 6

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

aim to	يهدف إلى	global	عالمى	recycling	إعادة التدوير/ التصنيع
air pollution	تلوث الهواء	green energy	الطاقة الخضراء (النظيفة)	remind (ed)	يذكر
average	معدل/متوسط	including	مشتملاً/متضمناً	respect (ed)	يحترم
bar charts	رسم بيانى شريطى	introduce (d)	يقدم	reuse (d)	يعيد استخدام
black honey	عسل أسود	lead to	يؤدى إلى	riverbank	ضفة النهر
canal	قناة مائية/ترعة	line graph	رسم بيانى خطى	scuba diving	رياضة الغطس
cause (d)	يسبب	locate (d)	يحدد موقع/مكان	solution	حل
city centre	وسط البلد	melt	ينصهر/يذوب	serious	خطير/جاد
climate change	التغير المناخى	monuments	آثار	solve (d)	يحل
diagram	رسم توضيحى/بيانى	podcast	بث إذاعى	temperature	درجة الحرارة
drought	جفاف	position	مكانة	warn	يحذر
electricity	الكهرباء	presentation	عرض تقديمى	wildlife	حياة برية
electric	كهربائى	produce (d)	ينتج	x-axis	المحور السينى
flood	فيضان	rainfall	سقوط الأمطار	y-axis	المحور الصادى

Language Expressions and Prepositions — التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

careful about	حريص بشأن	make notes	يدون ملاحظات
clean up	ينظف	on a programme	فى برنامج
connected to	متصل/مرتبط بـ	on top of	على قمة
famous/known for	مشهور بـ	solve a problem	يحل مشكلة
important to/for	هام لـ	vote on	يصوت على
lie/lying on a beach	يستلقى على الشاطئ		

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My grandmother is a happy person who always has a ..... on her face.
   a) mile b) beard c) smile d) smell
2. My sister ..... her bed when she gets up.
   a) washes b) gets c) does d) makes
3. A random act of ..... is a kind thing that you do for someone for no reason.
   a) kindness b) kind c) kinder d) kindly
4. Don't ..... wild animals when you visit the zoo.
   a) eat b) sleep c) donate d) feed
5. A polite person always ..... well.
   a) feeds b) behaves c) makes d) tidies
6. He goes to a ..... school where he studies and lives all the time.
   a) boarding b) local c) special d) bad
7. My uncle has a small shop ..... the street corner.
   a) for b) in c) on d) at
8. My grandmother was ..... because I made her a cup of tea. She was happy.
   a) sad b) surprised c) ugly d) bad
9. He went into the school ..... and bought a sandwich and a cold drink.
   a) playground b) library c) bathroom d) canteen
10. Too many cars can ..... air pollution.
    a) cause b) damage c) save d) protect
11. When it gets hotter, the ice on the mountains ..... .
    a) freezes b) melts c) causes d) makes
12. This hotel is using ..... energy from the sun and wind.
    a) oil b) gas c) green d) fuel
13. It was raining heavily for days and then there was a ..... .
    a) conclusion b) pollution c) flood d) drought
14. We pray at the ..... .
    a) stadium b) museum c) theatre d) mosque
15. A ..... takes you to the top of a building without using the stairs.
    a) lift b) flood c) storm d) drought

B Language

Unit 5

1 has to/have to

Affirmative

I, We, They, You + have to + **inf.**

He, She, It + has to + **inf.**

Ex: - I have to **wear** the school uniform.
- My father has to **get up** at six.

Negative

I, We, They, You + don't have to + **inf.**

He, She, It + doesn't have to + **inf.**

Ex: - We don't have to **get up** early. It's Friday.
- My mother doesn't have to **go** to work today because it's a holiday.

Question

Do/Does + subject + have to + **inf.**?

Ex: - Do you have to **go** to school? - Does Ola have to **go** to work?

Q. word + do/does + subject + have to + **inf.**?

Ex: - What do you have to do after school?
- What time does Heba have to arrive at school?

2 should/shouldn't

Subject + should + inf.	Subject + shouldn't + inf.
- Children should **sleep** early. - You should **go** now. The bus leaves in ten minutes.	- You shouldn't **watch** too much television. - She shouldn't **carry** all those things.

Question

Should + subject + **inf.**? **Ex:** - Should we **clean** our room?

Q. word + should + subject + **inf.**? **Ex:**- What should you **do** before you eat?

3 Relative clauses

who = that الذى/التى	- This is the **boy** (who/that) won the game. - A pilot is the **person** (who/that) flies a plane.
which = that الذى/التى	- The **present** (which/that) I bought for my grandmother is in my bag. - The **car** (which/that) I bought is expensive. - This is the **house** which Mr Adel bought. - This is the **room** which Samy usually works in.
where حيث	- Alexandria is the **city** where both my sisters are studying. - This is the **room** where Samy usually works.

Unit 6

1 Comparative adjectives

One syllable adjectives صفات ذات مقطع واحد	More than one syllable adjectives صفات لها أكثر من مقطع
adj. + er + **than** + ...	more أكثر/less أقل + adj. + **than** ...
- The Nile is longer **than** the Amazon. - Mount Everest is higher **than** Mount Kilimanjaro.	- Cairo is more crowded **than** Aswan. - A dog is less dangerous **than** a lion.
Irregular adjectives الصفات غير المنتظمة	(good) جيد → better أفضل (bad) سيئ → worse أسوء (far) بعيد → further أبعد

2 (not) as + adj + as ....

as + **adj.** + as **مثل**	not as + **adj.** + as **ليس مثل**
- Droughts are as **serious** as floods.	- Australia is not as **dry** as Africa.

3 The present simple passive

Form

Object (مفعول) + (am/is/are) + **P.P.** (التصريف الثالث للفعل) + by + (الفاعل).

Ex: - Lots of cotton is **grown** in the area.
- Black honey is **made** from sugar.

Negative

Object + am /is/are (not) + **P.P.**

Ex: - Rice isn't **grown** in my home city.
- Cars aren't **made** in Egypt.

Question

Is/Are + object + **P.P.**?

Ex: - Is much rice **grown** in your country?
- Are these lessons **explained** at school?

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You look tired. I think you ..... get some rest.
   a) must to b) should c) have d) has
2. Does your father ..... get up early every day?
   a) should b) must c) have to d) has to
3. It's a holiday. We ..... to get up early.
   a) don't have b) haven't c) mustn't d) shouldn't
4. Students ..... sleep late on a school day.
   a) haven't b) have c) should d) shouldn't
5. The environment ..... by many scientists.
   a) studies b) studying c) is studied d) study
6. He ..... to walk to school. He takes the bus.
   a) don't have b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) doesn't have
7. Mount Sinai is not as ..... as Mount Kilimanjaro.
   a) high b) higher c) highest d) the highest
8. Which sport is ....., football or tennis?
   a) good b) better c) better than d) the best
9. Furniture is ..... in Damietta.
   a) make b) makes c) making d) made
10. This city ..... for its attractive parks.
    a) know b) knows c) is known d) is knowing
11. What about going to the beach ..... we always go swimming?
    a) which b) where c) who d) whose
12. My grandmother is the person ..... is always very kind to me.
    a) who b) where c) which d) when

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Is your house ..... (more old) than my house?
2. Our car ..... (doesn't) washed every day.
3. Europe is not ..... (as large) Asia.
4. ..... (Does) you have to look after your baby sister at the weekend?
5. The tourists ..... (what) visit Egypt always love the ancient temples.
6. This is the museum ..... (who) I visited last year.

C Skills

1. Speaking

Unit 5

1. A discussion about jobs in the house

مناقشة عن المهام المنزلية

What sort of jobs do you have to do at home?
ما نوع المهام التى تضطر أن تؤديها بالمنزل؟

I have to tidy up my bedroom. أضطر أن أرتب غرفة نومى.

How much homework do you have to do this evening?
كم كمية الواجب المنزلى التى ينبغى عليك فعلها الليلة؟

I have to do the English homework. أضطر إلى عمل واجب اللغة الإنجليزية.

2. Making suggestions

تقديم اقتراحات

I feel that we should do an act of kindness every day.
أشعر بأنه يجب علينا أن نعمل عملًا لطيفًا يوميًا.

I see what you mean. أفهم ما تعنيه.

I think it would be better if we donate money to charities.
أعتقد أنه من الأفضل أن نتبرع بالمال للجمعيات الخيرية.

- Good idea. فكرة جيدة.

Unit 6

Making suggestions

تقديم اقتراحات

Why don't we try recycling water? لم لا نجرب إعادة تدوير المياه؟

That's an interesting idea! إنها فكرة شيقة!

For example, we could use the water from washing to water the plants.
على سبيل المثال، يمكننا استخدام مياه الغسيل لنروى بها النباتات.

2. Write it right

Unit 5

How to write about random acts of kindness

Random acts of kindness

It's important to do random acts of kindness. The smallest things can make others smile. I think that if you do something kind to someone, they will take that act of kindness and move it to people they come across during their day. The smallest things always make the biggest differences. For example, holding the door for someone who has their hands full or smiling at a stranger as they pass by, these little things let people know that someone cares about them. Today, before you go to bed, do a random act of kindness. It can be to someone you know or someone who is a complete stranger, but it has to be random. Someday you will receive a random act of kindness in return.

Unit 6

How to write about your home city

To : paul@gmail.com
From : nader@yahoo.com
Subject : My home city

Hello Paul,

How are you? I'd like to tell you about my home city. I come from a beautiful city called Hurghada on the Red Sea. First of all, it's very green and has many beaches and mountains. My home city is not polluted and the people are very friendly. It also has a small city centre area and you can find many shops and restaurants, for example sea food restaurants and supermarkets. My home city is on the coast, so there are many boats and ships. You can see turtles there. There are many fishermen around, so you can eat many kinds of cheap fish. It's very hot in summer and warm in winter. There are many parks and museums in my home city. Many tourists visit my home in winter because it has lovely weather. You should come and visit it one day.

Write soon.

Nader

Tapescript

Al-Adwaa December Test on Units 5 & 6

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. How long does it take to put away your clothes?
   a) A little time. b) No time.
   c) A short time. d) A long time.
2. How often do you make your bed?
   a) Every day. b) Once a week.
   c) Twice a week. d) Never.
3. What does your mother say about you?
   a) Late. b) Early.
   c) Messy. d) Tidy.
4. How often do you tidy up your bedroom?
   a) Every day. b) Once a week.
   c) Twice a week. d) Never.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Asala is suggesting doing something outside this weekend.

Asala : Are you going somewhere this weekend?

Nancy : (1)..... . I don't have any plans yet.

Asala : It's going to be sunny and warm this weekend.

Nancy : (2).....?

Asala : I mean we could do something outside.

Nancy : Do you have any plans?

Asala : Yes, I do. (3).....?

Nancy : I'm not sure. I don't really like tennis.

Asala : (4)..... .

Nancy : (5)..... ! Let's play basketball on Saturday.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Port Said is an Egyptian city near the Suez Canal, with a **population** of about 1,000,000. It is located in the north-east of Egypt. The city was built in 1859 during the building of the Suez Canal. Port Said is an important port for exports of Egyptian products like cotton and rice, but also a station for ships that pass through the Suez Canal. Port Said's twin city is Port Fuad, which lies on the eastern bank of the Suez Canal. The cities are connected by free ferries running all through the day.

Port Said has a hot desert climate. January and February are the coolest months while the hottest are July and August. It is known for its ships, which come and go from around the world. Many fish are caught in the sea near Port Said.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the text?

.....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

.....

3. What do you think of "Port Said"?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Port Said was built in the ..... century.
   a) 17th b) 18th c) 19th d) 20th
5. People like to catch ..... in Port Said.
   a) insects b) animals c) fish d) birds
6. The underlined word "**population**" means ..... .
   a) ingredients b) subjects c) animals d) people

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I really ..... the students in my class.
   a) take out b) put away c) care about d) pick up
2. He was born ..... . He can't walk at all.
   a) blind b) disabled c) deaf d) cruel
3. He ..... most of his money to a charity.
   a) gave away b) put away c) look after d) wash up

4. My son ..... me of myself when I was his age.
   a) says b) mentions c) reminds d) remembers
5. They have many pets, ... three cats.
   a) including b) finding c) contacting d) locating
6. Tourists like to come to Egypt to see its great ..... .
   a) monuments b) moments c) munities d) seconds
7. The fire ..... lots of damage to the building.
   a) saved b) caused c) protected d) reported
8. We've ..... the car to the garage this morning. It doesn't work.
   a) to take b) to taking c) take d) taking
9. The person ..... answered the phone was very helpful.
   a) when b) where c) which d) who
10. Emails ..... by most internet users.
   a) are sending b) send c) are sent d) sent

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He ..... (shouldn't) study for the test tomorrow.
2. The city ..... (which) I live is beautiful.
3. The internet ..... (use) for social networking, especially by young people.
4. It doesn't work as ..... (good) as we hoped.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"How you help your community"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

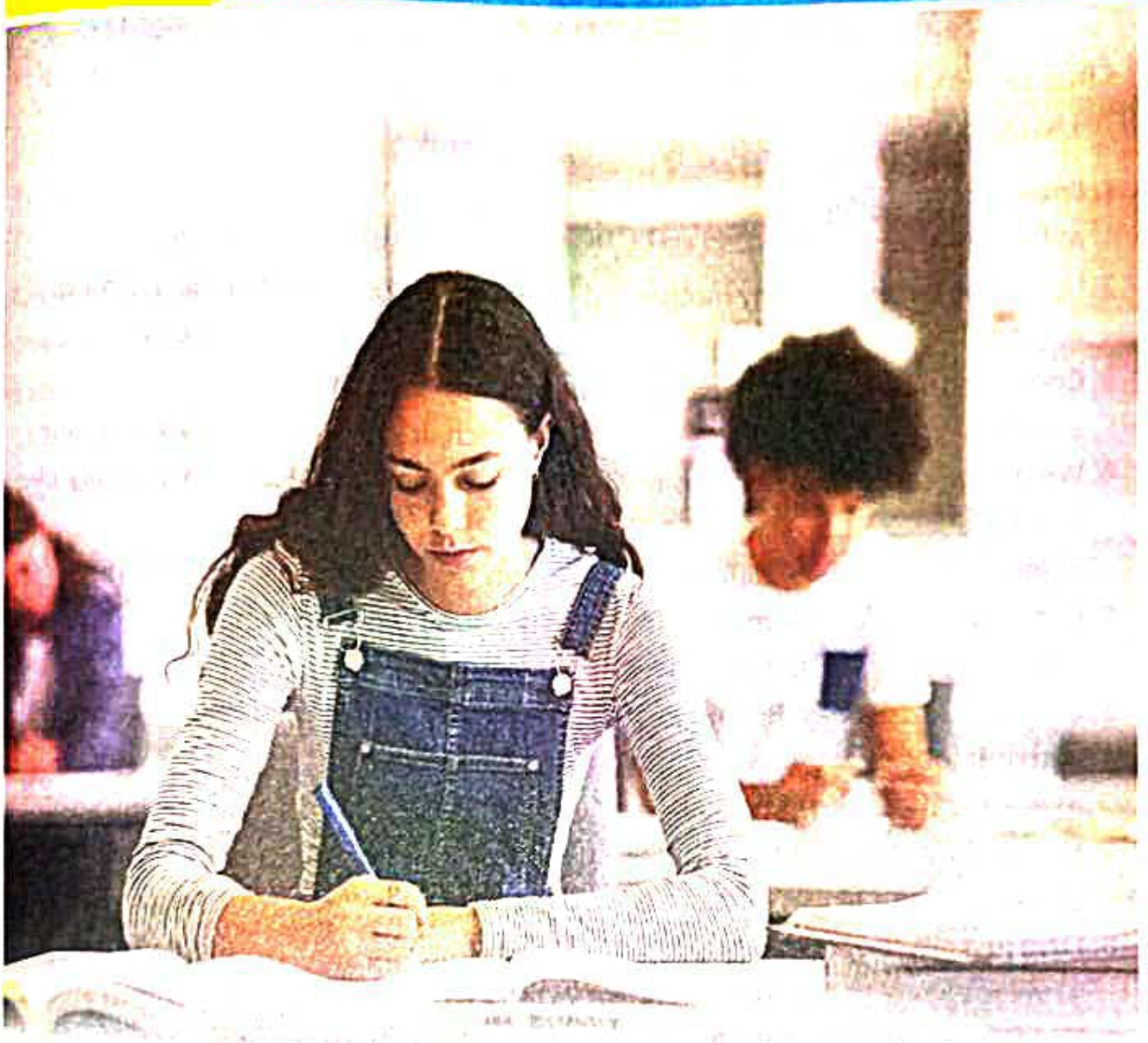
.....

.....

.....

.....

Part 3 SB & WB General Exercises



1 **Vocabulary Exercises on Each Unit**

التدريبات الخاصة بالمفردات وقواعد اللغة على كل وحدة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات.

2 **Language Exercises on Each Unit**

Part 3 SB & WB General Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. I never have coffee ..... breakfast.
   a) for b) in c) on d) of
2. I go to the baker's with my mother .....; we always buy bread in the morning.
   a) diary b) dairy c) daily d) day
3. Come and sit on this .....; four people can sit on it.
   a) sofa b) chair c) armchair d) wheelchair
4. We do the same thing every day when we're on holiday because my family like to have a ..... .
   a) joy b) difference c) fun d) routine
5. Can you ..... my mother for me? My phone is not working.
   a) taste b) text c) exit d) test
6. On a/an ..... day, Reem gets up, goes to school and then helps her mother with her jobs.
   a) electrical b) typical c) technical d) technological
7. Hassan forgot to bring any food for the picnic, but he can ..... our food.
   a) stay b) lend c) give d) share
8. I live in a city, but my grandparents live in a small ..... in the country.
   a) village b) town c) city d) country
9. The farmer doesn't need to ..... his goats in the summer as they can find their own food in the mountains.
   a) climb b) feed c) eat d) drink
10. My uncle has a ..... in his garden and he uses it to water his plants every morning.
    a) wall b) tab c) tape d) tap
11. It has a/an ..... garden full of flowers and trees.
    a) terrible b) bad c) attractive d) ugly
12. Roberta feels ..... when some men take her father from their home.
    a) terrible b) glad c) pleased d) boring

13. Their new house is in the country near the railway ..... .

a) circle b) tube c) line d) limp

14. You can wash your face in the ..... .

a) basin b) pot c) carpet d) mirror

15. A ..... is a big cupboard where you can put your clothes.

a) wardrobe b) mirror c) drawer d) carpet

16. You can see yourself in the ..... .

a) lamp b) mirror c) carpet d) curtain

Language

17. Hamdi ..... coffee for breakfast. He likes to drink tea.

a) doesn't drink b) drinks c) don't drink d) drink

18. **A:** How ..... Dina get to school? **B:** She takes the bus.

a) are b) is c) do d) does

19. **A:** What time ..... your first lesson this morning?
B: At 8:00 o'clock.

a) does b) is c) has d) can

20. They ..... football. They prefer tennis.

a) likes b) doesn't like c) not like d) don't like

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. After school, my brother and I sometimes ..... (does) sport or play music.
2. Suzy ..... (not/watch) TV when she gets home. She does her homework first.
3. In Germany, school ..... (start) very early in the morning.
4. How many lessons ..... (do) your school day have?
5. Mariam ..... (not/get) up at 7 a.m. She gets up at 6:30.
6. I don't make my breakfast. My mum always ..... (make) it.
7. ..... (Have) your father got a computer?
8. What ..... (has) you got in your bag?
9. Who has ..... (get) an older brother?
10. Who ..... (do) Salma live with?
11. Shall I ..... (helping) you carry these books?
12. The bus ..... (arrive) at the museum at 6:30.
13. Where ..... (do) Malak live?

Unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. Shady is deaf, but he understands us because we use ..... language.
   a) sigh b) sight c) signal d) sign
2. It is usually easy to ..... with people in other countries if you speak English well.
   a) connect b) communicate c) tell d) say
3. When you invite someone to your house, they are your ..... .
   a) crowds b) patients c) guests d) guess
4. When two people get married, they have a ..... .
   a) meeting b) band c) weeding d) wedding
5. The skin of a zebra is ..... .
   a) plain b) blue c) striped d) sharp
6. It's a/an ..... that you couldn't come to my birthday party.
   a) happiness b) congratulation c) pity d) happy
7. The ..... is an area of very dry land.
   a) river b) desert c) lake d) sea

An ..... is a boy or girl aged 13 - 19.
a) infant b) child c) baby d) teenager

9. "....." means usual, not different.
   a) Natural b) Modern c) Normal d) Ancient
10. To be ..... means not with other people.
    a) alone b) busy c) pleased d) worried
11. To feel ..... means feeling happy about the good things in your life.
    a) worried b) grateful c) careful d) normal
12. The ..... prepares food for people to eat.
    a) street-food seller b) shop worker c) cooker d) doctor
13. The ..... helps to keep people safe in the streets.
    a) engineer b) police officer c) shop worker d) nurse
14. The ..... speaks to people on the phone. He or she helps them with their problems.
    a) nurse b) street-food seller
    c) call-centre worker d) shop worker
15. The ..... helps in a place which sells things.
    a) computer engineer b) cook
    c) police officer d) shop worker

16. You call a ..... if there is a problem with your computer system.
a) shop worker b) computer engineer
c) street-food seller d) police officer

17. Your father can ..... the car on this road. It's very quiet.
a) bark b) park c) brake d) break

18. Fatma is ....., so she cannot hear you.
a) patient b) blind c) dear d) deaf

19. The nurse works on the ..... for children.
a) hard b) ward c) award d) reward

Language

20. I can't come to the park because I ..... the house today.
a) clean b) cleaning c) cleaned d) am cleaning

21. What time do you ..... your homework after school?
a) does b) did c) doing d) do

22. I'm sitting under a tree and ..... eating my lunch.
a) hungry b) hungrily c) sad d) quick

23. It's important to drive ..... when it's raining.
a) careful b) carefully c) quick d) quickly

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Eman and her neighbours ..... (clean) Mr Osman's flat now.
2. Mr Osman ..... (live) in a lovely flat.
3. Manal and Mona ..... (study) calligraphy now.
4. My sister speaks very ..... (quiet).
5. The teacher treats all her children ..... (kind).
6. On Saturdays, Kady usually ..... (spend) time with her cousins.
7. The police officer is visiting a school today, but usually he ..... (drive) around the streets.
8. Nader ..... (not/usually/work) in the shop, but his brother is ill so he is helping there today.
9. Our football team will win because they are playing very ..... (good).
10. Ahmed went into the new school ..... (sad), because he did not know any children there.
11. Why ..... (be) you laughing?
12. It isn't ..... (rain) outside, but it's a bit cloudy.

Unit 3

1 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Vocabulary

1. A ..... teaches people how to play or improve a sport.
   a) scientist b) sports coach c) nurse d) worker
2. A ..... knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill.
   a) sports coach b) surgeon c) police officer d) hero
3. A ..... does experiments to study and find out about how things work.
   a) police officer b) surgeon c) charity worker d) scientist
4. A ..... helps people or animals that need help.
   a) sports coach b) charity worker c) scientist d) trader
5. A ..... helps people who are poor, sick or don't have a home.
   a) group b) prison c) thief d) charity
6. The ..... is an area outside a city, where there are farms and lots of nature.
   a) countryside b) city c) town d) ocean
7. A terrible event, such as an earthquake, is a ..... .
   a) charity b) goal
   c) natural disaster d) competition
8. A ..... is someone who works for no money to help people.
   a) scientist b) volunteer c) nurse d) police officer
9. An ..... is something serious or dangerous that you need to do something about.
   a) emergency b) energy c) email d) era
10. ..... take in air and help us to breathe.
    a) Legs b) Ears c) Lungs d) Eyes
11. The ..... tells the parts of the body what to do.
    a) brain b) nose c) head d) ear
12. The ..... pumps blood around the body.
    a) eye b) nose c) brain d) heart
13. This football has no air inside. I need a ..... to fill it.
    a) pump b) cut c) burn d) plant
14. Lina's cousin is in the hospital with an eye ..... .
    a) pollution b) pollute c) infect d) infection
15. A ..... is an event when people try to get a prize.
    a) hero b) competition c) player d) goal

Language

16. Before Sameera Moussa _____ in 1952, she was Egypt's first female nuclear scientist.
a) died b) dies c) dying d) die

17. Sameera Moussa was born _____ 1917.
a) when b) in c) ago d) from

18. _____ Omar was 22, a shark attacked him and he lost a leg.
a) In b) If c) When d) Ago

19. Magdy Yacoub stopped most of his work as a surgeon a long time _____.
a) ago b) for c) last d) when

20. My uncle _____ a firefighter, but now he is a police officer.
a) use to be b) didn't use to c) used to be d) didn't use to be

21. Dina _____ give money to a charity, but now she does.
a) used b) didn't use c) used to d) didn't use to

22. Egypt's football team _____ the Africa Cup of Nations in 2010.
a) win b) won c) used to win d) use to win

23. Did Ali _____ to the shops yesterday?
a) go b) went c) used to go d) goes

24. There _____ a hotel in our city ten years ago, but now there are three.
a) weren't b) didn't c) didn't use to be d) isn't

25. Where _____ live before you moved to Alexandria?
a) are you b) do you c) did you use to d) you used to

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Yasser's grandmother _____ (use to) work in a hospital.
2. Before Magdy's dad got married, he _____ (not/use to) live in Cairo.
3. When my mum _____ (be) a child, she used to play the piano every day.
4. Before I had children, I _____ (not/use to) know how to drive a car.
5. When you were ten, _____ (do) you use to live in a different house?
6. _____ (you/use to) walk to school?
7. Last year, I _____ (go) to Cairo and visited a fantastic museum.
8. _____ (be) Hossam Hassan the captain of the Egyptian Football team?
9. In 2009, Magdy Yacoub _____ (start) a charity for ill children in Aswan.
10. In Ancient Egypt, poor children _____ (not/use to) go to school.

Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. You can watch a sports match at a ..... .
   a) lab b) library c) museum d) stadium
2. A/An ..... can be an entrance to another place.
   a) arch b) wall c) ruin d) castle
3. You can pray at a ..... .
   a) museum b) mosque c) stadium d) castle
4. A/An ..... usually has very strong walls.
   a) arch b) tent c) castle d) hut
5. You can see ..... in a museum.
   a) castles b) prayers c) statues d) players
6. ..... are not a complete building.
   a) Ruins b) Castles c) Statues d) Arches
7. ..... means amazing.
   a) Historic b) Ancient c) Boring d) Awesome
8. A ..... is a person who can show you round a place.
   a) cook b) waiter c) tourist d) guide
9. ..... means very old.
   a) Amazing b) Ancient c) Boring d) Awesome
10. A ..... is what you can see from the top of something.
    a) roof b) sight c) view d) field
11. There are more than 2000 ..... in the museum.
    a) parts b) objects c) subjects d) castles
12. This chemical helps to keep ..... mosquitoes.
    a) away b) by c) at d) for
13. The black and white ..... around this window are beautiful.
    a) cuts b) planning c) designs d) carpets
14. Paint helped to ..... people's eyes from the sun.
    a) infect b) attack c) attract d) protect
15. They used big clay bowls to ..... ingredients for food.
    a) mix b) fix c) repair d) mend
16. Some people drew squares on the floor to ..... a game.
    a) do b) play c) make d) advise

17. Bees and ants are _____.
a) insects b) birds c) animals d) sharks

18. Ali's uncle works for a big oil _____ in the United Arab Emirates.
a) work b) company c) job d) school

19. I love going to _____ places such as museums and ancient ruins.
a) historic b) culture c) history d) cultured

20. Don't play football here or you might _____ that car.
a) hurt b) injure c) damage d) repair

Language

21. You _____ arrive at school on time.
a) can't b) would c) must d) mustn't

22. You _____ eat or drink at the library.
a) must b) mustn't c) have to d) haven't

23. It's hot today, so you _____ all wear a hat and take some water, too.
a) have b) do c) must d) mustn't

24. While we were waiting to go into the museum, I _____ my friend Abbas.
a) saw b) was seeing c) see d) seeing

25. While we _____ home, Abbas phoned me.
a) were travelling b) travelling c) travelled d) travel

26. _____ I was reading my book, the phone rang.
a) When b) As c) After d) Before

27. We were travelling on the train for hours before it finally _____ at the station.
a) was arriving b) arriving c) arrives d) arrived

28. Most of the people were sleeping _____ the earthquake started.
a) because b) as c) while d) when

29. As Mr Badr _____ to work, he saw an old friend.
a) walked b) was walking c) walk d) walks

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I _____ (puts) my bag on the floor while I was taking a photo.
2. When we _____ (sit) down for a picnic, lots of runners were running through the park.
3. Lots of birds _____ (fly) in the sky when we sat down on the beach.
4. You _____ (not/must) eat inside the castle.
5. You must walk carefully and _____ (following) the signs.

Unit 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. Hala is a ..... person. She doesn't put anything in its right place.
   a) tidy b) messy c) lucky d) full
2. Adam ..... the rubbish when the bins are full.
   a) takes out b) puts away c) looks after d) washes up
3. He ..... the lift to go down to the streets.
   a) drives b) flies c) takes d) rides
4. Nader helps his brother ..... his school bag ready.
   a) leave b) get c) stay d) spend
5. I help to look ..... my little sister when my parents are busy.
   a) after b) up c) for d) to
6. This building is very tall, but we can go to the top in the ..... .
   a) steps b) left c) lift d) bins
7. My clothes were clean and dry, so I put them all ..... .
   a) up b) away c) off d) in
8. They gave the footballer a ..... test to check his health.
   a) messy b) lucky c) tidy d) random
9. If you go to a/an ..... school, you stay all day and all night.
   a) private b) boarding c) special d) abroad
10. Munir has to wash ..... after dinner on Mondays and Wednesdays.
    a) on b) at c) in d) up
11. If someone is ..... to you, they are terrible to you.
    a) cruel b) kind c) polite d) clever
12. A/An ..... asks for money.
    a) officer b) servant c) cook d) beggar
13. If a child ..... well, he/she is being good.
    a) dies b) writes c) behaves d) stays
14. A/An ..... works in someone's home.
    a) servant b) beggar c) teacher d) officer
15. Someone who is kind shows ..... .
    a) kindness b) fear c) pride d) princess
16. A ..... is someone you don't know.
    a) worker b) stranger c) teacher d) seller

Language

17. ..... you have to go to school?
a) Must b) Are c) Does d) Do

18. My mother doesn't ..... go to work today because it is a holiday.
a) have to b) have c) has to d) has

19. We want to give you this book for free. You ..... pay for it.
a) don't have to b) have to c) must d) can

20. When you get on the bus, you ..... buy a ticket.
a) doesn't have to b) don't have to c) have to d) has to

21. The place ..... I lost my watch was the kitchen.
a) when b) who c) whose d) where

22. Alexandria is the city ..... both my big sisters are studying.
a) that b) which c) when d) where

23. Name the person ..... is sitting next to you.
a) who b) where c) when d) which

24. I ..... to wear a school uniform.
a) should b) has c) have d) must

25. She bought me the trainers ..... I wore when I played on the school volleyball team.
a) which b) when c) whose d) who

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My father ..... (have) to get up at six o'clock every day to go to work.
2. Why ..... (not/should) I watch TV all day?
3. Sameera should ..... (doing) random act of kindness next week.
4. My aunt Dalia is a person ..... (where) is always very kind to me.
5. It was the watch ..... (where) my father gave me for my birthday.
6. I saw Ahmed in the park ..... (who) we often play football.
7. The café ..... (when) I meet my friends sells delicious ice cream.
8. The tourists ..... (what) visit Egypt always love the ancient temples.
9. This is the museum ..... (who) the school visited last year.
10. The market is the place ..... (whose) I often get lost.
11. That is the house ..... (when) my grandmother was born.

Unit 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. Please take your ..... home, don't leave it in the park.
   a) grass b) rubbish c) jewellery d) music
2. It was raining for days and then there was a ....., so people used boats to leave their houses!
   a) cloud b) storm c) drought d) flood
3. There are a lot of cars in the city, so the air ..... is very bad.
   a) pollution b) polluted c) polluting d) pollute
4. There was no rain for months this winter, so now there is a ..... .
   a) cloud b) storm c) drought d) flood
5. Not many fish live in the river because it is very ..... .
   a) pollution b) polluted c) polluting d) pollute
6. We should use more ..... energy from the sun and the wind.
   a) black b) green c) pink d) blue
7. To ..... is to be in a particular place or position.
   a) keep b) stay c) collect d) locate
8. ..... is a plant used for making clothes.
   a) Cotton b) Wood c) Wheat d) Bean
9. A/An ..... is a long area of water made for ships or boats.
   a) arch b) castle c) canal d) statue
10. When the planet gets warmer, it is called global ..... .
    a) warning b) warming c) heating d) cooling
11. When ice warms, it ..... .
    a) evaporates b) removes c) melts d) dries
12. The Egyptians opened the Suez ..... in 1869.
    a) Canal b) River c) Sea d) Ocean
13. ..... is very important to Egypt.
    a) Tower b) Tour c) Tourism d) Tourist
14. Sidi Barrani is ..... on the north-west coast of Egypt.
    a) located b) lied c) brought d) stood
15. ..... is not a green form of transport.
    a) Sailing b) Cycling c) Driving d) Walking

Language

16. A train is not as _____ as a plane.

a) fast b) faster c) fastest d) more fast

17. The drought this year is _____ serious as it was last year.

a) not as b) not c) not more d) not much

18. The football players are not playing as _____ as they did last week.

a) worse b) well c) better d) best

19. Tamer likes reading as _____ as he likes playing computer games.

a) more b) few c) less d) much

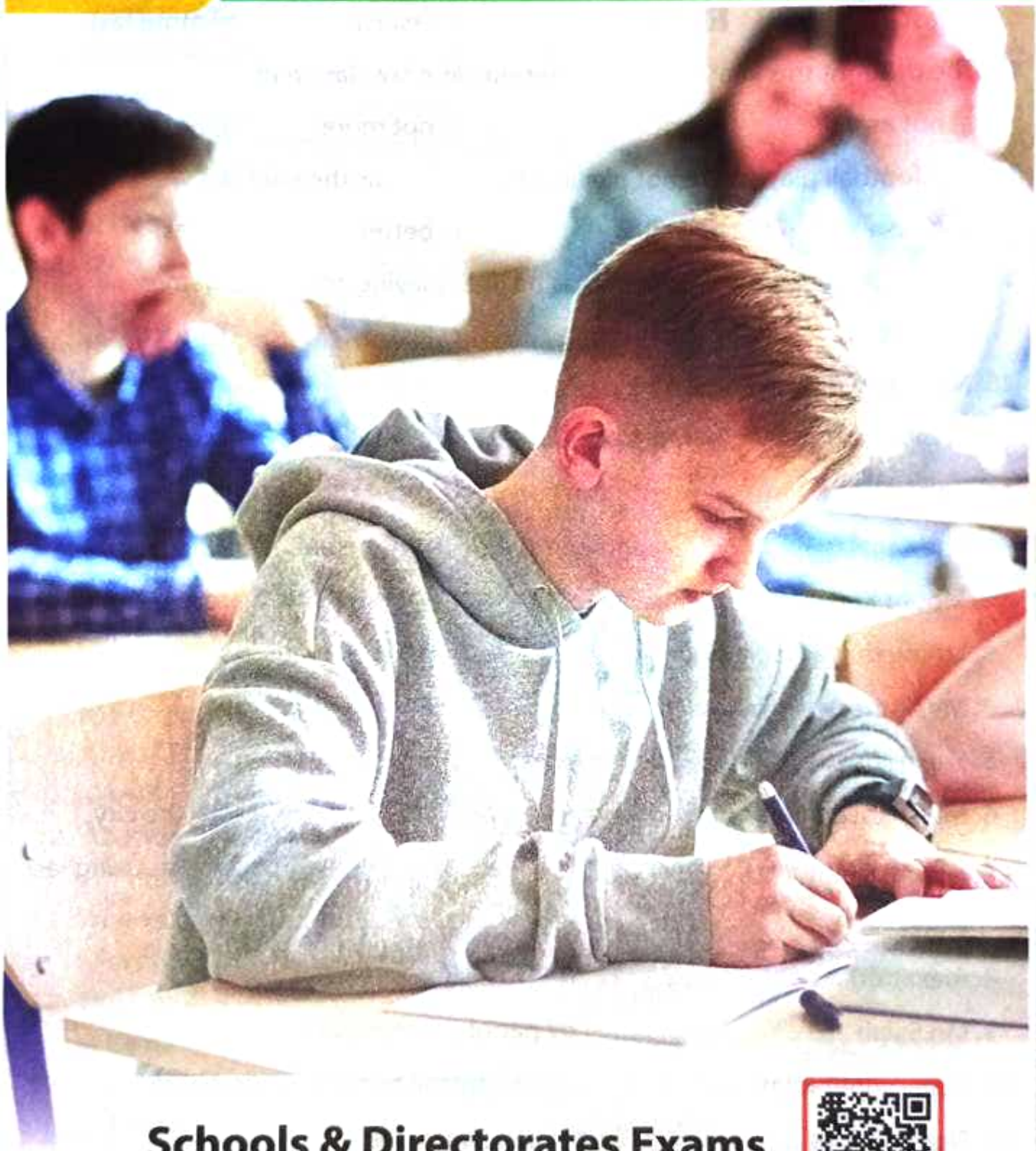
20. Nessma writes in English _____ as she speaks it.

a) much carefully b) more carefully c) carefully d) as carefully

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The canal is _____ (polluted) than it was before.
2. Mount Kenya is _____ (not/high) as Mount Kilimanjaro.
3. I think that air pollution is as _____ (serious) water pollution.
4. My home city is Minya. It _____ (locate) near the Nile.
5. The honey _____ (make) from sugar.
6. Many ancient monuments and buildings _____ (find) in the city.
7. Some people say that recycling is _____ (not/important) as using less water.
8. Alexandria is not _____ (big) as Cairo.
9. Mo Salah _____ (know) by people everywhere.
10. Many vegetables _____ (grow) by the farmers around here.
11. Figs aren't as _____ (delicious) chocolate.
12. Mount Catherine is a _____ (high) mountain than Jabal Mousa.
13. This new phone is _____ (bad) than my old one.
14. The museum _____ (visit) by lots of people every year.

Part 4 Final Exams



Schools & Directorates Exams

اختبارات المدارس والإدارات

Tapescripts

Part 4 Schools & Directorates Exams

1 Cairo Governorate (Gamalia Educational Directorate)

A Listening

24

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب 4

1. Eman is a/an ..... girl.
   a) bored b) active c) clever d) lazy
2. She spends ..... hours doing exercise every day.
   a) two b) three c) four d) five
3. She sleeps ..... every night.
   a) late b) early c) lately d) slow
4. She doesn't like sending ..... .
   a) emails b) photos c) letters d) songs

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

25

Shady tells Ahmed about his favourite subject.

Ahmed : What is your favourite subject?

Shady : (1) ..... .

Ahmed : (2) ..... ?

Shady : Because it is easy and useful.

Ahmed : (3) ..... ?

Shady : I have English twice a week.

Ahmed : When do you study English?

Shady : (4) ..... .

Ahmed : What would you like to be?

Shady : (5) ..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

4.5

A large number of tourists come to Egypt every year. Egypt is one of the most important tourist countries in the whole world. Every winter, thousands of tourists come from Europe and America to spend their holidays in Egypt. They enjoy sunshine and nature. It's very cold in their countries. They also visit Luxor and enjoy seeing our ancient monuments there. The Pyramids, the Sphinx, statues and temples are awesome.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?

.....

2. What other places do you recommend for tourists to visit?

.....

3. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The weather in Egypt in winter is ..... the weather in Europe.

a) as cold as b) colder than c) warmer than d) as hot as

5. ..... tourists visit Egypt every year.

a) A lot of b) Much c) Few d) Little

6. The underlined word "awesome" means ..... .

a) wonderful b) ugly c) bad d) useless

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5

1. You can catch a plane from a/an ..... .

a) port b) airport c) stadium d) museum

2. She is ....., so she can't hear you.

a) blind b) clever c) lazy d) deaf

3. Please, ... sure that you write your email address correctly.

a) take b) do c) make d) decide

4. A/An ..... usually has very strong walls.

a) arch b) tent c) castle d) hut

5. What is the name of the charity ..... you would like to donate money to?

a) who b) which c) where d) what

6. That building became ..... after the earthquake.

a) mosque b) ruins c) museum d) hospital

7. ..... it will rain tomorrow, but I'm not sure.

a) Maybe b) May c) Might d) Must

8. When you get on the bus, you ..... to buy a ticket.

a) has b) have c) doesn't have d) don't have

9. What ..... you think they are doing at the moment?

a) were b) are c) did d) do

10. A ..... is someone who works for no money.

a) vet b) volunteer c) farmer d) scientist

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. Where ..... (did) you yesterday?
2. Luxor train ..... (leave) at 7:00 a.m. every day.
3. This is my school ..... (who) is far from my house.
4. Our football team will win because they are playing very ..... (good).

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"A day on the beach"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب. 4

1. The Ancient Egyptians used ..... for making food.
   a) pots b) bowls c) plastic plates d) both a and b
2. Pots were made of ..... .
   a) mud b) clay c) wood d) metal
3. Clay was taken from the ..... .
   a) Red Sea b) beach c) lake d) River Nile
4. The Ancient Egyptians were very ..... .
   a) bad b) evil c) clever d) stupid

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue: 2.5

Rodina is asking Mariam about her daily routine.

Rodina : Do you have a daily routine, Mariam?
Mariam : (1)..... .
Rodina : (2).....?
Mariam : I get up at 6:30 in the morning.
Rodina : Do you make your breakfast by yourself?
Mariam : (3)..... .
Rodina : (4).....?
Mariam : My mum always makes it for me.
Rodina : How do you go to school every day?
Mariam : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: 4.5

Teenagers need many things to feel happy. They should get lots of rest. They often don't sleep enough, but this is a time in your life when you need a lot of sleep. Young people who sleep eight to ten hours a night are much happier! Teenagers

should be friendly, it's good to be alone sometimes, but people need **each other**. Spend time with your family and also try to make new friends because this makes teenagers happy. Teenagers need to go outside. People need nature to be happy. Go to the desert or the river or, if you live in the city, go to a park. They should help other people. When you do something kind for someone else, this makes you feel happy, too. Teenagers should be grateful. One of the best ways to be happy is to remember the good things in your life and feel pleased about them.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of this passage?.....
2. What do the underlined words "**each other**" refer to?.....
3. In your opinion, what's the best way to be a happy teenager?.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. People should sleep ..... hours a night.
   a) five b) six c) eight d) four
5. Someone who lives in the city can go to a ..... to enjoy nature.
   a) school b) garage c) prison d) park
6. A grateful person is the one who ..... people.
   a) thanks b) hits c) protects d) gives

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You can only open this door in a/an ..... such as a fire.
   a) charity b) emergency c) airport d) party
2. We need to ..... our computer. It doesn't work.
   a) damage b) prepare c) repair d) care
3. A ..... is something you can see yourself in.
   a) board b) cupboard c) drawer d) mirror
4. The ..... is an area of very dry land.
   a) river b) desert c) lake d) sea
5. If you are tired, why don't you ..... a rest?
   a) have b) be c) become d) do

6. Farmers grow a lot of oranges ..... the river.

a) long b) a long c) along d) belong

7. The river doesn't have many fish because it is very ..... .

a) clear b) clean c) pure d) polluted

8. Ali was brushing his teeth when his father ..... .

a) come b) came c) coming d) was coming

9. Which is ....., the train or the plane?

a) fast b) faster c) fastest d) as fast as

10. My grandfather used to ..... tennis.

a) play b) plays c) playing d) played

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. I gave the shoes ..... (who) are too small for me to my cousin.
2. The children are singing ..... (loud) in the playground.
3. Cheese is ..... (make) from milk.
4. Did Noha ..... (went) home?

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"A historic place you visited"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

3 Giza Governorate (El-Dokki Educational Directorate)



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب. 4

1. Magdy Yacoub was born in ..... .

a) America b) Egypt c) England d) Germany

2. He helps people with ..... problems.

a) heart b) brain c) stomach d) lung

3. His father was a ..... .

a) dentist b) teacher c) doctor d) farmer

4. He opened a new hospital in ..... .

a) Giza b) Hurghada c) Aswan d) Luxor

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:



Gaber is telling Amr about his father's job.

Amr : Hello, Gaber. How are you?

Gaber : (1)..... .

Amr : (2).....?

Gaber : My father is a famous doctor.

Amr : (3).....?

Gaber : He works in a big hospital in Cairo.

Amr : Does he go to work in his car?

Gaber : (4)..... . He goes on foot.

Amr : Why does he walk to work?

Gaber : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

4.5

I am Shahana. I'm from India. I live in a village with my parents, my brother and my sister. I share a room with my brother. We all get up early. There is an outside tap at the end of the street where we live. My mum gets water from it every morning. Then we all have breakfast. We have some cakes with a cup of tea. My dad works in a shop. I have two jobs to do when I get home from school. I feed the chickens, then I help my mum make dinner. After dinner, I do my homework. Sometimes I help my brother and my sister to do their homework, too. Then I go to bed in the evening.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to this passage. .....
2. Where does Shahana live? .....
3. Do you think that Shahana is helpful? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the ..... .
   a) tap b) tape c) top d) water
5. Shahana's family gets up ..... .
   a) early b) late c) lazily d) happily
6. What does the underlined word "parents" mean? ..... .
   a) Sister and brother b) Father and mother
   c) Aunt and uncle d) Brother and cousin

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5

1. A ..... helps people who are poor, sick or don't have a home.
   a) group b) prison c) thief d) charity
2. ..... are used on windows to keep out the light.
   a) Curtains b) Carpets c) Mats d) Bells
3. The word "attractive" means ..... .
   a) ugly b) beautiful c) dirty d) bad

4. Deaf people use ..... language to communicate with each other.
a) song b) signal c) sign d) English

5. You ..... eat a lot of sweets.
a) should b) shouldn't c) has to d) doesn't have to

6. Mazen ..... his homework at the moment.
a) is doing b) does c) did d) do

7. There are a lot of cars in the city that cause ..... pollution.
a) air b) water c) food d) wood

8. He was a ..... for a charity. He works for no money.
a) beggar b) patient c) student d) volunteer

9. They didn't ..... to the stadium last month.
a) went b) go c) going d) to go

10. The ..... pumps blood around the body.
a) heart b) lungs c) liver d) legs

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. Tamer must ..... (gets) ready for the exam.
2. This is the house ..... (which) I was born.
3. Don't run ..... (quick) in the street.
4. Maths is ..... (difficult) than science.

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"A visit to the Pyramids"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

4 Giza Governorate (El-Sheikh Zayed Educational Directorate)



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. We bought tickets to visit the ..... .
   a) school b) museum c) space d) club
2. There were ..... things to see in the museum.
   a) a lot of b) little c) nothing d) bit
3. We ..... touch the objects.
   a) must b) mustn't c) have to d) should
4. The place was ..... .
   a) unpleasant b) awful c) boring d) amazing

B Language Functions



2 Complete the following dialogue:

Walid is asking Ali about the computer he bought.

Walid : Where were you yesterday?
Ali : (1)..... .
Walid : (2).....?
Ali : To buy a computer.
Walid : (3).....?
Ali : Yes, I use it very well.
Walid : Who taught you how to use it?
Ali : (4)..... .
Walid : Can I use it when I visit you?
Ali : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension



3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last summer, Sameh wanted to go on a holiday. He decided to stay for a week on his uncle's farm and another week on the beach in Alexandria. First, he travelled with his family to Alexandria by car. They stayed at a nice hotel with a sea view.

Every morning, they went swimming and enjoyed on the beach. In the evening, they used to go shopping. After this week, Sameh travelled by bus to his uncle's farm. There, he spent a very good day that was Sham El-Nessim. He spent it with his cousins. In the morning, they coloured eggs to celebrate for breakfast in the fields. He took many photos in the farm with his cousins. He saw farm animals and played with the dog. In the evening, they had a big dinner and enjoyed singing and dancing. It was a fantastic holiday.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea in this passage? .....
2. Where did Sameh stay in Alexandria? .....
3. In which place do you think Sameh enjoyed his time more?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Sameh went to his uncle's farm by ..... .

a) car b) train c) bus d) bike

5. The underlined adverb "there" in the passage refers to ..... .

a) Alexandria b) uncle's farm c) home d) school

6. The underlined word "celebrate" means to do something ..... .

a) horrible b) enjoyable c) ugly d) bad

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My friend is a ..... person. His room isn't arranged.

a) mess b) messy c) good d) tidy

2. A/An ..... worker is the person who answers phone calls.

a) art club b) street food c) sign language d) call centre

3. Mona had a/an ..... for the new job yesterday.

a) view b) point c) interview d) interaction

4. Don't play football here or you might ..... that car.

a) hurt b) injure c) damage d) repair

5. The woman ..... I visited yesterday is a nurse.
   a) who b) whom c) which d) whose
6. While I was watching the final World Cup match, mum ..... a cake.
   a) makes b) made c) is making d) was making
7. Does Mayar ..... to go to the dentist?
   a) must b) should c) have d) has
8. Giving your seat to someone in the bus is a/an ..... act of kindness.
   a) impolite b) bad c) random d) ungrateful
9. A/An ..... is a boy or girl aged 13 to 19.
   a) adult b) child c) elderly d) teenager
10. ..... is usually made of gold and it is expensive.
   a) Clay b) Rock c) Plastic d) Jewellery

5 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:** 2

1. Where did you ..... (used to) live before you move to Giza?
2. I'm looking forward to ..... (go) home and having a rest.
3. Marina ..... (cook) all morning yesterday.
4. Cars are ..... (comfortable) than bikes.

E Writing

6 **Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your penfriend Ann to tell her about your school trip to the Egyptian Museum. Your name is Talia and your email address is talia@gmail.com. Your friend's email is ann@gmail.com.** 6

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

5 Alexandria Governorate (East Educational Directorate)

A Listening

24

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب 4

1. Ali is ..... years old.
   a) 32 b) 13 c) 33 d) 30
2. Ali works as a/an ..... for a charity.
   a) engineer b) businessman c) volunteer d) doctor
3. The charity helps to clean the ..... .
   a) beach b) home c) school d) hospital
4. They clean the beach at the ..... .
   a) morning b) afternoon c) evening d) weekends

B Language Functions

25

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Hassan and Nabil are talking about sport.

Hassan : Hello, Nabil. Do you like doing sport?
Nabil : (1)..... .
Hassan : (2).....?
Nabil : I like judo.
Hassan : (3).....?
Nabil : I practise it in the club.
Hassan : How often do you practise it?
Nabil : (4)..... .
Hassan : Well, can I come to the club with you?
Nabil : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

35

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Time is very important, so if we have free time, we should spend it in useful ways. Some people like to practise sports to keep fit and **strong**, others prefer reading. Reading is the most important and famous hobby that people can enjoy. It helps

them to find different kinds of information. That's why, we have to encourage our students to go to school libraries. There, they can read and borrow books to know more about different subjects, countries and different people. We can also spend our free time using the modern technology, such as the internet, to enrich our knowledge and improve our hobbies.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of this passage?

.....

2. Why are school libraries very important?

.....

3. In your opinion, how can we make the best use of our free time?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The opposite of the underlined word "strong" is ..... .

a) fast b) weak c) week d) bad

5. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to ..... .

a) reading b) sports c) internet d) technology

6. We should encourage students to go to school libraries to ..... books.

a) play b) write c) watch d) borrow

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There is a red ..... on the floor.

a) card b) carpet c) curtain d) drawer

2. Ali's uncle works for a big oil ..... in the United Arab Emirates.

a) work b) company c) job d) flat

3. I thanked him ..... helping me to clean the room.

a) of b) up c) for d) to

4. We always pray at the ..... .

a) castle b) theatre c) mosque d) museum

5. My father ..... basketball when he was young.

a) is playing b) used to play c) use to play d) plays

6. That is the runner ..... won the race.

a) who b) where c) which d) when

7. It's important to drive ..... when it's raining.

a) careful b) carefully c) quick d) quickly

8. My father likes to ..... money to a charity every month.

a) borrow b) win c) donate d) spend

9. This girl doesn't have a room, but she can ..... the room with her friend.

a) wash b) walk c) cheer d) share

10. Earthquake is a natural ..... .

a) emergency b) countryside c) disaster d) reserve

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. My team won because they played very ..... (good).
2. He ..... (have) to tidy his room. It's really messy.
3. I am looking forward to ..... (see) you.
4. The temple ..... (visit) by lots of people every day.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"Someone you are proud of"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

6 Qalyubia Governorate (Kafr Shukr Educational Directorate)



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب. 4

1. Fareeda Rashwan is a .....
   a) teacher b) doctor c) businesswoman d) nurse
2. She donated ..... million pounds.
   a) one b) two c) three d) four
3. Fareeda Rashwan is ..... years old.
   a) 32 b) 22 c) 23 d) 30
4. Fareeda likes to help ..... people.
   a) rich b) bored c) poor d) excited

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue: 2.5

Heba and Mai are talking about learning new skills.

Heba : Hello, Mai! What are you doing?
Mai : Hello! (1)..... .
Heba : (2).....?
Mai : To communicate with my sister.
Heba : (3).....?
Mai : Yes, she is deaf.
Heba : What can't a deaf person do?
Mai : (4)..... .
Heba : Oh! You are so kind.
Mai : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: 4.5

Computers are good for us. You can get a lot of information from the internet. There is more information on the internet than in the world's biggest library. You can also get friends over the world. You can send e-mails to your friends, watch

news, and play games. Computer games are great. On TV, you can watch a space ship, but in computer games, you can fly it, but I think computers are bad for children's health. In the past, children got around and did sports. Now, they just sit at home playing computer games.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the text? .....
2. What did the children do in the past? .....
3. How do you think the internet is important? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to the ..... .
   a) parents b) sons
   c) children of the past d) children of today
5. The writer thinks that computer games are ..... .
   a) bad b) great c) boring d) tiring
6. The underlined word "send" is the opposite of "..... ".
   a) read b) repeat c) repair d) receive

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Figs are ..... than chocolate.
   a) delicious b) as delicious
   c) more delicious d) the most delicious
2. This is the house ..... my father was born.
   a) how b) who c) when d) where
3. This football has no air inside it. I need a/an ..... to fill it.
   a) water b) pump c) arch d) wood
4. Mona ..... listen to her teachers.
   a) mustn't b) have to c) don't have to d) has to
5. Their father is in ..... because he did something wrong.
   a) park b) prison c) club d) school
6. A/An ..... is something serious or dangerous.
   a) charity b) country c) emergency d) project

7. Dropping rubbish ..... the environment.

a) damages b) cleans c) collects d) behaves

8. Sally is a/an ..... person. She leaves things on her bed.

a) tidy b) messy c) clean d) arranged

9. A person who asks others for money is a ..... .

a) servant b) king c) beggar d) prince

10. Aswan is ..... in the south of Egypt.

a) protected b) built c) produced d) located

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. He answered the questions ..... (easy).
2. I ..... (not/used) to smoke when I was young.
3. While Haggar ..... (play) tennis, she hurt her arm.
4. Football ..... (play) all around the world.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"Your hero"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

7 Gharbia Governorate (East Tanta Educational Directorate)



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب. 4

1. When did you visit the beach? - ..... .
   a) Last Monday b) Last year c) Last week d) Last month
2. For what is that place good for? - ..... .
   a) A new hotel b) A new cinema c) A new theatre d) A new castle
3. What will it give people? - ..... .
   a) Wood b) Gold c) Work d) Money
4. What can you use from the lake? - ..... .
   a) Water b) Workers c) People d) Sand

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:



Hana and Nada are talking about the summer holiday.

Hana : Where did you go last summer?
Nada : (1) ..... .
Hana : Where did you stay?
Nada : (2) ..... .
Hana : (3) ..... ?
Nada : We travelled by car.
Hana : Did you swim in the sea?
Nada : (4) ..... .
Hana : (5) ..... ?
Nada : We stayed there for a week.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:



Egypt has a very long history. It has very amazing things. There are a lot of pyramids here. Tourists from all over the world come to visit them. The Ancient Egyptians put some of their kings in the pyramids. They built the first pyramids

about 4.700 years ago and the biggest pyramids were at Giza. The Great Pyramid of King Khufu took about twenty years to build. They used two million stones to make it and around a hundred thousand workers did that work. Scientists think that the Ancient Egyptians cut large stones from rocks in the mountains, and moved them by boat on the River Nile and then lifted them onto the walls. Finally, they cut stones at the front of the wall to the correct shape.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is this passage about? .....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to? .....
3. In your opinion, why do tourists come to visit the pyramids? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The Ancient Egyptians used about ..... stones to build the Great Pyramid.
   a) 4.700 b) 100.000 c) 200 d) 2.000.000
5. The biggest pyramids were ..... .
   a) for King Khufu b) in the River Nile c) at Giza d) at Fayoum
6. The underlined word "amazing" means ..... .
   a) fantastic b) grateful c) small d) messy

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 5

1. Come and sit on this ....., four people can sit on it.
   a) stool b) sofa c) chair d) wardrobe
2. Alexandria ..... in the north of Egypt.
   a) located b) locates c) is located d) is locating
3. Shady is deaf, but he understands us as we use ..... language.
   a) sound b) signal c) degree d) sign
4. The Egyptian handball team won an important ..... in 2020.
   a) pollution b) calligraphy c) competition d) completion
5. Yasser's grandmother ..... work in a hospital.
   a) used to b) is used c) uses to d) is using to
6. You can watch a sports match at a/an ..... .
   a) entrance b) statue c) museum d) stadium

7. This building is very tall, but we can go to the top in the ..... .

a) stairs b) left c) lift d) attic

8. ..... take in air and help us to breathe.

a) Legs b) Ears c) Lungs d) Eyes

9. I ..... walk to school. I take the bus.

a) have to b) has to c) doesn't have to d) don't have to

10. The hotel is now working with a charity that helps the coral ..... .

a) roofs b) beef c) reefs d) leaf

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. This train goes ..... (fast) than the last one.
2. I ..... (learn) to sail now.
3. Heba ..... (read) a story when the phone rang.
4. I saw Ahmed in the park ..... (which) we often play football.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"Your dream job"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

8 Dakahlia Governorate (Mit Ghamr Educational Directorate)

A Listening

24

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4 نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. What does Noha like?
   a) School. b) Home. c) Bedroom. d) Classroom.
2. There's always ..... when she opens the curtains.
   a) wind b) moonlight c) sunlight d) storms
3. How is her wardrobe?
   a) Small. b) Big. c) Brown. d) Long.
4. What hasn't Noha got in her room?
   a) Basin. b) Armchair. c) Wardrobe. d) Bed.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

25

A guide is showing some tourists the Karnak Temple.

Guide : Welcome to the Karnak Temple.
Tourist : Excuse me. What is this tall stone called?
Guide : (1).....
Tourist : A needle! (2).....?
Guide : It's nearly thirty metres tall.
Tourist : (3).....?
Guide : They're hieroglyphic writings.
Tourist : Who built it?
Guide : (4)..... . They were great people.
Tourist : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

45

One day, Nabil went to town to buy new clothes. First, he tried on a pair of trousers. He didn't like the trousers, so he gave them back to the shopkeeper. Then, he tried a jacket which had the same price as the trousers. Nabil was pleased

with the jacket, and he left the shop. Before he drove home, the shopkeeper ran out. "You didn't pay for the jacket!" said the shopkeeper. "But I gave you the trousers in exchange for the jacket, didn't I?" replied Nabil. "Yes, but you didn't pay for the trousers, either!" said the shopkeeper. "But I didn't buy the trousers," replied Nabil. "I am not so stupid as to pay for something which I never bought."

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is this passage about? .....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "he" refer to? .....
3. What do you think of Nabil? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Nabil was pleased with the ..... .
   a) trousers b) hat c) jacket d) shoes
5. The underlined word "trousers" is the same meaning as "..... ".
   a) shoes b) pants c) skirts d) shirts
6. Nabil gave the ..... back to the shopkeeper.
   a) shop b) jacket c) money d) trousers

Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Magid won an international cycling ..... .
   a) pollution b) competition c) completion d) population
2. We ..... the Nile yesterday.
   a) cross b) to cross c) crossing d) crossed
3. We eat three meals ..... .
   a) yearly b) daily c) weekly d) monthly
4. The ..... has seats for 50.000 people.
   a) arch b) pyramid c) stadium d) guide
5. Thieves go to ..... because they take things that don't belong to them.
   a) person b) port c) prison d) station

6. My sister ..... good at maths.

a) is always b) always is c) has always d) always has

7. Children should be careful when they buy things from a street-food ..... .

a) buyer b) seller

c) worker d) waiter

8. Nada and Mai ..... their bikes at the moment.

a) ride b) is riding c) rides d) are riding

9. Mother does the cooking and I ..... up after having lunch.

a) wash b) give c) look d) hard

10. Our ..... neighbour doesn't have enough money to live well.

a) rich b) high c) poor d) hard

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. They ..... (was) happy with their test results last term.
2. There used ..... (being) houses around here long time ago.
3. It was hot yesterday, so we ..... (go) swimming.
4. You ..... (mustn't) listen to your teachers in class.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"Helping the environment"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

9 Kafr El-Sheikh Governorate (El-Ryaid Educational Directorate)

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 4

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. Omar was born in ..... .
   a) 1994 b) 1949 c) 2002 d) 1990
2. A/An ..... attacked him when he was 22.
   a) whale b) shark c) snake d) octopus
3. Omar lost his ..... .
   a) arm b) head c) fingers d) leg
4. Omar is an important sports ..... .
   a) doctor b) coach c) engineer d) scientist

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue: 2.5

Baher is asking Ahmed about his new tablet.

Baher : Hi, Ahmed. How are you?
Ahmed : Hi, Baher. (1)..... .
Baher : (2).....?
Ahmed : Yes, I have got a new one.
Baher : (3).....?
Ahmed : It costs about four thousand pounds.
Baher : Does your new tablet have a big screen?
Ahmed : (4)..... . It is 10 inches. Would you like to see it?
Baher : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: 4.5

My name is Maher. I was born in Zagazig in 2008. I live in Giza and I am a pupil at El Manar Prep School. My favourite subject is English. I like watching foreign films and reading short stories. I hope to be a TV reporter. A TV reporter talks to

different people In front of a camera. I have got one sister and two brothers. My father is a hotel manager. He makes sure that all rooms are clean and comfortable, he also looks after visitors. My mother's a scientist at Cairo University.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is this passage about? .....
2. How many people are there in Maher's family? .....
3. Why do you think Maher would like to be a TV reporter? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Maher is a ..... .
   a) hotel manager b) TV reporter
   c) student d) scientist
5. Maher's favourite subject is ..... .
   a) history b) Arabic
   c) German d) English
6. The underlined pronoun "he" refers to ..... .
   a) Maher b) Maher's father
   c) one of the visitors d) the TV reporter

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ..... is a place where people go when they do something wrong.
   a) clinic b) workshop c) prison d) hospital
2. We have a beautiful ..... on the floor in front of the living room.
   a) fridge b) curtain c) carpet d) TV
3. We need a computer engineer to ..... our computer as it doesn't work.
   a) repair b) sail c) spend d) stay
4. To be ..... is to be happy about the good things in your life.
   a) lonely b) worried c) grateful d) greedy
5. The ..... tells the parts of our body what to do.
   a) heart b) stomach c) eye d) brain

6. We are very ..... of our Egyptian scientists everywhere.

a) proud b) hungry c) voluntary d) terrible

7. I usually ..... my baby sister when my parents are away.

a) look after b) wash up c) tidy up d) look up

8. She ..... a sports car.

a) never drive b) drives never c) never drives d) never

9. Thank you very much for your e-mail ..... was very interesting.

a) who b) which c) where d) what

10. ..... your friends ready for the exam last week?

a) Was b) Did c) Do d) Were

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. Giza ..... (know) for its ancient pyramids.
2. My uncle is a good driver. He drives ..... (careful).
3. Did he ..... (used) to study hard?
4. While I ..... (take) a bath, the light went out.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"Your school"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

24

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب. 4

1. What should we do for the environment? ..... .
   a) Pollute it b) Protect it c) Waste it d) Burn it
2. How could we reduce global warming? ..... .
   a) Save energy b) Waste energy
   c) Use hot water d) Take long showers
3. What should we do? ..... .
   a) Plant trees b) Cut trees c) Buy trees d) Sell trees
4. Trees give us ..... .
   a) oil b) water c) oxygen d) air

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

2.5

Soha is booking a ticket to visit the Egyptian Museum.

Ticket officer : Good morning, the Egyptian Museum. How can I help you?

Soha : Good morning, (1).....?

Ticket officer : We are open from 9:00 a.m to 6:00 p.m.

Soha : Can I buy the tickets online?

Ticket officer : (2)..... .

Soha : How much does the ticket cost?

Ticket officer : (3)..... .

Soha : (4).....?

Ticket officer : Yes, you can get your children with you. Children under five are free.

Soha : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: 4.5

Alexandria is one of the oldest cities in Egypt and is located in the north of Egypt. It is Egypt's second-largest city with a population of around four million people. It is the country's largest seaport. Among the sights, the beautiful Montazah Palace is visitors' favourite place. It stands in some of the most awesome gardens in Alexandria. Also, Qaitbay Citadel is one of the most wonderful buildings in Egypt. Tourists have to buy a ticket to look around the Citadel, which is more than 500 years old. The Library of Alexandria is an important library designed to be the largest library since the ancient world. It is our duty to protect this historic city and encourage tourists to visit it.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of this passage? .....
2. Where is the city of Alexandria located? .....
3. Why do you think we should protect the city of Alexandria? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "awesome" means ..... .
   a) terrible b) amazed c) amazing d) bad
5. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to ..... .
   a) Egypt b) the citadel
   c) Montazah Palace d) Alexandria
6. Tourists must buy a/an ..... to look around the Citadel.
   a) advert b) ticket c) poster d) booklet

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 5

1. Many people in the city live in a ..... of flats.
   a) black b) block c) house d) chest
2. Sara decides to ..... like a princess in the party.
   a) swim b) have c) belong d) behave
3. The skin of the zebra is ..... .
   a) blue b) plain c) sharp d) striped

4. A terrible event, such as an earthquake, is a ..... .

a) natural disaster b) charity c) goal d) competition

5. A ..... helps people who are poor, sick or don't have a home.

a) group b) prison c) charity d) thief

6. This building is very tall, but we can go to the top in the ..... .

a) left b) lift c) steps d) machine

7. A ..... is a piece of money made of metal.

a) tool b) coin c) mask d) vase

8. London is the city ..... my elder brother is working.

a) where b) which c) that d) when

9. You ..... eat or drink at the library.

a) must b) mustn't c) have to d) any

10. Why ..... you angry at the meeting yesterday?

a) did b) are c) were d) was

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

2

1. As we ..... (walk) on our way to school, we saw an accident.
2. Many photoes ..... (take) by the mobile phones every day.
3. The cat is sitting in the sun ..... (lazy).
4. Khalid used to have an old car, but now he ..... (didn't).

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

6

"A description of your bedroom"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

11 Menofia Governorate (Quesna Educational Administration)

A Listening

24

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب 4

1. What does Marwa do? - She is a ..... .
   a) teacher b) carpenter c) dentist d) nurse
2. She works in ..... .
   a) Egypt b) Japan c) Saudi Arabia d) India
3. She has ..... children.
   a) two b) three c) four d) five
4. She advises her patients to look after their ..... .
   a) teeth b) bodies c) ears d) eyes

B Language Functions

25

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Sara is asking Yara about her last weekend.

Sara : Where did you go last Friday?
Yara : (1)..... .
Sara : (2).....?
Yara : I went to my uncle's farm by car.
Sara : (3) .....?
Yara : I helped my uncle with his work.
Sara : How long did you stay there?
Yara : (4)..... .
Sara : Did you enjoy your time there?
Yara : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

45

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last week, Sami decided to spend his weekend in Alexandria with his cousin Adel who lives there. He got up early and drove before it was busy on the road. When he arrived there, he met Adel at a café where they had something cold as it

was very hot on that day. His cousin Adel is a great doctor. First, they went to the beach where they had a delicious meal of fish. When the sun was high, they swam for some time in the sea. At the sunset, they left the beach and went shopping in a large mall in the centre of the town. Sami bought a very expensive mobile for his wife and a lot of toys for his children.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the passage about? .....
2. Where did Sami and his cousin have a meal of fish? .....
3. Do you think Sami is a rich man? Why? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "large" means ..... .
   a) big b) bad c) small d) tiny
5. The underlined word "there" refers to ..... .
   a) Cafe b) the beach c) the mall d) Alexandria
6. Adel spent ..... in Alexanaria.
   a) a week b) a day c) a fortnight d) an hour

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I ..... a room with my sister. There are two beds.
   a) do b) cry c) share d) play
2. The opposite of "terrible" is ..... .
   a) good b) far c) small d) ugly
3. The boy is ....., but he understands us as we use sign language.
   a) blind b) deaf c) sick d) patient
4. There was no rain for four months this winter, so now there is a ..... .
   a) flood b) storm c) pollution d) drought
5. A ..... worker helps people or animals that need help.
   a) charity b) sports c) nuclear d) fruit
6. Bikes are a ..... form of transport. They don't pollute the air.
   a) black b) green c) yellow d) purple

7. No country ..... as much rubbish as Germany.

a) cycles b) recycles c) rewrites d) rearranges

8. There aren't ..... chairs for all pupils.

a) much b) enough c) a little d) less

9. He ..... have a ticket or he can't travel.

a) don't have to b) has to c) have to d) doesn't have to

10. You should ..... running short distances.

a) start b) starts c) started d) starting

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. ..... (Do) you meet Hoda last Monday?
2. Always speak ..... (quiet) to your parents.
3. The farmers ..... (grow) plants now.
4. Cairo is the city ..... (which) I was born.

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"Recycling things"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

12 Damietta Governorate (Damietta Educational Directorate)



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



1. How old is Kareem? - ..... .
   a) 9 b) 15 c) 10 d) 5
2. What does Kareem love visiting? - ..... places.
   a) Wide b) Clean c) New d) Historical
3. What is Kareem's hobby? - ..... .
   a) Swimming b) Singing c) Reading d) Climbing
4. What does Kareem feel with his friends? - ..... .
   a) Sad b) Happy c) Angry d) Worried

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:



A tourist is asking Hala about the Pyramids.

Tourist : Excuse me. Can I ask you some questions?
Hala : (1)..... .
Tourist : (2).....?
Hala : The Pyramids are at Giza.
Tourist : Are they far away from here?
Hala : (3)..... .
Tourist : How can I go there?
Hala : (4)..... .
Tourist : (5).....?
Hala : The Ancient Egyptians built them.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:



Ahmed is a student in a preparatory school. He works as a volunteer for a charity. He lives in Damietta. Damietta is a beautiful city which has many markets and beaches. Also, there are many charities which help poor, old and sick people. A lot of

people **donate** money and clothes for them. Ahmed visits a home for old people in New Damietta. He visits a hospital for ill children to play and read stories for **them**. Also, he likes feeding cats and dogs. Last weekend, he went to Ras El Bar with his friends to share in a charity work. They cleaned the beach. They collected rubbish and plastic bottles. They went to the market to buy some souvenirs for the old.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What did Ahmed buy from Ras El Bar? .....
2. Suggest a suitable title for the passage. .....
3. Do you think Ahmed is a good boy? Why/ Why not? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "**donate**" means ..... .
   a) buy b) help c) give d) take
5. Ahmed likes ..... cats and dogs.
   a) feeding b) eating c) playing d) running
6. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to the ..... .
   a) old people b) ill children c) friends d) charities

Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We need more rain or there might be a ..... .
   a) storm b) flood c) wind d) drought
2. A ..... looks after people in a hospital.
   a) nurse b) police officer
   c) computer engineer d) seller
3. My mother is ..... of my younger brother. He gets high marks.
   a) sad b) scared c) angry d) proud
4. The house has a/an ..... garden full of flowers and trees.
   a) poor b) attractive c) terrible d) ugly
5. The ..... is a pot used for holding flowers.
   a) vase b) mask c) coin d) tool

6. Eman's sister is in hospital because of eye ..... .

a) experiment b) plant c) job d) infection

7. Paris is ..... than London.

a) beautiful b) most beautiful c) not beautiful d) more beautiful

8. She has a son ..... is a doctor.

a) which b) where c) what d) who

9. One of the greatest dangers that faces people face on earth is ..... change.

a) electric b) climate c) green d) forest

10. There ..... a hotel in our city ten years ago, but now there are three.

a) weren't b) didn't c) didn't use to be d) isn't

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. You ..... (should) eat a lot of sweets.
2. The Egyptian basketball team ..... (win) the match yesterday.
3. My dad speaks ..... (loud).
4. When ..... (do) she get up every day?

E Writing

6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words to your penfriend Sara telling her about "What you usually do on holidays" Your name is Ola. Your email address is ola@gmail.com. Your friend's email is sara@gmail.com 6

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

13 Sharkia Governorate (Awlad Saqr Directorate)



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب 4

1. Mr Othman is my ..... .
   a) friend b) neighbour c) teacher d) uncle
2. Mr Othman helped me pass my ..... exam.
   a) English b) maths c) history d) geography
3. Mr Othman was teaching at a ..... school.
   a) secondary b) nursery c) primary d) preparatory
4. He used his old ..... to help his students.
   a) schoolbooks b) diaries c) stories d) tools

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

25

Fatma wants to ask her dad about her family history.

Fatma : Dad, can I ask you some questions?
Dad : (1)..... . What do you want to know?
Fatma : Did you use to live in a village or in a city?
Dad : (2)..... .
Fatma : In a village! How did you use to travel to school?
Dad : (3)..... .
Fatma : (4).....?
Dad : I took about one hour to cycle to school which was in the city.
Fatma : (5).....?
Dad : Very early! I used to get up at 4.30 a.m!

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:



Water is very important for the lives of people, plants and animals. Water comes from rain. When there is little rain for a long time, some places have a **drought**. This means that the land becomes very dry. Egypt doesn't have much rain, so it is

important for us to save water. We can save water if we take short showers instead of long showers. The Nile is the only source of water in Egypt. We use it to drink, water our crops and to transport from one place to another so we should deal with it in a good way. The Nile is very important for the life of all Egyptians.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What will happen if we don't save water? .....
2. When does the land become dry? .....
3. What is the main idea of this passage? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The opposite of the word "drought" is ..... .
   a) flood b) rain c) shower d) snowy
5. Long showers ..... a lot of water.
   a) save b) cost c) waste d) know
6. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ..... .
   a) rain b) the Nile c) shower d) place

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Ancient Egyptians used ..... for writing.
   a) masks b) jewellery c) coins d) papyrus
2. If you go to a/an ..... school, you stay all day and all night.
   a) private b) boarding c) special d) abroad
3. We ..... cross the street when the traffic light is red.
   a) must b) mustn't c) should d) doesn't
4. The smoke of factories causes ..... pollution.
   a) air b) water c) soil d) plant
5. A/An ..... is a large, dangerous animal that lives in the sea.
   a) shark b) eagle c) turtle d) lion
6. Visiting the museum was really ..... . We all enjoyed our time.
   a) tiring b) awesome c) boring d) terrible

7. I arrived at the bus stop late, so I ..... the bus.

a) caught b) missed c) handed d) reached

8. This is the school ..... father works in.

a) what b) who c) which d) where

9. We have a house with a large ..... full of flowers and trees.

a) garden b) fountain c) factory d) time

10. Ahmed ..... his computer at the moment.

a) repairs b) repair c) repaired d) is repairing

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. On Friday, she ..... (have to) get up early. It is a holiday.
2. Bikes are ..... (expensive) than cars.
3. As we ..... (walk) into the museum, we saw some huge statues.
4. The museum ..... (visit) by lots of people every year.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"Random Acts of Kindness Day"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

14 Ismailia Governorate (Directorate of Education)



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



1. What time does Mariam get up?
   a) At six. b) At seven.
   c) At six thirty. d) At nine.
2. Who makes breakfast in the morning?
   a) Mariam. b) Mother.
   c) Dad. d) Mariam's sister.
3. How does Mariam go to school?
   a) By bus. b) In a car.
   c) By bike. d) On foot.
4. Who does Mariam go to school with?
   a) Her friend. b) Her mum.
   c) Her brother. d) No one.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:



Ali wants to know what Hani is going to do this weekend.

Ali : Hello, Hani. What are you going to do this weekend?
Hani : Hello, Ali. (1) ..... .
Ali : Why are you going to that charity?
Hani : (2) ..... .
Ali : Great! What do you do to help poor people?
Hani : (3) ..... .
Ali : (4) ..... ?
Hani : Yes, there are many disabled people.
Ali : (5) ..... ?
Hani : I go there every weekend.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

There are so many historic places in Egypt. Everyone should visit these historic places. That helps us to know more about our beautiful country. Last week, I visited the Citadel in Cairo. It's an important monument. It has very tall towers. I saw them from a long way. Salah al-Din built it to protect Cairo. It took eight years to complete. I visited many museums and mosques there. I hope to visit it again one day. I am also going to visit the Museum of Islamic Art next week. It's a very important place where you can see a lot of things of the Islamic period. It's open from 9:30 a.m to 6:30 p.m every day except Friday. I hope I will have a good time **there**.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage? .....
2. Do you think the writer will enjoy his time in the Museum of Islamic Art? Why?
.....
3. Why did Salah al-Din build the Citadel?.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The Citadel in Cairo is ..... .
   a) modern b) new c) ancient d) bad
5. You can visit the Museum of Islamic Art ..... .
   a) every day b) on Fridays
   c) at 12 a.m. d) six days a week
6. The underlined word "**there**" refers to ..... .
   a) the Museum of Islamic Art b) the Citadel
   c) the mosque d) towers

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ..... stamps is my favourite hobby.
   a) Making b) Giving c) Collecting d) Recycling
2. People ..... the ingredients in big bowls in Ancient Egypt.
   a) fixed b) painted c) mixed d) repaired
3. He will go to a/an ..... school where he will live all the time.
   a) outside b) national c) boarding d) government
4. Which sport do you like to .....?
   a) do b) make c) see d) be

5. "....." means happening without a plan.
a) Generous b) Fantastic c) Random d) Disabled

6. Mum told her son to wash his face in the ..... .
a) basin b) curtain c) mirror d) carpet

7. The ..... helps to keep people safe in the streets.
a) engineer b) police officer c) shop worker d) nurse

8. He used to live in a village, but now he ..... in the city.
a) lived b) used to live c) living d) lives

9. We ..... to Aswan tomorrow.
a) go b) are going c) goes d) went

10. You ..... climb on the wall. It's dangerous.
a) mustn't b) must c) should d) can

5 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:** 2

1. The Egyptian handball team ..... (win) the competition last year.
2. This is the museum ..... (who) the school visited last year.
3. My little sister is crying ..... (noisy).
4. She was cooking while her brother ..... (read) a book.

E Writing

6 **Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend telling him about the job you would like to do in the future. Your name is Ali and your email is ali@gmail. com. Your friend's name is Ahmed and his email is ahmed@gmail.com.** 6

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

24

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب 4

1. Dina gets up at ..... in the morning.
   a) five b) six c) seven d) eight
2. Dina has breakfast ..... .
   a) at home b) on the road c) at a restaurant d) at school
3. Dina has ..... brother(s).
   a) no b) one c) two d) three
4. Dina is good at ..... .
   a) maths b) Arabic c) English d) geography

B Language Functions

25

Complete the following dialogue:

Hany is asking Omar about what he did yesterday.

Hany : Where did you go yesterday, Omar?
Omar : (1)..... .
Hany : Did you enjoy yourself at the zoo?
Omar : (2)..... .
Hany : (3).....?
Omar : I went there because I wanted to see the monkeys.
Hany : Who did you go with?
Omar : (4)..... .
Hany : (5).....?
Omar : I returned home at seven in the evening.

C Reading Comprehension

45

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Most people have three meals every day; breakfast, lunch and dinner. They eat these meals at known times, in the morning, in the afternoon and in the evening. But in fact most of them do not care about what they should eat for each meal.

Doctors say that healthy food is very important, and people should eat lots of fruits and vegetables. People should not eat too many cakes, crisps, sweets and fast food because they are unhealthy foods and they always cause health problems. Doctors advise people to drink a lot of water and milk every day and not to have too many sugary drinks. Doctors advise people not to stay at home all the time to keep healthy. They should go for walks, do exercise or practise any sport.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage? .....
2. What should people eat and drink to keep healthy? .....
3. Do you think that unhealthy foods are good for your body? Why?/ Why not?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ..... .

a) doctors b) meals c) people d) foods

5. Doctors advise people not to eat too many ..... .

a) fruits b) healthy foods c) vegetables d) cakes

6. ..... people care about healthy food.

a) Many b) Few c) All d) No

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Amira sometimes ..... to music on her way to school.

a) listen b) listened c) listening d) listens

2. My mother keeps her clothes in a big ..... .

a) cupboard b) wardrobe c) armchair d) bookshelf

3. Manal broke her leg while she ..... the window.

a) cleaned b) has cleaned c) was cleaning d) were cleaning

4. Children must not ..... the objects in the museum.

a) see b) protect c) repair d) touch

5. This is the tablet ..... my father bought last week.

a) which b) who c) where d) when

6. Magdy Yacoub became an important heart ..... .

a) patient b) patron c) surgeon d) cleaner

7. I opened the window and filled my ..... with cool, fresh air.

a) stomach b) lungs c) brain d) teeth

8. The ..... is an area of very dry land.

a) forest b) river c) waterfall d) desert

9. Does Hala ..... up her bedroom once a week?

a) make b) tidy c) take d) wake

10. Who's the ..... of this hotel?

a) tourist b) officer c) owner d) worker

5 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:** (2)

1. Fady is ..... (travel) to Aswan at the moment.
2. Did you ..... (using) to walk to school?
3. Mum was cooking when father ..... (arrive).
4. That's the shop ..... (who) I bought my wedding ring.

E Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:** (6)

"How could you help people in your community?"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

16 Fayoum Governorate (Fayoum Educational Directorate)



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب 4

1. When does Ali come back from school? - At ..... .
   a) one o'clock b) two o'clock c) three o'clock d) four o'clock
2. When does he get up? - ..... .
   a) Very late. b) Very early. c) At 8 a.m. d) At 9 a.m.
3. What does he do at 7.30? - He ..... .
   a) sleeps b) washes c) watches TV d) has breakfast
4. When does he do his homework? - ..... .
   a) In the morning b) In the afternoon c) In the evening d) At night

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Nader and Ali are talking about sports.

Nader : Hello, Ali. How are you?
Ali : Hi, Nader. (1) ..... .
Nader : (2) .....?
Ali : My favourite sport is football.
Nader : Oh, I like football, too. (3) .....?
Ali : I practise it in the club. What about you?
Nader : (4) ..... .
Ali : Why don't we go together to the club next weekend?
Nader : (5) ..... . When shall we meet?
Ali : Next Friday at 6 p.m.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hala says her school project this week is to think about **rubbish** at school. In her school, they have a rubbish bin in every room. The students are very good and they always put their rubbish in the bins. The rubbish is collected every week and

goes to a special place in the city. But when they look inside the bins, they can see that most of the rubbish is made of paper or plastic. They can recycle a lot of this rubbish. So now, before students put things in the rubbish bins, the teachers ask them to think, "Can we recycle that?" If the answer is yes, they can put it in a special bin so it can be used again.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage? .....
2. Do you think students can recycle rubbish? How? .....
3. Where do students put their rubbish? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "rubbish" means ..... .
   a) marks b) metal c) wood d) litter
5. The school project this week is about ..... .
   a) sport b) rubbish c) money d) football
6. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ..... .
   a) things b) bins c) plastic d) students

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 5

1. Mohammed Ali was the ..... of Egypt in the past. He was very important.
   a) ruler b) roller c) baker d) waiter
2. Our next door ..... is very kind.
   a) neighbour b) cafe c) ring d) community
3. Pieces of equipment that you can use to make or repair things are called ..... .
   a) pools b) roles c) tools d) poles
4. We put up some new ..... on the window of the living room.
   a) cushions b) carpets c) mirrors d) curtains
5. A ..... is a person who can show you round a place.
   a) cook b) waiter c) tourist d) guide
6. Please, turn the ..... off. I want to sleep.
   a) cupboard b) sofa c) lamp d) desk

7. This book is very interesting. I ..... it to you.

a) recommend b) advise c) tell d) say

8. Students ..... follow their school rules.

a) are b) have c) must d) had

9. This is the doctor ..... examined my brother.

a) where b) who c) which d) when

10. My friend ..... to school early.

a) go always b) goes always c) always goes d) always go

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. Many ancient monuments and buildings ..... (find) in the city.
2. Always speak ..... (quiet) to your parents.
3. They ..... (get) married in July, 2017.
4. When I was ten, I used to ..... (was) funny.

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"Life in Ancient Egypt"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

17 Beni Suef Governorate (Somosta Educational Zone)

A Listening

24

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب. 4

1. At the weekend, we go to the ..... and pick up the rubbish.
   a) coach b) rich c) beach d) search
2. I work as a ..... for a charity.
   a) volunteer b) voter c) farmer d) voice
3. We always pick up plastic ..... .
   a) pops b) bottles c) posts d) pants
4. The charity helps to ..... our local beach.
   a) play b) cut c) close d) clean

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue: 2.5

Ahmed is meeting a tourist at the Pyramids.

Ahmed : Can I ask you some questions?
Tourist : (1)..... .
Ahmed : (2).....?
Tourist : I am from England.
Ahmed : Is this your first visit to Egypt?
Tourist : (3)..... .
Ahmed : (4).....?
Tourist : I will stay here for two weeks.
Ahmed : Thanks, sir. Have a nice stay!
Tourist : (5)..... .

D Vocabulary and Structure

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: 4.5

Egypt has lots of historic places. Last winter, I had a **fantastic** holiday in Luxor. I went there with my family. We stayed in a comfortable hotel. We enjoyed visiting our great monuments. We visited the Valley of the Kings. **It** is one of the most popular places in Luxor. We went to the Valley of the Kings early in the morning

because that was the best time. We met many tourists. I took photos with my mobile phone. We spent seven days in Luxor. We enjoyed a lot. We were so happy. Luxor is such a nice city. I advise everyone to visit Luxor.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to this passage.

.....

2. Why did they go to the Valley of the Kings early in the morning?

.....

3. What do you think of Luxor?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "fantastic" means ..... .
   a) boring b) wonderful c) bad d) sad
5. The family spent a ..... in Luxor.
   a) week b) month c) day d) year
6. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to ..... .
   a) the holiday b) Luxor
   c) the Valley of the Kings d) the photo

C Reading Comprehension

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Huda has a/an ..... today. She hopes to get the new job.
   a) vision b) review c) interview d) view
2. Lina's cousin is in the hospital with an eye ..... .
   a) pollution b) pollute c) infect d) infection
3. Deaf people ..... in sign language.
   a) recommend b) make c) cook d) communicate
4. ..... the meat into small pieces before you cook it.
   a) Infect b) Plant c) Cut d) Pump
5. Children must learn how to ..... politely.
   a) buy b) behave c) repair d) design
6. Miss Amal used to wear a gold ..... around her neck.
   a) necklace b) ring c) mask d) neighbour

7. Climate ..... is a very dangerous problem.

a) charge b) chair c) change d) chain

8. Amr used to play football when he was young, but now he ..... .

a) isn't b) don't c) wasn't d) doesn't

9. They ..... football. They prefer tennis.

a) likes b) doesn't like c) not like d) don't like

10. My mother was cooking ..... my father came.

a) when b) while c) as d) which

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. Mohamed Salah plays football ..... (good).
2. Jomana is ..... (wrote) a message now.
3. Why ..... (be) you laughing?
4. This is the school ..... (which) we learn.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"How to keep the environment clean"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

18 El-Minya Governorate (El-Minya Educational Directorate)

A Listening

24

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب. 4

1. What is Aya's home city? - ..... .
   a) Cairo b) Minya c) Tanta d) Giza
2. Where's Aya's home city? - ..... .
   a) Near the Nile b) North c) South d) East
3. What is Minya known for? - ..... .
   a) Sweet b) Fruits c) Black honey d) Rice
4. Which plants are grown in Minya? - ..... .
   a) Cotton b) Sugar
   c) Cotton and sugar cane d) Rice

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue: 2.5

The teacher is asking Mai about her father's job.

Teacher : Hi, Mai. How are you today?
Mai : (1) ..... .
Teacher : What is your father's job?
Mai : (2) ..... .
Teacher : (3) .....?
Mai : He works in a hospital in Cairo.
Teacher : (4) .....?
Mai : He examines patients and gives them medicine.
Teacher : Does he like helping poor people?
Mai : (5) ..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: 4.5

Tourism is very important for Egypt which is known for its ancient treasures and rich history. Every winter, thousands of tourists come to Egypt from all parts of the world. They come from Europe, Asia and Africa to spend their holiday in

our great country. Those tourists come to enjoy the good weather of Egypt. They enjoy our golden sand beaches at Sharm El Sheikh and Hurghada. Most of them visit the Egyptian Museum in Cairo to see Tutankhamun and his jewellery. When it is very cold in their countries, they like to visit Luxor and Aswan. They like to see the ancient treasures and temples. They also visit the Pyramids at Giza.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage? .....
2. Where do tourists come from? .....
3. Why do you think tourism is important to Egypt? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the ..... .
   a) sunshine b) weather c) museum d) beach
5. Tourists visit the ..... at Giza.
   a) the Egyptian Museum b) Pyramids
   c) Europe d) Sphinx
6. The underlined word "ancient" means ..... .
   a) modern b) beautiful c) very old d) ugly

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We will be ..... for any information you can give us.
   a) loud b) quick c) careful d) grateful
2. The student's handwriting is terrible. He should learn ..... .
   a) photos b) calligraphy c) signs d) biography
3. I visited the village ..... my father was born.
   a) which b) whose c) where d) who
4. The Egyptian handball team won an important ..... in 2020.
   a) pollution b) calligraphy c) competition d) completion
5. Ali ..... coffee for breakfast. He likes to drink tea.
   a) doesn't drink b) drinks c) drink d) don't drink

6. There is a beautiful ..... in our garden.
   a) temple b) fountain c) museum d) ward
7. Sameera Moussa was born ..... 1917.
   a) when b) in c) ago d) from
8. Dina ..... give money to a charity, but now she does.
   a) used b) didn't use c) used to d) didn't use to
9. To be ..... means not being with other people.
   a) alone b) busy c) pleased d) worried
10. ..... is a plant used for making clothes.
   a) Cotton b) Wood c) Wheat d) Bean

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. While she ..... (study), the light went out.
2. You ..... (must) eat or drink in a museum.
3. The letter ..... (write) by Heba.
4. He ..... (spend) a week in Alexandria last summer.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"The job you prefer"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

A Listening

24

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4 نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. What were mirrors made of in Ancient Egypt?
   a) Metal. b) Glass.
   c) Papyrus. d) Wood.
2. What did they use mirrors for?
   a) Paint around their eyes. b) Make food.
   c) Paint walls. d) See themselves.
3. What were pots and bowls made of in Ancient Egypt?
   a) Glass. b) Wood.
   c) Metal. d) Clay.
4. Where did they take clay from?
   a) The canal. b) The River Nile.
   c) The Red Sea. d) The lake.

B Language Functions

25

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Motaz is asking Sleem about his hero.

Motaz : Who is your hero, Sleem?
Sleem : (1)..... .
Motaz : What was your grandfather's job?
Sleem : (2)..... .
Motaz : Great! (3).....?
Sleem : He worked in a big hospital in Cairo.
Motaz : Did he use to be a volunteer?
Sleem : (4)..... .
Motaz : (5).....?
Sleem : Yes, I am so proud of him.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

4.5

I'm Hassan. My family lives in Alexandria, but my dad doesn't work in Egypt. He works in England. He went to the airport on Sunday evening and he caught the plane to England. He will come home next month. On Saturday, I don't go to school and my brother doesn't go to school as well. We play chess or go to the park. On Sunday mornings, we go swimming. My sister is three and she doesn't swim. She watches us. I hope to travel to England when I grow up to complete my study there. My father encourages me to do that.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage. .....
2. Where does Hassan's father work? .....
3. Why do you think Hassan's sister doesn't swim? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "she" refers to ..... .
   a) Hassan b) Hassan's mother c) Hassan's sister d) Hassan's family
5. When do they go to the park? - ..... .
   a) On Sunday b) On Saturday c) Every day d) On Wednesday
6. The underlined word "complete" means ..... .
   a) finish b) begin c) start d) continue

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5

1. Air ..... is when there are dangerous chemicals in the air.
   a) port b) population c) pollution d) bag
2. "....." means extremely good or excellent.
   a) Hard b) Difficult c) Boring d) Fantastic
3. It started to rain while they ..... home.
   a) walking b) were walking c) walked d) walk
4. A ..... is a place where you can watch a sports match.
   a) theatre b) cinema c) stadium d) funfair

5. ..... is important for any country.

a) Death b) Education c) Theft d) Thieves

6. You can wash your face in the ..... .

a) basin b) pot c) carpet d) mirror

7. We have a nearby ..... . Its water is very clean.

a) tip b) tap c) tape d) top

8. Don't drop ..... . Put it in bins.

a) rubbish b) letters c) little d) water

9. This is the man ..... ran after me yesterday.

a) who b) which c) when d) where

10. That bird is flying very ..... .

a) careful b) quick c) loud d) fast

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. My friend ..... (comes/usually) by bus.
2. People ..... (must) throw rubbish in the street.
3. ..... (you/use to) walk to school?
4. I ..... (sleep) in a tent last night.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"Your daily routine"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

24

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب. 4

1. Adam works as a / an ..... .
   a) scientist b) manager c) engineer d) teacher
2. His favourite sport is ..... .
   a) football b) tennis c) hockey d) basketball
3. His job is ..... .
   a) tiring b) interesting
   c) difficult d) tiring, but interesting
4. He works in a famous ..... .
   a) company b) factory c) school d) laboratory

B Language Functions

2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Heba is asking Mona about her hero.

Heba : Who is your hero, Mona?
Mona : (1)..... .
Heba : What was your uncle's job?
Mona : (2)..... .
Heba : (3).....?
Mona : He worked in a hospital in Luxor.
Heba : (4).....?
Mona : No, he wasn't a dentist, he was a surgeon.
Heba : Are you proud of him?
Mona : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

4.5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In winter, thousands of tourists from all over the world visit the lovely city of Aswan which is located in the south of Egypt. At this time of the year, they come from Asia, Europe, America and many other places. When it is cold in their

countries, tourists come to enjoy the sunshine and the wonderful weather here where there are a lot of comfortable hotels to stay in. Along the year, tourists also come to see the fabulous monuments such as the Temple of Phila and the Temple of Abu Simbel where they can see the ancient statues. The High Dam is another attractive place to visit. In addition, tourists can have boat trips on the Nile to enjoy the view and take photos. They can go to bazaars to watch the traditional Nubian products and buy souvenirs.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think tourists visit Aswan mostly in winter? .....
2. What can tourists do in bazaars? .....
3. Give a suitable title to the passage. .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Aswan is located in the ..... of Egypt.
   a) west b) north c) south d) east
5. The underlined word "their" refers to ..... .
   a) temples b) countries c) bazaars d) tourists
6. The opposite of "ancient" is ..... .
   a) old b) modern c) long d) fresh

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 5

1. A ..... is a piece of jewellery you wear on your finger.
   a) vase b) necklace c) mask d) ring
2. I can give you my car so you ..... buy a new one.
   a) have to b) don't have to c) mustn't d) must
3. The boy is at a ..... school. He goes home once a week.
   a) border b) boarding c) skating d) ordering
4. There was a/an ..... emergency and many people were in hospitals.
   a) wealth b) earth c) north d) health
5. My uncle works in a big hospital ..... he can help many patients.
   a) which b) where c) who d) whom
6. Stop playing here or you might ..... that car.
   a) hurt b) injure c) damage d) collect

7. Can you ..... my father for me because I lost my phone?

a) talk b) text c) send d) write

8. The ..... pumps blood around the body.

a) eye b) nose c) brain d) heart

9. There was a ..... because there was a lot of rain.

a) draught b) flood c) drought d) volcano

10. Magdy Yacoub stopped most of his work as a surgeon a long time ..... .

a) ago b) for c) last d) when

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. Where did your father ..... (found) his keys?
2. While the girl was watching the television, she ..... (have) an idea.
3. Alexandria is ..... (far) from Luxor than Cairo.
4. The tourists ..... (what) visit Egypt always love the ancient temples.

Writing

6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words to your friend Adam to tell him about the effects of climate change in our planet. Your name is Omar, and your email address is omar@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is adam@gmail.com 6

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

24

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب. 4

1. Where is Port Said located? - It is in the ..... of Egypt.
   a) north-east b) south-east
   c) west-east d) south
2. What is it known for? - Its ..... .
   a) cars b) ships
   c) boats d) rockets
3. Many fish are caught in the sea near ..... .
   a) Alexandria b) Luxor
   c) Port Said d) Matrouh
4. Ships come and go from around ..... .
   a) Cairo b) the world
   c) the coast d) Alexandria

B Language Functions

25

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Soha and Mona are talking about their friend Huda.

Mona : Our friend Huda hasn't come to school since last week.
Soha : What a pity! (1).....?
Mona : She had an accident last week.
Soha : (2).....?
Mona : No, she is at home now.
Soha : Can I come with you to visit her?
Mona : (3)..... .
Soha : When will we visit her?
Mona : (4)..... . Where shall we meet?
Soha : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: 4.5

The Egyptian handball team are heroes! They won the handball Africa Cup of Nations in Tunisia in 2020. They won the final against Tunisia 27 - 23. That means they are the best team in Africa! This is not the first time Egypt's handball team played in a final. In 2019, the junior team won the under-19 World Cup Final 32-28 against Germany. They were the first team from Africa to win it. In 2018, the senior team were also in the final of the Africa Cup of Nations, but lost the final against Tunisia. Now, lots of people in Egypt love the sport. Let's hope the Egyptian team can win competitions again!

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage? .....
2. What did the junior team win in 2019? .....
3. Do you think that lots of people in Egypt love handball? Why?/ Why not?
   .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. In 2020, they won the final against ..... .
   a) Germany b) Tunisia c) Libya d) Iraq
5. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ..... .
   a) Egypt's handball team b) The Africa Cup of Nations
   c) The under-19 World Cup d) Egypt
6. The opposite of the word "win" is ..... .
   a) lose b) pass c) succeed d) fall

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 5

1. Your ..... is your usual way of doing something.
   a) food b) routine c) relatives d) hobbies
2. How do you ..... your free time?
   a) stay b) take c) spend d) play
3. A ..... is the daughter of a king or queen.
   a) princess b) secretary c) prince d) nurse
4. You can catch a plane from a/an ..... .
   a) station b) port c) airport d) hospital

5. The ..... tells the parts of the body what to do.

a) place b) play c) brain d) train

6. Dr Magdy Yacoub looks after children with heart ..... .

a) trips b) competitions c) problems d) experiments

7. In my opinion, ... random acts of kindness is fantastic.

a) taking b) making c) doing d) having

8. She doesn't ..... to school on Friday.

a) go b) goes c) going d) having

9. She is clever. She studies ..... .

a) hard b) good c) bad d) hardly

10. They ..... TV an hour ago.

a) watched b) watch c) are watching d) will watch

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. When he ..... (arrives), we were having dinner.
2. Airports are places ..... (who) we can see planes.
3. An elephant is ..... (big) than a camel.
4. She ..... (write) an email now.

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"A historic place you visited"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

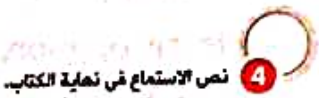
.....

.....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



1. Aya is a ..... .
   a) shop worker
   b) street-food seller
   c) teacher
   d) student
2. Aya is from ..... .
   a) Luxor
   b) Qena
   c) Qalyubia
   d) Cairo
3. She has ..... .
   a) one brother
   b) two brothers
   c) one sister
   d) none
4. Her mother works as a ..... .
   a) nurse
   b) shop worker
   c) street-food seller
   d) teacher

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:



Said and Asmaa are talking about cities.

Said : What is Tanta famous for?
Asmaa : (1)..... .
Said : (2).....?
Asmaa : Black honey is made in Minya.
Said : What do people plant in Minya?
Asmaa : (3)..... .
Said : (4).....?
Asmaa : Port Said is famous for ships and delicious fish.
Said : Where is Port Said located?
Asmaa : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:



I am Mona. My daily routine is the same every school day. I always get up early at 6:30 in the morning. My mum also gets up early and makes my breakfast. We always have breakfast together. I go to school by bus with my friend Maha. I like music very much and we sometimes listen to it. My parents work at the hospital. Their work is very hard and they get home late, so I often help to make dinner in the evening. I do my homework and read my books on the sofa. I watch TV and text my friend. Then I go to bed at 10 o'clock.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage? .....
2. How does Mona go to school? .....
3. Do you think that Mona enjoys her daily routine? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ..... .
   a) work b) music c) breakfast d) bus
5. Mona gets up at ..... .
   a) 6:30 b) 7:30 c) 8:30 d) 9:00
6. The underlined word "daily" means ..... .
   a) yesterday b) tomorrow c) every day d) now

D Vocabulary and Structure



4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This book is ..... . You should read it.
   a) boring b) strange c) fantastic d) ugly
2. The nurse works on the ..... for children.
   a) ward b) word c) world d) farm
3. I love going to ..... places such as museums and ancient ruins.
   a) culture b) busy c) modern d) historic
4. This building became ..... after an earthquake.
   a) a castle b) a stadium c) ruins d) a statue

5. Can you ..... my mother for me, because my phone isn't working?
a) infect b) wave c) write d) text

6. This football has no air inside it. I need a ..... to fill it.
a) plant b) cut c) pump d) lungs

7. Mona's mother is a/an ..... at the hospital; they don't pay her for her work.
a) teacher b) farmer c) volunteer d) scientist

8. As we ..... into the museum, we saw some huge statues.
a) are walking b) were walking c) was walking d) is walking

9. Where did he ..... live?
a) use to b) used c) used to d) use

10. I saw Ahmed in the park ..... we often play football.
a) who b) that c) where d) which

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:



1. It is important to drive ..... (careful) when it is raining.
2. Mona always ..... (play) tennis on Sundays.
3. ..... (have/you) to wear special clothes for your sports class?
4. He ..... (win) a junior chess competition when he was only 12!

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:



"School Rules"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Part 5 Listening Texts



Check your answers

1 **Al-Adwaa Monthly Tests Listening Texts**
نصوص استماع اختبارات الأضواء الشهرية

2 **Final Exams Listening Texts**
نصوص استماع الاختبارات النهائية

Part 5 Listening Texts

1. Check your English

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Narrator 1
Speaker 1: What does an engineer do?
Speaker 2: He or she designs engines or parts of buildings.

Narrator 2
Speaker 1: What is a teaspoon made of?
Speaker 2: Metal (but sometimes plastic).

Narrator 3
Speaker 1: If you can see yourself, what are you looking at?
Speaker 2: A mirror.

Narrator 4
Speaker 1: Which is the highest mountain in the world?
Speaker 2: Mount Everest.

Narrator 5
Speaker 1: Why shouldn't you eat a lot of chocolate?
Speaker 2: There is too much sugar in it.

Narrator 6
Speaker 1: What happens if you touch a jellyfish?
Speaker 2: It stings me.

Narrator 7
Speaker 1: Where did Robinson Crusoe live for many years?
Speaker 2: On an island.

Narrator 8
Speaker 1: Were there any bedrooms in the houses of Deir el-Medina?
Speaker 2: No, there weren't.

2. Al-Adwaa Monthly Tests

Units 1 & 2 Al-Adwaa October Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Sally. I'm 13 years old. I always get up at half past six in the morning. My mum always makes my breakfast. I walk to school with my sister. My parents work at school. They are teachers at the same school.

Units 3 & 4 Al-Adwaa November Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The Egyptian handball team are heroes! They won the handball Africa Cup of Nations in Tunisia in 2020. They won the final against Tunisia 27-23. That means they are the best team in Africa!

Units 5 & 6 Al-Adwaa December Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I have to make my bed every day and tidy up my bedroom once a week. My mother says I am messy. It takes a long time to put away my clothes.

3. Final Exams

1. Cairo Governorate (Gamalia Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name's Eman. I'm 14 years old. I'm a very active girl. I like doing exercise for 2 hours daily. I sleep early every day. I like taking photos, but I don't like sending them.

2. Cairo Governorate (Dar El-Salam Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The Ancient Egyptians used pots and bowls for making food such as bread. They were made of clay, which came from the River Nile. While some people were mixing ingredients for bread in bowls, other people used large stones to mix the ingredients in a bowl. They were very clever.

3. Giza Governorate (El-Dokki Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Magdy Yacoub was born in Egypt in 1935. The family used to travel to many places because his father was an important doctor. Magdy helped people with heart problems for many years. In 2006, he started a new hospital to help children with heart problems in Aswan.

4. Giza Governorate
(El-Sheikh Zayed Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Last week, my father bought tickets to the Museum of Islamic Art. All the family went to the museum. There were a lot of things to see and do there. We mustn't touch the objects at the museum. We were very happy because the place was very amazing.

5. Alexandria Governorate
(East Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Ali. I'm 13 years old. I work as a volunteer for a charity which helps to clean our local beach. At the weekend, we go to the beach and pick up the rubbish that people left behind. We always pick up lots of plastic bottles!

6. Qalyubia Governorate
(Kafr Shukr Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My neighbour Fareeda Rashwan is very kind. She is a businesswoman. She is 32 years old. She is interested in helping poor people. Yesterday, she went to a charity for poor people and donated two million pounds.

7. Gharbia Governorate
(East Tanta Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name's Samy. I'm a student at prep school. Last week, I went to the beach. I think it's a good place for a new hotel. The hotel will give work to a lot of people. We can use the water from the lake for the new hotel.

8. Dakahlia Governorate
(Mit Ghamr Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name's Noha. I like my bedroom. When I open he curtains, there is always lots of sunlight in the oom. In front of the bed, I have a big wardrobe. I on't have a basin in my room because the bathroom next to the room.

9. Kafr El-Sheikh Governorate
(El-Ryaid Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Omar Abdelkader was born in 1994. When Omar was 22, a shark attacked him and he lost a leg, but this did not stop him from wanting to be successful. Now he helps other people with similar problems and he is an important sports coach.

10. Behira Governorate
(Itay El-Barud Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

We should protect our environment by reducing the bad results of global warming. Planting trees can reduce global warming. Trees give us oxygen. We should also save our energy.

11. Menofia Governorate
(Quesna Educational Administration)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Marwa. I live in Cairo. I have a son and a daughter. I'm a dentist. I'm looking after patients at a hospital in Egypt. It's very busy. I like my job. I always advise my patients to look after their teeth.

12. Damietta Governorate
(Damietta Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name's Kareem. I'm 15 years old. I like visiting historical places. My favourite hobby is reading. I feel happy with my friends. They are all kind.

13. Sharkia Governorate
(Awlad Saqr Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Our neighbour, Mr. Othman, is the person who helped me pass my maths exams. He's 70 and doesn't work now, but he was a maths teacher before. The books which he used to help me were his old schoolbooks when he was teaching at a secondary school.

14. Ismailia Governorate
(Directorate of Education)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Mariam. I'm 15 years old. I always get up at half past six in the morning. My mum always makes my breakfast. I walk to school with my brother. My parents work at a hospital.

15. Suez Governorate (Suez Educational Zone)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My best friend is called Dina. She has one brother and one sister. She is an active girl. She always gets up at 7. She has breakfast at home. Then, she goes to school. Her favourite subject is Arabic.

16. El-Fayoum Governorate (Fayoum Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Ali. I'm 14 years old. I always get up early. I usually have my breakfast at 07:30. I walk to school with my sister. I go back home at two o'clock. I do my homework in the evening.

17. Beni Suef Governorate (Somosta Educational Zone)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Ahmed. I'm 13 years old. I work as a volunteer for a charity which helps to clean our local beach. At the weekend, we go to the beach and pick up the rubbish that people left behind. We always pick up lots of plastic bottles!

18. El-Minya Governorate (El-Minya Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I'm Aya. My home city is Minya. It is located near the Nile. Lots of food is grown in the local area like cotton and sugar cane. The city is known for its delicious "black honey". The honey is made from sugar.

19. Assiut Governorate (Manfalot Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The Ancient Egyptians used mirrors. Today, mirrors are usually made of glass. In Ancient Egypt, they were made of metal. They used mirrors to paint around their eyes. The Ancient Egyptians also used pots and bowls for making food such as bread. These objects were made of clay, which came from the River Nile.

20. Qena Governorate (Qous Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My father is called Adam. He is a manager in a famous factory. His job is very tiring, but interesting. He likes sports. Football is his favourite sport.

21. Sohag Governorate (Tama Educational Zone)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Port Said is located in the north-east of Egypt. The city is known for its ships, which come and go from around the world. Port Said is connected to Suez by the Suez Canal. Many fish are caught in the sea near Port Said.

22. Luxor Governorate (Luxor Educational Administration)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Aya is 13 and lives in a village in Qena. Her father is a street-food seller and her mother is a shop worker. She goes to school at 7:00 every day. When she returns home, she looks after her little brother. She does her homework in the evening.

رقم الإيداع: ٩٨١٢ / ٢٠٢٣

ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم رقم ١٠٣/٩/٢/١١٣

NAHDET MISR
PUBLISHING HOUSE